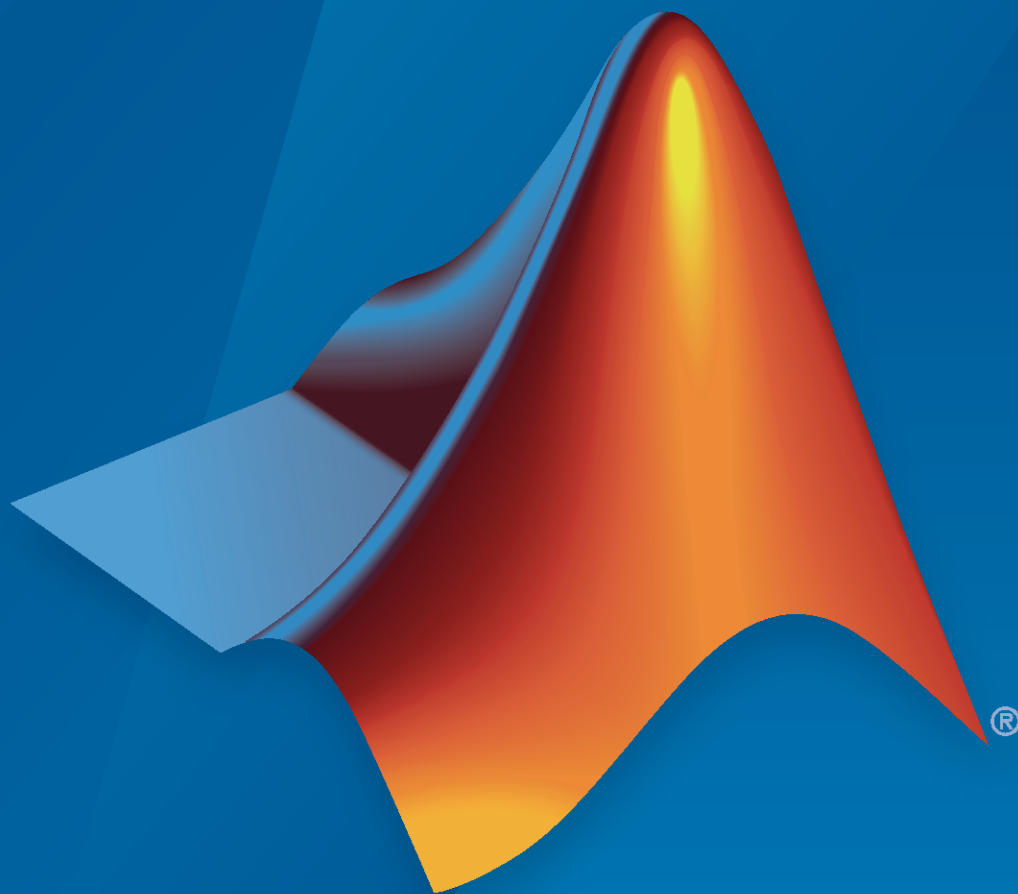


**Simulink®**

Developing S-Functions



**MATLAB® & SIMULINK®**

R2023a



## How to Contact MathWorks



Latest news: [www.mathworks.com](http://www.mathworks.com)  
Sales and services: [www.mathworks.com/sales\\_and\\_services](http://www.mathworks.com/sales_and_services)  
User community: [www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral](http://www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral)  
Technical support: [www.mathworks.com/support/contact\\_us](http://www.mathworks.com/support/contact_us)



Phone: 508-647-7000



The MathWorks, Inc.  
1 Apple Hill Drive  
Natick, MA 01760-2098

### *Developing S-Functions*

© COPYRIGHT 1998-2023 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

### **Trademarks**

MATLAB and Simulink are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc. See [www.mathworks.com/trademarks](http://www.mathworks.com/trademarks) for a list of additional trademarks. Other product or brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

### **Patents**

MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see [www.mathworks.com/patents](http://www.mathworks.com/patents) for more information.

## Revision History

October 1998	First printing	Revised for Version 3.0 (Release R11)
November 2000	Second printing	Revised for Version 4.0 (Release R12)
July 2002	Third printing	Revised for Version 5.0 (Release R13)
April 2003	Online only	Revised for Version 5.1 (Release R13SP1)
April 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 5.1.1 (Release R13SP1+)
June 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 6.0 (Release R14)
October 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 6.1 (Release R14SP1)
March 2005	Online only	Revised for Version 6.2 (Release R14SP2)
September 2005	Online Only	Revised for Version 6.3 (Release R14SP3)
March 2006	Online only	Revised for Version 6.4 (Release 2006a)
September 2006	Online only	Revised for Version 6.5 (Release 2006b)
March 2007	Online only	Revised for Version 6.6 (Release 2007a)
September 2007	Online only	Revised for Version 7.0 (Release 2007b)
March 2008	Online only	Revised for Version 7.1 (Release 2008a)
October 2008	Online only	Revised for Version 7.2 (Release 2008b)
March 2009	Online only	Revised for Version 7.3 (Release 2009a)
September 2009	Online only	Revised for Version 7.4 (Release 2009b)
March 2010	Online only	Revised for Version 7.5 (Release 2010a)
September 2010	Online only	Revised for Version 7.6 (Release 2010b)
April 2011	Online only	Revised for Version 7.7 (Release 2011a)
September 2011	Online only	Revised for Version 7.8 (Release 2011b)
March 2012	Online only	Revised for Version 7.9 (Release 2012a)
September 2012	Online only	Revised for Version 8.0 (Release 2012b)
March 2013	Online only	Revised for Version 8.1 (Release 2013a)
September 2013	Online only	Revised for Version 8.2 (Release 2013b)
March 2014	Online only	Revised for Version 8.3 (Release 2014a)
October 2014	Online only	Revised for Version 8.4 (Release 2014b)
March 2015	Online only	Revised for Version 8.5 (Release 2015a)
September 2015	Online only	Revised for Version 8.6 (Release 2015b)
October 2015	Online only	Rereleased for Simulink 8.5.1 (Release 2015aSP1)
March 2016	Online only	Revised for Version 8.7 (Release 2016a)
September 2016	Online only	Revised for Version 8.8 (Release 2016b)
March 2017	Online only	Revised for Version 8.9 (Release 2017a)
September 2017	Online only	Revised for Version 9.0 (Release 2017b)
March 2018	Online only	Revised for Version 9.1 (Release 2018a)
September 2018	Online only	Revised for Version 9.2 (Release 2018b)
March 2019	Online only	Revised for Version 9.3 (Release 2019a)
September 2019	Online only	Revised for Version 10.0 (Release 2019b)
March 2020	Online only	Revised for Version 10.1 (Release 2020a)
September 2020	Online only	Revised for Version 10.2 (Release 2020b)
March 2021	Online only	Revised for Version 10.3 (Release 2021a)
September 2021	Online only	Revised for Version 10.4 (Release 2021b)
March 2022	Online only	Revised for Version 10.5 (Release 2022a)
September 2022	Online only	Revised for Version 10.6 (Release 2022b)
March 2023	Online only	Revised for Version 10.7 (Release 2023a)



<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction to S-Functions</b>	
	<b>What Is an S-Function? . . . . .</b>	<b>1-2</b>
	How S-Functions Work . . . . .	1-2
	Use S-Functions in Models . . . . .	1-4
	<b>S-Function Concepts . . . . .</b>	<b>1-7</b>
	Direct Feedthrough . . . . .	1-7
	Dynamically Sized Arrays . . . . .	1-7
	Setting Sample Times and Offsets . . . . .	1-8
	<b>Implementing S-Functions . . . . .</b>	<b>1-12</b>
	MATLAB S-Functions . . . . .	1-12
	MEX S-Functions . . . . .	1-12
	<b>S-Function Callback Methods . . . . .</b>	<b>1-14</b>
	Callback Methods Overview . . . . .	1-14
	Callback Methods for C MEX S-Functions . . . . .	1-14
	Callback Methods for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions . . . . .	1-16
	<b>S-Function Compatibility . . . . .</b>	<b>1-18</b>
	<b>S-Function Examples . . . . .</b>	<b>1-19</b>
	Access S-Function Examples . . . . .	1-19
	Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Examples . . . . .	1-21
	C S-Function Examples . . . . .	1-22
	Fortran S-Function Examples . . . . .	1-25
	C++ S-Function Examples . . . . .	1-25
	Organizing S-Function in a Project . . . . .	1-25
<b>2</b>	<b>Selecting an S-Function Implementation</b>	
	<b>Available S-Function Implementations . . . . .</b>	<b>2-2</b>
	<b>S-Function Features and Limitations . . . . .</b>	<b>2-3</b>
	S-Function Features . . . . .	2-3
	S-Function Limitations . . . . .	2-5
	<b>S-Functions Incorporate Legacy C Code . . . . .</b>	<b>2-7</b>
	Setup Working Environment for Incorporating Legacy C Code . . . . .	2-7
	Overview . . . . .	2-7
	Using a Hand-Written S-Function to Incorporate Legacy Code . . . . .	2-8

Using the S-Function Builder to Incorporate Legacy Code .....	2-9
Using the Legacy Code Tool to Incorporate Legacy Code .....	2-13

## Writing S-Functions in MATLAB

### 3

<b>Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions</b> .....	3-2
Setup Working Environment to Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Function .....	3-2
About Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions .....	3-2
About Run-Time Objects .....	3-3
Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Template .....	3-3
Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods .....	3-3
Using the setup Method .....	3-4
Example of Writing a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function .....	3-5
Instantiating a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function .....	3-7
Operations for Variable-Size Signals .....	3-8
Generating Code from a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function .....	3-8
MATLAB S-Function Examples .....	3-8
MATLAB S-Function Limitations .....	3-8
<b>Maintain Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions</b> .....	3-10
About the Maintenance of Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions .....	3-10
Level-1 MATLAB S-Function Arguments .....	3-10
Level-1 MATLAB S-Function Outputs .....	3-11
Define S-Function Block Characteristics .....	3-12
Processing S-Function Parameters .....	3-12
Convert Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions to Level-2 .....	3-13

## Writing S-Functions in C

### 4

<b>Create a Basic C MEX S-Function</b> .....	4-2
About C MEX S-Functions .....	4-2
Introducing an Example of a Basic C MEX S-Function .....	4-3
Defines and Includes .....	4-5
Callback Method Implementations .....	4-5
Simulink/Simulink Coder Interfaces .....	4-7
Building the Timestwo Example .....	4-7
<b>Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function</b> .....	4-8
How the S-Function Builder Builds an S-Function .....	4-11
Deploy the Generated S-Function .....	4-12
<b>Use Array or Nested Array of Buses with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function</b> .....	4-13
<b>Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder</b> .....	4-15
Create an S-Function Builder Block and Specify Settings .....	4-15
Specify Ports and Parameters for the S-Function .....	4-20

Use the Libraries Table to Specify External Code and Paths . . . . .	4-20
Develop the S-Function . . . . .	4-21
Build the S-Function . . . . .	4-26
<b>Model a State-Space System Using S-Function Builder . . . . .</b>	<b>4-27</b>
Configure the S-Function Builder Settings . . . . .	4-27
Define Ports and Parameters . . . . .	4-27
Define the Output Method . . . . .	4-28
Define the Update Method . . . . .	4-29
Build the State-Space System . . . . .	4-29
<b>Templates for C S-Functions . . . . .</b>	<b>4-30</b>
About the Templates for C S-Functions . . . . .	4-30
S-Function Source File Requirements . . . . .	4-30
The SimStruct . . . . .	4-32
Data Types in S-Functions . . . . .	4-32
Compiling C S-Functions . . . . .	4-32
<b>Integrate C Functions Using Legacy Code Tool . . . . .</b>	<b>4-33</b>
Overview . . . . .	4-33
Integrate C Functions into Simulink Models with Legacy Code Tool . . . . .	4-35
Integrate C Function Whose Arguments Are Pointers to Structures . . . . .	4-37
Registering Legacy Code Tool Data Structures . . . . .	4-41
Declaring Legacy Code Tool Function Specifications . . . . .	4-42
Generating and Compiling the S-Functions . . . . .	4-48
Generating a Masked S-Function Block for Calling a Generated S-Function . . . . .	4-48
Forcing Simulink Accelerator Mode to Use S-Function TLC Inlining Code . . . . .	4-49
Calling Legacy C++ Functions . . . . .	4-49
Handling Multiple Registration Files . . . . .	4-49
Deploying Generated S-Functions . . . . .	4-50
Legacy Code Tool Examples . . . . .	4-50
Legacy Code Tool Limitations . . . . .	4-50
<b>Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions . . . . .</b>	<b>4-52</b>
Process View . . . . .	4-52
Data View . . . . .	4-57
<b>S-Functions in Normal Mode Referenced Models . . . . .</b>	<b>4-61</b>
Supporting the Use of Multiple Instances of Referenced Models That Are in Normal Mode . . . . .	4-61
<b>Debug C MEX S-Functions . . . . .</b>	<b>4-63</b>
About Debugging C MEX S-Functions . . . . .	4-63
Debug in Simulink Environment . . . . .	4-63
Debug Using Third-Party Software . . . . .	4-66
<b>Convert Level-1 C MEX S-Functions . . . . .</b>	<b>4-69</b>
Guidelines for Converting Level-1 C MEX S-Functions to Level-2 . . . . .	4-69
Obsolete Macros . . . . .	4-71

## Creating C++ S-Functions

### 5

<b>Create C++ Source File</b> .....	5-2
C++ References .....	5-2
<b>Make C++ Objects Persistent</b> .....	5-3
<b>Build C++ S-Functions</b> .....	5-4

## Creating Fortran S-Functions

### 6

<b>Create Level-2 Fortran S-Functions</b> .....	6-2
About Creating Level-2 Fortran S-Functions .....	6-2
Template File .....	6-2
C/Fortran Interfacing Tips .....	6-2
Constructing the Gateway .....	6-5
Example C MEX S-Function Calling Fortran Code .....	6-7
<b>Port Legacy Code</b> .....	6-9
Find the States .....	6-9
Sample Times .....	6-9
Store Data .....	6-9
Use Flints if Needed .....	6-10
Considerations for Real Time .....	6-10

## Run S-Function Analyzer

### 7

<b>Check S-Functions Using S-Function Analyzer APIs</b> .....	7-2
Prerequisites .....	7-2
Setup the Working Environment to Check S-Function Using S-Function Analyzer .....	7-2
Run the S-Function Checks .....	7-3
Explore and Fix Problems .....	7-4
<b>Troubleshoot S-Function Checks</b> .....	7-12
Environment Checks .....	7-12
Source Code Checks .....	7-12
S-Function MEX File Checks .....	7-12
Input Parameter Robustness Check .....	7-14



## 8

<b>DWork Vector Basics</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
What is a DWork Vector? .....	<b>8-2</b>
DWork Vectors and the Simulink Engine .....	<b>8-3</b>
DWork Vectors and the Simulink Coder Product .....	<b>8-3</b>
<b>Types of DWork Vectors</b> .....	<b>8-4</b>
<b>How to Use DWork Vectors</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
Using DWork Vectors in C MEX S-Functions .....	<b>8-5</b>
DWork Vector C MEX Macros .....	<b>8-7</b>
Using DWork Vectors With Legacy Code .....	<b>8-8</b>
<b>DWork Vector Examples</b> .....	<b>8-9</b>
General DWork Vector .....	<b>8-9</b>
DWork Scratch Vector .....	<b>8-10</b>
DState Work Vector .....	<b>8-11</b>
DWork Mode Vector .....	<b>8-13</b>
<b>Elementary Work Vectors</b> .....	<b>8-15</b>
Description of Elementary Work Vector .....	<b>8-15</b>
Relationship to DWork Vectors .....	<b>8-15</b>
Using Elementary Work Vectors .....	<b>8-16</b>
Additional Work Vector Macros .....	<b>8-17</b>
Elementary Work Vector Examples .....	<b>8-17</b>
<b>Memory Allocation</b> .....	<b>8-21</b>

## Implementing Block Features for C/C++ S-Functions

## 9

<b>Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
About Dialog Parameters .....	<b>9-2</b>
Tunable Parameters .....	<b>9-3</b>
<b>Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>
About Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>9-5</b>
Creating Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>9-6</b>
Updating Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>9-9</b>
Tuning Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>9-10</b>
Accessing Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>9-10</b>
<b>Input and Output Ports</b> .....	<b>9-12</b>
Creating Input Ports for C S-Functions .....	<b>9-12</b>
Creating Output Ports for C S-Functions .....	<b>9-14</b>
Scalar Expansion of Inputs .....	<b>9-15</b>
Masked Multiport S-Functions .....	<b>9-16</b>

<b>Configure Custom Data Types</b> .....	<b>9-18</b>
Custom Data Types in C S-Functions .....	9-18
Using Simulink Recognizable Data Types in C S-Functions .....	9-18
Using Opaque Data Types in C S-Functions .....	9-18
<b>Specify S-Function Sample Times</b> .....	<b>9-20</b>
About Sample Times .....	9-20
Block-Based Sample Times .....	9-21
Specifying Port-Based Sample Times .....	9-23
Hybrid Block-Based and Port-Based Sample Times .....	9-27
Multirate S-Function Blocks .....	9-27
Multirate S-Functions and Sample Time Hit Calculations .....	9-28
Synchronizing Multirate S-Function Blocks .....	9-29
Specifying Model Reference Sample Time Inheritance .....	9-29
<b>Zero Crossings</b> .....	<b>9-31</b>
<b>S-Function Compliance with the ModelOperatingPoint</b> .....	<b>9-34</b>
ModelOperatingPoint Compliance Specification for C MEX S-Functions .	9-34
<b>MATLAB Data in C S-Functions</b> .....	<b>9-36</b>
mxArray Manipulation .....	9-36
mxArrays Using 32-bit APIs .....	9-36
mxArrays Using Interleaved Complex Representation .....	9-37
<b>Implement Function-Call Subsystems with S-Functions</b> .....	<b>9-39</b>
<b>Use C/C++ S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode</b> .....	<b>9-43</b>
<b>Handle Errors in S-Functions</b> .....	<b>9-44</b>
About Handling Errors .....	9-44
Exception Free Code .....	9-45
ssSetErrorStatus Termination Criteria .....	9-45
Checking Array Bounds .....	9-46
<b>Guidelines for Writing Thread-Safe S-Functions</b> .....	<b>9-47</b>
Background .....	9-47
Guidelines .....	9-47
<b>C MEX S-Function Examples</b> .....	<b>9-51</b>
About S-Function Examples .....	9-51
Continuous States .....	9-51
Discrete States .....	9-55
Continuous and Discrete States .....	9-59
Variable Sample Time .....	9-63
Array Inputs and Outputs .....	9-67
Zero-Crossing Detection .....	9-73
Discontinuities in Continuous States .....	9-83

## Implement Block Features for MATLAB S-Functions

10

<b>Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
Using Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Dialog Parameters .....	<b>10-2</b>
Tunable Parameters .....	<b>10-2</b>
<b>Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters</b> .....	<b>10-4</b>
Create Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>10-4</b>
Update Run-Time Parameters .....	<b>10-4</b>
<b>Create Input and Output Ports</b> .....	<b>10-6</b>
Creating Input Ports for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions .....	<b>10-6</b>
Creating Output Ports for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions .....	<b>10-6</b>
Scalar Expansion of Inputs .....	<b>10-7</b>
Masked Multiport S-Functions .....	<b>10-7</b>
<b>Inherit Custom Data Types</b> .....	<b>10-8</b>
<b>Specify S-Function Sample Times</b> .....	<b>10-9</b>
About Sample Times .....	<b>10-9</b>
Block Based Sample Times .....	<b>10-9</b>
Specifying Port-Based Sample Times .....	<b>10-9</b>
Hybrid Block-Based and Port-Based Sample Times .....	<b>10-10</b>
Multirate S-Function Blocks .....	<b>10-10</b>
Synchronizing Multirate S-Function Blocks .....	<b>10-11</b>
<b>S-Function Compliance with ModelOperatingPoint</b> .....	<b>10-12</b>
ModelOperatingPoint Compliance Specification for Level-2 MATLAB S- Functions .....	<b>10-12</b>
<b>Use DWork Vectors in S-Functions</b> .....	<b>10-14</b>
What is a DWork Vector? .....	<b>10-14</b>
How to Use DWork Vectors in Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions .....	<b>10-15</b>
Level-2 MATLAB S-Function DWork Vector Example .....	<b>10-16</b>
<b>Use MATLAB S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode</b> ..	<b>10-18</b>

## S-Function Callback Methods

11

## S-Function SimStruct Functions Reference

12

<b>S-Function SimStruct Functions</b> .....	<b>12-2</b>
About SimStruct Functions .....	<b>12-2</b>
Language Support .....	<b>12-2</b>
The SimStruct .....	<b>12-2</b>

**13** | S-Function Options

# Introduction to S-Functions

---

- “What Is an S-Function?” on page 1-2
- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Implementing S-Functions” on page 1-12
- “S-Function Callback Methods” on page 1-14
- “S-Function Compatibility” on page 1-18
- “S-Function Examples” on page 1-19

## What Is an S-Function?

S-functions (system-functions) provide a powerful mechanism for extending the capabilities of the Simulink environment. An *S-function* is a computer language description of a Simulink block written in MATLAB®, C, C++, or Fortran. C, C++, and Fortran S-functions are compiled as MEX files using the `mex` utility (see “Build C MEX Function”). As with other MEX files, S-functions are dynamically linked subroutines that the MATLAB execution engine can automatically load and execute.

S-functions use a special calling syntax called the S-function API that enables you to interact with the Simulink engine. This interaction is very similar to the interaction that takes place between the engine and built-in Simulink blocks.

S-functions follow a general form and can accommodate continuous, discrete, and hybrid systems. By following a set of simple rules, you can implement an algorithm in an S-function and use the S-Function block to add it to a Simulink model. After you write your S-function and place its name in an S-Function block (available in the User-Defined Functions block library), you can customize the user interface using masking (see “Create Block Masks”).

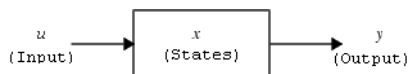
If you have Simulink Coder™, you can use S-functions in a model and generate code. You can also customize the code generated for S-functions by writing a Target Language Compiler (TLC) file. For more information, see “S-Functions and Code Generation” (Simulink Coder).

## How S-Functions Work

S-functions define how a block works during different parts of simulation, such as initialization, update, derivatives, outputs and termination. In every step of a simulation, a method is invoked by the simulation engine to fulfill a specific task. S-function basics require fundamental knowledge of mathematical relationships between the block inputs, states, and outputs. To understand how S-functions work, first you need to understand the mathematics of how Simulink simulates a model, namely the stages of simulation. See “Simulation Phases in Dynamic Systems” for more detailed information.

### Mathematics of Simulink Blocks

A Simulink block consists of a set of inputs, a set of states, a set of parameters, and a set of outputs, where the outputs are a function of the simulation time, the inputs, parameters, and the states.



The following equations express the mathematical relationships between the inputs, outputs, parameters, states, and simulation time.

$$\begin{aligned}
 y &= f_0(t, x, u) && \text{(Outputs)} \\
 \dot{x} &= f_d(t, x, u) && \text{(Derivatives)} \\
 x_{d_{k+1}} &= f_u(t, x_c, x_{d_k}, u), && \text{(Update)}
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $x = [x_c; x_d]$ .

## Simulation Stages

Execution of a Simulink model proceeds in stages. In the *Initialization* phase, the Simulink engine incorporates library blocks into the model, propagates signal widths, data types, and sample times, evaluates block parameters, determines block execution order, and allocates memory. The engine then enters a *simulation loop*, where each pass through the loop is referred to as a *simulation step*. During each simulation step, the engine executes each block in the model in the order determined during initialization. For each block, the engine invokes functions that compute the block states, derivatives, and outputs for the current sample time. The entire simulation loop then continues until the simulation is complete.

**Model Initialization** - Model is prepared for simulation. In this stage, block parameters are evaluated, block execution order is determined, and memory for each operation is allocated. After this stage, blocks go through a simulation loop.

**Update of Continuous States and Time** - Takes place only if the model has continuous states. You can modify minor step methods such as `mdlOutputs`, `mdlDerivatives`, and `mdlZeroCrossing` to compute the outputs.

## S-Function Callback Methods

An S-function comprises a set of *S-function callback methods* that perform tasks required at each simulation stage. During simulation of a model, at each simulation stage, the Simulink engine calls the appropriate methods for each S-Function block in the model. Tasks performed by S-function callback methods include:

- **Compilation** — In this stage, the Simulink engine initializes the S-function. Tasks include:
  - Incorporating library blocks into the model, and propagating signal widths, data types, and sample times
  - Setting the number and dimensions of input and output ports
  - Evaluating block parameters, and determining the block execution order
  - Allocating memory and storage areas.
- **Calculation of outputs** — At this state, outputs are calculated until all the block output ports are valid for the current time step, namely all output values are at a certain error range.
- **Update discrete states** — In this call, the block performs once-per-time-step activities such as updating discrete states.
- **Initialize and Terminate Methods** — These optional methods perform initialization and termination activities required by S-function only once. The initialization activities may include setting up user data, or initializing state vectors in an S-function. The termination method performs any actions such as freeing of memory that is required when the simulation is terminated, or when an S-function block is deleted from a model.
- **Integration** — This applies to models with continuous states and/or nonsampled zero crossings. If your S-function has continuous states, the engine calls the output and derivative portions of your S-function at minor time steps. This is so the solvers can compute the states for your S-function. If your S-function has nonsampled zero crossings, the engine also calls the output and zero-crossings portions of your S-function at minor time steps so that it can locate the zero crossings.

To understand the terminology on simulations especially for S-functions, see “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7.

## Use S-Functions in Models

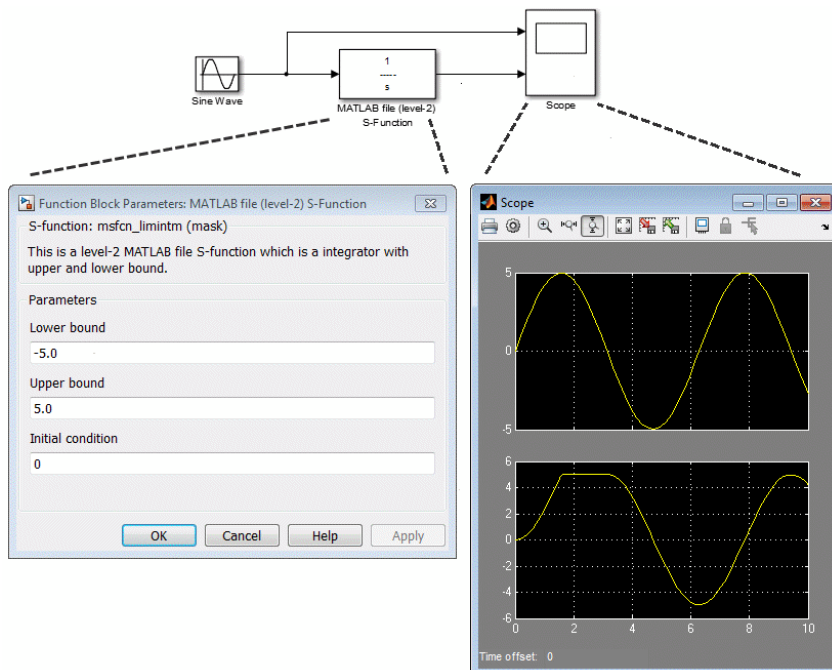
- “Passing Parameters to S-Functions” on page 1-4
  - “When to Use an S-Function” on page 1-5
- 1 To incorporate a C MEX S-function in a model, drag a S-function block from the **Simulink Library Browser**. Similarly, to incorporate a Level-2 MATLAB S-function to the model, drag a Level-2 MATLAB S-function block to the model.
  - 2 Open up the **Block Parameters** dialog and specify the S-function name at the **S-function name** field to provide functionality for the S-function block. For example, type `timestwo` and hit **Apply** to add a C MEX S-function that multiplies the incoming signal by two.

**Note** If the MATLAB path includes a C MEX file and a MATLAB file having the same name referenced by an S-Function block, the S-Function block uses the C MEX file.

## Passing Parameters to S-Functions

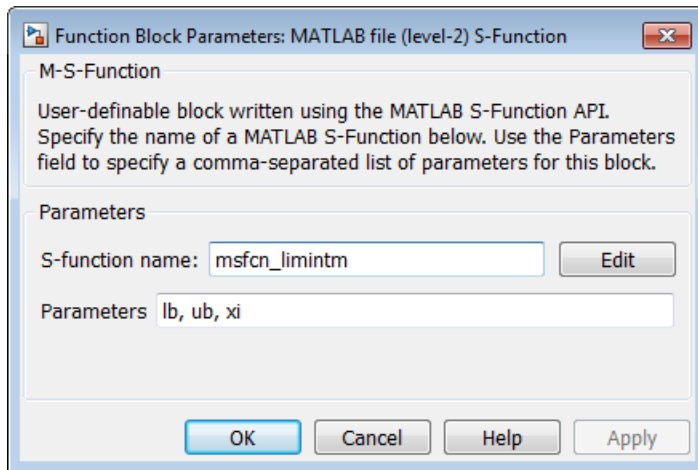
In both S-function block and Level-2 MATLAB S-Function **Block Parameters** window allows you to specify parameter values to pass to the corresponding S-function. To use these fields, you must know the parameters the S-function requires and the order in which the function requires them. (If you do not know, consult the S-function's author, documentation, or source code.) Enter the parameters, separated by a comma, in the order required by the S-function. The parameter values can be constants, names of variables defined in the MATLAB or model workspace, or MATLAB expressions.

The following example illustrates usage of the **Parameters** field to enter user-defined parameters for a Level-2 MATLAB S-function.



The model `msfcdemo_limintm` in this example incorporates the sample S-function `msfcn_limintm.m`.





The `msfcn_limintm.m` S-function accepts three parameters: a lower bound, an upper bound, and an initial condition. The S-function outputs the time integral of the input signal if the time integral is between the lower and upper bounds, the lower bound if the time integral is less than the lower bound, and the upper bound if the time integral is greater than the upper bound. The dialog box in the example specifies a lower and upper bound and an initial condition of  $-5.0$ ,  $5.0$ , and  $0$ , respectively. The scope shows the resulting output when the input is a sine wave of amplitude 5.

See “Processing S-Function Parameters” on page 3-12 and “Handle Errors in S-Functions” on page 9-44 for information on how to access user-specified parameters in an S-function.

You can use the masking facility to create custom dialog boxes and icons for your S-Function blocks. Masked dialog boxes can make it easier to specify additional parameters for S-functions. For a discussion on masking, see “Create Block Masks”.

### When to Use an S-Function

You can use S-functions for a variety of applications, including:

- Creating new general purpose blocks
- Adding blocks that represent hardware device drivers
- Incorporating existing C code into a simulation (see “Integrate C Functions Using Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-33)
- Describing a system as a set of mathematical equations
- Using graphical animations (see the inverted pendulum example, “Inverted Pendulum with Animation”)

The most common use of S-functions is to create custom Simulink blocks (see “Block Creation Basics”). When you use an S-function to create a general-purpose block, you can use it many times in a model, varying parameters with each instance of the block.

### See Also

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function

## **More About**

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “S-Function Callback Methods” on page 1-14
- “S-Function Features and Limitations” on page 2-3
- “S-Functions and Code Generation” (Simulink Coder)

## S-Function Concepts

### In this section...

“Direct Feedthrough” on page 1-7

“Dynamically Sized Arrays” on page 1-7

“Setting Sample Times and Offsets” on page 1-8

### Direct Feedthrough

*Direct feedthrough* means that the output (or the variable sample time for variable sample time blocks) is controlled directly by the value of an input port signal. Typically, an S-function input port has direct feedthrough if

- The output function (`mdlOutputs`) is a function of the input  $u$ . That is, there is direct feedthrough if the input  $u$  is accessed by `mdlOutputs`. Outputs can also include graphical outputs.
- The “time of next hit” function (`mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit`) of a variable sample time S-function accesses the input  $u$ .

An example of a system that requires its inputs (that is, has direct feedthrough) is the operation

$$y = k \times u,$$

where  $u$  is the input,  $k$  is the gain, and  $y$  is the output.

An example of a system that does not require its inputs (that is, does not have direct feedthrough) is the simple integration algorithm

$$y = x,$$

$$\dot{x} = u,$$

where  $x$  is the state,  $\dot{x}$  is the state derivative with respect to time,  $u$  is the input, and  $y$  is the output. Simulink integrates the variable  $\dot{x}$ .

It is very important to set the direct feedthrough flag correctly because it affects the execution order of the blocks in your model and is used to detect algebraic loops (see “Algebraic Loop Concepts” in *Using Simulink*). If the simulation results for a model containing your S-function do not converge, or the simulation fails, you may have the direct feedthrough flag set incorrectly. Try turning on the direct feedthrough flag and setting the **Algebraic loop** solver diagnostic to **warning** (see the “Algebraic loop” option on the “Model Configuration Parameters: Diagnostics” reference page in *Simulink Graphical User Interface*). Subsequently running the simulation displays any algebraic loops in the model and shows if the engine has placed your S-function within an algebraic loop.

### Dynamically Sized Arrays

You can write your S-function to support arbitrary input dimensions. In this case, the Simulink engine determines the actual input dimensions when the simulation is started by evaluating the dimensions of the input vectors driving the S-function. Your S-function can also use the input dimensions to determine the number of continuous states, the number of discrete states, and the number of outputs.

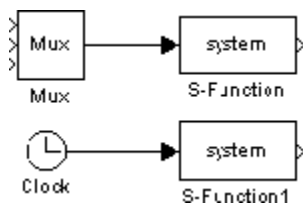
---

**Note** A dynamically sized input can have a different size for each instance of the S-function in a particular model or during different simulations, however the input size of each instance of the S-function is static over the course of a particular simulation.

---

A C MEX S-function and Level-2 MATLAB S-function can have multiple input and output ports and each port can have different dimensions. The number of dimensions and the size of each dimension can be determined dynamically.

For example, the following illustration shows two instances of the same S-Function block in a model.



The upper S-Function block is driven by a block with a three-element output vector. The lower S-Function block is driven by a block with a scalar output. By specifying that the S-Function block has dynamically sized inputs, the same S-function can accommodate both situations. The Simulink engine automatically calls the block with the appropriately sized input vector. Similarly, if other block characteristics, such as the number of outputs or the number of discrete or continuous states, are specified as dynamically sized, the engine defines these vectors to be the same length as the input vector.

See “Input and Output Ports” on page 9-12 for more information on configuring S-function input and output ports.

## Setting Sample Times and Offsets

Both Level-2 MATLAB and C MEX S-functions provide the following sample time options, which allow for a high degree of flexibility in specifying when an S-function executes:

- Continuous sample time — For S-functions that have continuous states and/or nonsampled zero crossings (see “Simulation Phases in Dynamic Systems” for an explanation of zero crossings). For this type of S-function, the output changes in minor time steps.
- Continuous, but fixed in minor time step sample time — For S-functions that need to execute at every major simulation step, but do not change value during minor time steps.
- Discrete sample time — If the behavior of your S-function is a function of discrete time intervals, you can define a sample time to control when the Simulink engine calls the S-function. You can also define an offset that delays each sample time hit. The value of the offset cannot exceed the corresponding sample time.

A *sample time hit* occurs at time values determined by the formula

$$\text{TimeHit} = (n * \text{period}) + \text{offset}$$

where the integer  $n$  is the current simulation step. The first value of  $n$  is always zero.

If you define a discrete sample time, the engine calls the S-function `mdlOutputs` and `mdlUpdate` routines at each sample time hit (as defined in the previous equation).

- Variable sample time — A discrete sample time where the intervals between sample hits can vary. At the start of each simulation step, S-functions with variable sample times are queried for the time of the next hit.
- Inherited sample time — Sometimes an S-function has no inherent sample time characteristics (that is, it is either continuous or discrete, depending on the sample time of some other block in the system). In this case, you can specify that the sample time is *inherited*. A simple example of this is a Gain block that inherits its sample time from the block driving it.

An S-function can inherit its sample time from

- The driving block
- The destination block
- The fastest sample time in the system

To specify an S-function sample time is inherited, use -1 in Level-2 MATLAB S-functions and `INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME` in C MEX S-functions as the sample time. For more information on the propagation of sample times, see “How Propagation Affects Inherited Sample Times” in the *Simulink User's Guide*.

S-functions can be either single or multirate; a multirate S-function has multiple sample times.

Sample times are specified in pairs in this format: `[sample_time, offset_time]`.

### Valid C MEX S-Function Sample Times

The valid sample time pairs for a C MEX S-function are

```
[CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]
[CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]
[discrete_sample_time_period, offset]
[VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]
```

where

```
CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME = 0.0
FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET = 1.0
VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME = -2.0
```

and variable names in italics indicate that a real value is required.

Alternatively, you can specify that the sample time is inherited from the driving block. In this case, the C MEX S-function has only one sample time pair, either

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]
```

or

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]
```

where

```
INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME = -1.0
```

### Valid Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Sample Times

The valid sample time pairs for a Level-2 MATLAB S-function are

```
[0 offset] % Continuous sample time  
[discrete_sample_time_period, offset] % Discrete sample time  
[-1, 0] % Inherited sample time  
[-2, 0] % Variable sample time  
[0, 1] % Fixed-in-minor-step
```

where variable names in italics indicate that a real value is required. When using a continuous sample time, an *offset* of 1 indicates the output is fixed in minor integration time steps. An *offset* of 0 indicates the output changes at every minor integration time step.

Level-2 MATLAB S-function doesn't allow [-1, 1] sample time.

### Guidelines for Choosing a Sample Time

Use the following guidelines for help with specifying sample times:

- A continuous S-function that changes during minor integration steps should register the [CONTINUOUS\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0] sample time.
- A continuous S-function that does not change during minor integration steps should register the [CONTINUOUS\_SAMPLE\_TIME, FIXED\_IN\_MINOR\_STEP\_OFFSET] sample time.
- A discrete S-function that changes at a specified rate should register the discrete sample time pair, [*discrete\_sample\_time\_period*, *offset*], where

*discrete\_sample\_period* > 0.0

and

$0.0 \leq \textit{offset} < \textit{discrete\_sample\_period}$

- A discrete S-function that changes at a variable rate should register the variable-step discrete sample time.

[VARIABLE\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]

In a C MEX S-function, the `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` routine is called to get the time of the next sample hit for the variable-step discrete task. In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, the `NextTimeHit` property is set in the `Outputs` method to set the next sample hit.

If your S-function has no intrinsic sample time, you must indicate that your sample time is inherited. There are two cases:

- An S-function that changes as its input changes, even during minor integration steps, should register the [INHERITED\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0] sample time.
- An S-function that changes as its input changes, but does not change during minor integration steps (that is, remains fixed during minor time steps), should register the [INHERITED\_SAMPLE\_TIME, FIXED\_IN\_MINOR\_STEP\_OFFSET] sample time.

The Scope block is a good example of this type of block. This block runs at the rate of its driving block, either continuous or discrete, but never runs in minor steps. If it did, the scope display would show the intermediate computations of the solver rather than the final result at each time point.

See “Specify S-Function Sample Times” on page 9-20 for information on implementing different types of sample times in S-functions.

**See Also**

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

**More About**

- [“Use S-Functions in Models”](#) on page 1-4
- [“S-Function Callback Methods”](#) on page 1-14
- [“S-Function Features and Limitations”](#) on page 2-3

## Implementing S-Functions

<b>In this section...</b>
---------------------------

“MATLAB S-Functions” on page 1-12
-----------------------------------

“MEX S-Functions” on page 1-12
--------------------------------

### MATLAB S-Functions

Level-2 MATLAB S-functions allow you to create blocks with many of the features and capabilities of Simulink built-in blocks, including:

- Multiple input and output ports
- The ability to accept vector or matrix signals
- Support for various signal attributes including data type, complexity, and signal frames
- Ability to operate at multiple sample rates

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function consists of a `setup` routine to configure the basic properties of the S-function, and a number of callback methods that the Simulink engine invokes at appropriate times during the simulation.

A basic annotated version of the template resides at `msfuntmpl_basic.m`.

The template consists of a top-level `setup` function and a set of skeleton local functions, each of which corresponds to a particular callback method. Each callback method performs a specific S-function task at a particular point in the simulation. The engine invokes the local functions using function handles defined in the `setup` routine. See “Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods” on page 3-3 for a table of the supported Level-2 MATLAB S-function callback methods.

A more detailed Level-2 MATLAB S-function template resides at `msfuntmpl.m`.

We recommend that you follow the structure and naming conventions of the templates when creating Level-2 MATLAB S-functions. This makes it easier for others to understand and maintain the MATLAB S-functions that you create. See “Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2 for information on creating Level-2 MATLAB S-functions.

### MEX S-Functions

Like a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, a MEX S-function consists of a set of callback methods that the Simulink engine invokes to perform various block-related tasks during a simulation. MEX S-functions can be implemented in C, C++, or Fortran. The engine directly invokes MEX S-function routines instead of using function handles as with MATLAB S-functions. Because the engine invokes the functions directly, MEX S-functions must follow standard naming conventions specified by the S-function API.

An annotated C MEX S-function template resides at `sfuntmpl_doc.c`.

The template contains skeleton implementations of all the required and optional callback methods that a C MEX S-function can implement.

For a more basic version of the template see `sfuntmpl_basic.c`.



## **MEX Versus MATLAB S-Functions**

Level-2 MATLAB and MEX S-functions each have advantages. The advantage of Level-2 MATLAB S-functions is speed of development. Developing Level-2 MATLAB S-functions avoids the time consuming compile-link-execute cycle required when developing in a compiled language. Level-2 MATLAB S-functions also have easier access to MATLAB toolbox functions and can utilize the MATLAB Editor/Debugger.

MEX S-functions are more appropriate for integrating legacy code into a Simulink model. For more complicated systems, MEX S-functions may simulate faster than MATLAB S-functions because the Level-2 MATLAB S-function calls the MATLAB execution engine for every callback method.

See “Available S-Function Implementations” on page 2-2 for information on choosing the type of S-function best suited for your application.

## **See Also**

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function | “Comparison of Custom Block Functionality”

## **More About**

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “S-Function Callback Methods” on page 1-14
- “S-Function Features and Limitations” on page 2-3

## S-Function Callback Methods

In this section...
“Callback Methods Overview” on page 1-14
“Callback Methods for C MEX S-Functions” on page 1-14
“Callback Methods for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 1-16

### Callback Methods Overview

Every S-function must implement a set of methods, called *callback methods*, that the Simulink engine invokes when simulating a model that contains the S-function.

The S-function callback methods perform tasks required at each simulation stage. During simulation of a model, at each simulation stage the Simulink engine calls the appropriate methods for each S-Function block in the model.

Tasks performed by S-function callback methods include:

- **Initialization** — Prior to the first simulation loop, the engine initializes the S-function, including:
  - Initializing the `SimStruct`, a simulation structure that contains information about the S-function
  - Setting the number and dimensions of input and output ports
  - Setting the block sample times
  - Allocating storage areas
- **Calculation of next sample hit** — If you created a variable sample time block, this stage calculates the time of the next sample hit; that is, it calculates the next step size.
- **Calculation of outputs in the major time step** — After this call is complete, all the block output ports are valid for the current time step.
- **Update of discrete states in the major time step** — In this call, the block performs once-per-time-step activities such as updating discrete states.
- **Integration** — This applies to models with continuous states and/or nonsampled zero crossings. If your S-function has continuous states, the engine calls the output and derivative portions of your S-function at minor time steps. This is so the solvers can compute the states for your S-function. If your S-function has nonsampled zero crossings, the engine also calls the output and zero-crossings portions of your S-function at minor time steps so that it can locate the zero crossings.

---

**Note** See “Simulation Phases in Dynamic Systems” for an explanation of major and minor time steps.

---

Some callback methods are optional. The engine invokes an optional callback only if the S-function defines the callback.

### Callback Methods for C MEX S-Functions

#### Required Callback Methods

C MEX S-functions must implement the following callback methods:

- `mdlInitializeSizes` - Specifies the sizes of various parameters in the `SimStruct`, such as the number of output ports for the block.
- `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` - Specifies the sample time(s) of the block.
- `mdlOutputs` - Calculates the output of the block.
- `mdlTerminate` - Performs any actions required at the termination of the simulation. If no actions are required, this function can be implemented as a stub.

### Optional Callback Methods

The following callback methods are optional. The engine invokes an optional callback only if the S-function defines the callback.

- `mdlCheckParameters`
- `mdlDerivatives`
- `mdlDisable`
- `mdlEnable`
- `mdlGetSimState`
- `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit`
- `mdlInitializeConditions`
- `mdlProcessParameters`
- `mdlProjection`
- `mdlRTW`
- `mdlSetDefaultPortComplexSignals`
- `mdlSetDefaultPortDataTypes`
- `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo`
- `mdlSetInputPortComplexSignal`
- `mdlSetInputPortDataType`
- `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo`
- `mdlSetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn`
- `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime`
- `mdlSetInputPortWidth`
- `mdlSetOutputPortComplexSignal`
- `mdlSetOutputPortDataType`
- `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`
- `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime`
- `mdlSetOutputPortWidth`
- `mdlSetSimState`
- `mdlSetWorkWidths`
- `mdlSimStatusChange`
- `mdlSetupRuntimeResources`
- `mdlCleanupRuntimeResources`
- `mdlStart`

- mdlUpdate
- mdlZeroCrossings

## **Callback Methods for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions**

### **Required Callback Methods**

Level-2 MATLAB S-functions must implement the following callback methods:

- **setup** - Specifies the sizes of various parameters in the `SimStruct`, such as the number of output ports for the block.
- **Outputs** - Calculates the output of the block.
- **Terminate** - Performs any actions required at the termination of the simulation. If no actions are required, this function can be implemented as a stub.

For information on writing callback methods, see “Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2.

### **Optional Callback Methods**

The following callback methods are optional. The engine invokes an optional callback only if the S-function defines the callback.

- CheckParameters
- Derivatives
- Disable
- Enable
- GetSimState
- InitializeConditions
- PostPropagationSetup
- ProcessParameters
- Projection
- SetInputPortComplexSignal
- SetInputPortDataType
- SetInputPortDimensions
- SetInputPortDimensionsMode
- SetInputPortSampleTime
- SetOutputPortComplexSignal
- SetOutputPortDataType
- SetOutputPortDimensions
- SetOutputPortSampleTime
- SetSimState
- SimStatusChange
- Start

- [Update](#)
- [WriteRTW](#)

## **See Also**

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

## **More About**

- [“S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7](#)
- [“Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4](#)
- [“S-Function Features and Limitations” on page 2-3](#)

## S-Function Compatibility

User-written level-2 S-functions are backward compatible in terms of their source code (C/C++). An S-function written in an older release that is recompiled in a newer release retains the functionality and behavior from the older release.

In addition, user-written level-2 S-function MEX files are backward compatible. For each release, all example S-function MEX files included in the previous 10 releases of MATLAB on the Windows® platform are tested for backward compatibility. In general, S-function MEX files created more than 10 releases before a new release can work in a new release if the platform and associated libraries either remain unchanged or maintain backward compatibility.

---

**Note** If a user-written S-function contains code that depends on additional libraries (e.g., by using the '-l' option with the MEX command), S-function compatibility might not be supported with a library update, a newer release of MATLAB, or a platform upgrade.

---

For best results, recompile the S-function source code in your current version of MATLAB. For more information on MEX compatibility, see “MEX Version Compatibility”.

C++ S-Functions compiled with MinGW®- w64 compiler need to be recompiled with a newer version of the compiler or a different compiler to work with MATLAB R2020a or a later release.

## S-Function Examples

In this section...
“Access S-Function Examples” on page 1-19
“Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Examples” on page 1-21
“C S-Function Examples” on page 1-22
“Fortran S-Function Examples” on page 1-25
“C++ S-Function Examples” on page 1-25
“Organizing S-Function in a Project” on page 1-25

These examples show you how to work with a variety of S-functions or programs that use S-functions, including C/C++ S-functions, Fortran S-functions, S-function Builder, Level 2 MATLAB S-functions, and Blockset Designer. Each section explains how to open the files and what is in them. These are good places to continue to develop an understanding of S-functions after learning the basics. These do not represent all the examples available for S-functions, but a relevant subsection.

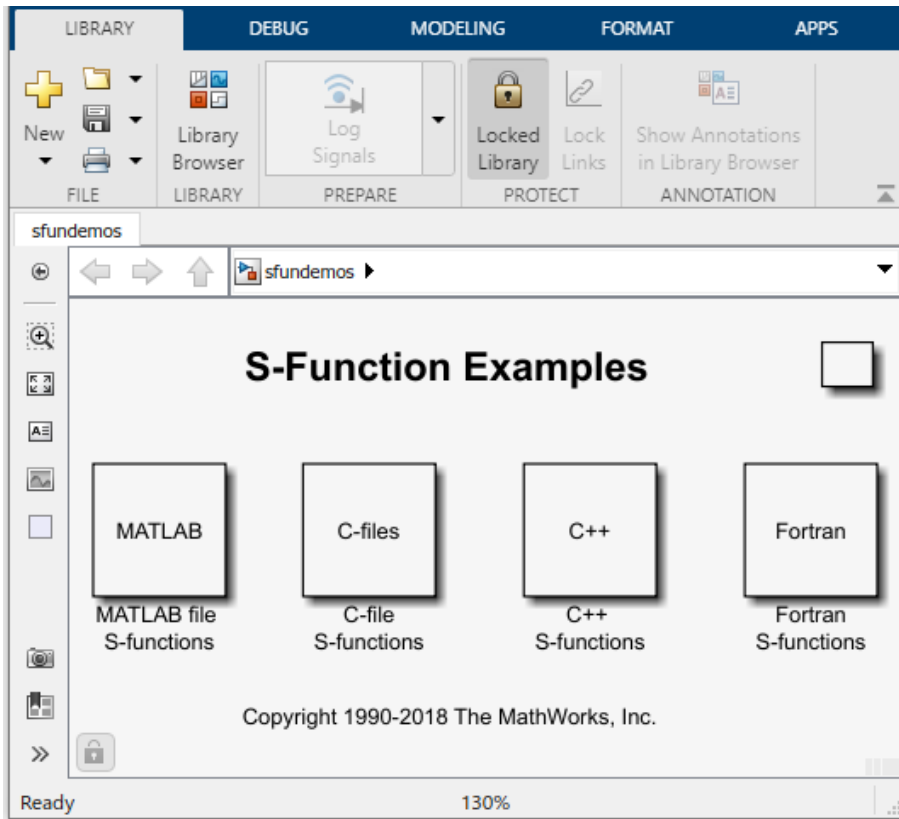
### Access S-Function Examples

Most of the S-function examples are run through `sfundemos`. This example library contains S-function models and is grouped by coding type, such as C S-functions or C++ S-functions.

To run an example from `sfundemos`:

- 1 In the MATLAB Command Window, enter `sfundemos`.

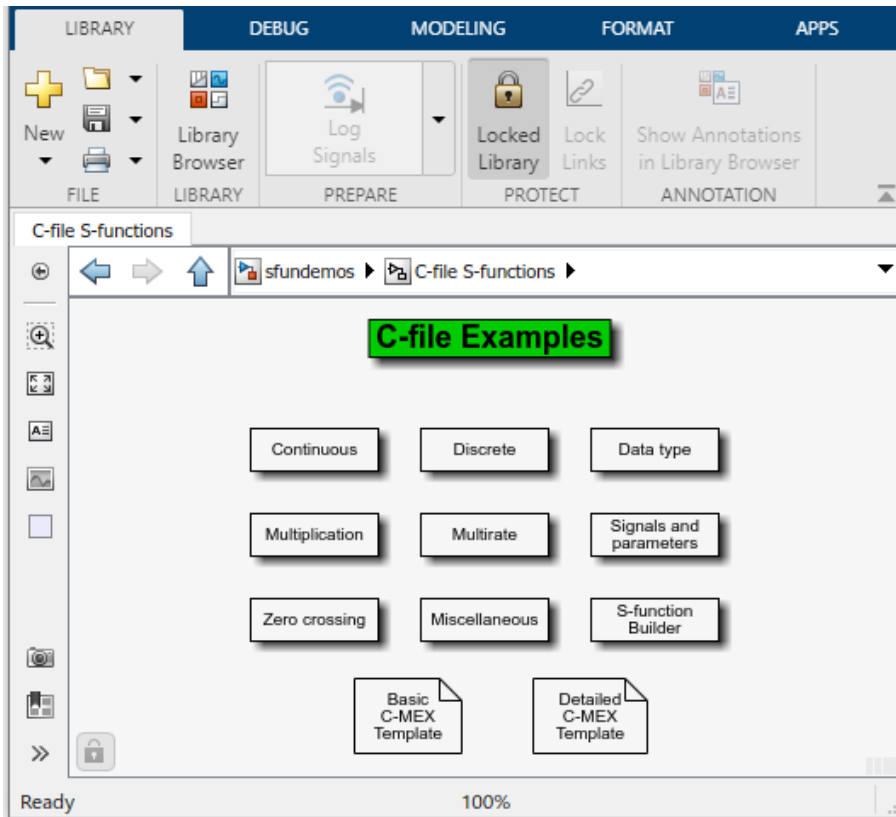
The S-function example library opens.



Each block represents a category of S-function examples.

- 2 Double-click a category to display the examples that it includes. For example, click **C-files**.





- 3 Double-click a block to open and run the example that it represents.

It might be helpful to examine some sample S-functions as you read the next chapters. Code for the examples is stored in the following folder under the MATLAB root folder.

MATLAB code `toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures`  
 C, C++, and Fortran code `toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src`

## Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Examples

The `matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures` folder (open) contains many Level-2 MATLAB S-functions. Consider starting off by looking at these files. For more on Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, see “Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2.

Filename	Model Name	Description
<code>msfcn_dsc.m</code>	<code>msfcndemo_sfundsc1</code>	Implement an S-function with an inherited sample time.
<code>msfcn_limintm.m</code>	<code>msfcndemo_limintm</code>	Implement a continuous limited integrator where the output is bounded by lower and upper bounds and includes initial conditions.
<code>msfcn_multirate.m</code>	<code>msfcndemo_multirate</code>	Implement a multirate system.

Filename	Model Name	Description
msfcn_times_two.m	msfcndemo_timestwo	Implement an S-function that doubles its input.
msfcn_unit_delay.m	msfcndemo_sfundsc2	Implement a unit delay.
msfcn_varpulse.m	msfcndemo_varpulse	Implement a variable pulse width generator by calling <code>set_param</code> from within a Level-2 MATLAB S-function. Also demonstrates how to use custom set and get methods for the block <code>SimState</code> .
msfcn_vs.m	msfcndemo_vsfunc	Implement a variable sample time block in which the first input is delayed by an amount of time determined by the second input.

## C S-Function Examples

The `matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src` folder (open) contains examples of C MEX S-functions, many of which have a MATLAB S-function counterpart. The C MEX S-functions are listed in the following table. For more on C S-functions, see “C/C++ S-Function Basics” and “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15.

Filename	Model Name	Description
csfunc.c	sfcndemo_csfunc	Implement a continuous system.
dlimintc.c	No model available	Implement a discrete-time limited integrator.
dsfunc.c	sfcndemo_dsfunc	Implement a discrete system.
limintc.c	No model available	Implement a limited integrator.
mixedm.c	sfcndemo_mixedm	Implement a hybrid dynamic system consisting of a continuous integrator (1/s) in series with a unit delay (1/z).
mixedmex.c	sfcndemo_mixedmex	Implement a hybrid dynamic system with a single output and two inputs.
slexQuantizeSFcn.c	sfcndemo_sfun_quantize	Implement a vectorized quantizer. Quantizes the input into steps as specified by the quantization interval parameter, <code>q</code> .
sdotproduct.c	sfcndemo_sdotproduct	Compute dot product (multiply-accumulate) of two real or complex vectors.
sfbuilder_bususage.c	sfbuilder_bususage	Access S-Function Builder with a bus input and output.
sfbuilder_movingAverage.c	sfbuilder_movingAverage	Implement simple time window moving average using <b>Start</b> and <b>Terminate</b> .
sftable2.c	sfcndemo_sftable2	Implement a two-dimensional table lookup.
sfun_atol.c	sfcndemo_sfun_atol	Set different absolute tolerances for each continuous state.
sfun_cplx.c	sfcndemo_cplx	Add complex data for an S-function with one input port and one parameter.

Filename	Model Name	Description
sfun_directlook.c	No model available	Implement a direct 1-D lookup.
sfun_dtype_io.c	sfcndemo_dtype_io	Implement an S-function that uses Simulink data types for inputs and outputs.
sfun_dtype_param.c	sfcndemo_dtype_param	Implement an S-function that uses Simulink data types for parameters.
sfun_dynsize.c	sfcndemo_sfun_dynsize	Implements dynamically-sized outputs .
sfun_errhdl.c	sfcndemo_sfun_errhdl	Check parameters using the mdlCheckParameters S-function routine.
sfun_fcncall.c	sfcndemo_sfun_fcncall	Execute function-call subsystems on the first and second output elements.
sfun_frmad.c	sfcndemo_frame	Implement a frame-based A/D converter.
sfun_frmda.c	sfcndemo_frame	Implement a frame-based D/A converter.
sfun_frmdft.c	sfcndemo_frame	Implement a multichannel frame-based Discrete-Fourier transformation (and its inverse).
sfun_frmunbuff.c	sfcndemo_frame	Implement a frame-based unbuffer block.
sfun_multiport.c	sfcndemo_sfun_multiport	Configure multiple input and output ports.
sfun_manswitch_mode.c	No model available	Implement a manual switch.
sfun_matadd.c	sfcndemo_matadd	Add matrices in an S-function with one input port, one output port, and one parameter.
sfun_multirate.c	sfcndemo_sfun_multirate	Demonstrate how to specify port-based sample times.
sfun_port_constant.c	sfcndemo_port_constant	Demonstrate how to specify constant port-based sample times.
sfun_port_triggered.c	sfcndemo_port_triggered	Demonstrate how to use port-based sample times in a triggered subsystem.
sfun_runtime1.c	sfcndemo_runtime	Implement run-time parameters for all tunable parameters.
sfun_runtime2.c	sfcndemo_runtime	Register individual run-time parameters.
sfun_runtime3.c	sfcndemo_runtime	Register dialog parameters as run-time parameters.
sfun_runtime4.c	sfcndemo_runtime	Implement run-time parameters as a function of multiple dialog parameters.
sfun_zc.c	sfcndemo_sfun_zc	Demonstrate use of nonsampled zero crossings to implement $\text{abs}(u)$ . This S-function is designed to be used with a variable-step solver.
sfun_zc_sat.c	sfcndemo_sfun_zc_sat	Demonstrate zero crossings with saturation.
sfun_zc_cstate_sat.c	sfcndemo_sfun_zc_cstate_sat	Implement a continuous integrator with saturation limits and zero-crossing detection.

Filename	Model Name	Description
sfun_integrator_localsolver.c	sfcndemo_sfun_localsolver	Demonstrate a continuous integrator where the continuous states are solved using a separate local solver instead of that used by the model.
sfun_angle_events.c	sfcndemo_angle_events	Implement a method for robust and efficient detection of a rotating body crossing specified angles.
sfun_angle_events.c	No model available	Demonstrate angle detection and incorporate Stateflow® to schedule function calls.
sfunmem.c	sfcndemo_sfunmem	Implement a one-integration-step delay and hold memory function.
simomex.c	sfcndemo_simomex	Implement a single-input, two-output state-space dynamic system described by the state-space equations:  $\begin{aligned} dx/dt &= Ax + Bu \\ y &= Cx + Du \end{aligned}$ where $x$ is the state vector, $u$ is vector of inputs, and $y$ is the vector of outputs.
stspace.c	sfcndemo_stspace	Implement a set of state-space equations. You can turn this into a new block by using the S-Function block and mask facility. This example MEX file performs the same function as the built-in State-Space block. This is an example of a MEX file where the number of inputs, outputs, and states is dependent on the parameters passed in from the workspace.
stvctf.c	sfcndemo_stvctf	Implement a continuous-time transfer function whose transfer function polynomials are passed in via the input vector. This is useful for continuous time adaptive control applications.
stvdtf.c	sfcndemo_stvdtf	Implement a discrete-time transfer function whose transfer function polynomials are passed in via the input vector. This is useful for discrete-time adaptive control applications.
stvmgain.c	sfcndemo_stvmgain	Implement a time-varying matrix gain.
table3.c	No model available	Implement a 3-D lookup table.
timestwo.c	sfcndemo_timestwo	Implement a C MEX S-function that doubles its input.
vdlmintc.c	No model available	Implement a discrete-time vectorized limited integrator.
vdpmex.c	sfcndemo_vdpmex	Implement the Van der Pol equation.
vlimintc.c	No model available	Implement a vectorized limited integrator.

Filename	Model Name	Description
vsfunc.c	sfcndemo_vsfunc	Illustrate how to create a variable sample time block. This block implements a variable-step delay in which the first input is delayed by an amount of time determined by the second input.
sfun_pwm.c	sfcndemo_pwm	Illustrate how to create a controllable sample time block.
sfun_d2c	sfcndemo_d2c	Illustrate how to convert a discrete input signal into a smooth continuous output signal
sfun_pulse_delay.c	sfcndemo_vco	Illustrate how to implement an algorithm to efficiently delay a discrete valued input signal by a variable amount using variable sample time.

## Fortran S-Function Examples

The following table lists sample Fortran S-functions available in the *matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src* folder (open). For more on Fortran S-functions, see “Create Level-2 Fortran S-Functions” on page 6-2.

Filename	Model Name	Description
sfun_atmos.c sfun_atmos_sub.F	sfcndemo_atmos	Calculate the 1976 standard atmosphere to 86 km using a Fortran subroutine.

## C++ S-Function Examples

The following table lists sample C++ S-functions available in the *matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src* folder (open). For more on C++ S-functions, see “C/C++ S-Function Basics” and “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15.

Filename	Model Name	Description
sfun_counter_cpp.cpp	sfcndemo_counter_cpp	Store a C++ object in the pointers vector PWork.
sfbuilder_permute.cpp	sfbuilder_permutation	Implement permutation by calling external C++ classes using Start and Terminate.
sfbuilder_linfilt.cpp	sfbuilder_upsampling	Implement linear filtering with C++ STL algorithms for the upsampling of a sign wave.

## Organizing S-Function in a Project

The following example shows how to arrange S-function artifacts into a project. This is accomplished using the Blockset Designer feature. For more on Blockset Designer, see “Create a Blockset Project”.

Filename	Description
slexBlocksetDesignerExample	Organize S-function artifacts into a single project using Blockset Designer.

## See Also

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

## More About

- [“S-Function Concepts”](#) on page 1-7
- [“Use S-Functions in Models”](#) on page 1-4
- [“S-Function Callback Methods”](#) on page 1-14

# Selecting an S-Function Implementation

---

- “Available S-Function Implementations” on page 2-2
- “S-Function Features and Limitations” on page 2-3
- “S-Functions Incorporate Legacy C Code” on page 2-7

# Available S-Function Implementations

You can implement your S-function in one of five ways:

- **A Level-2 MATLAB S-function** provides access to a more extensive set of the S-function API and supports code generation. In most cases, use a Level-2 MATLAB S-function when you want to implement your S-function in MATLAB.
- **A handwritten C MEX S-function** provides the most programming flexibility. You can implement your algorithm as a C MEX S-function or write a wrapper S-function to call existing C, C++, or Fortran code. Writing a new S-function requires knowledge of the S-function API and, if you want to generate inlined code for the S-function, the Target Language Compiler (TLC).
- **The S-Function Builder** is a graphical user interface for programming a subset of S-function functionality. If you are new to writing C MEX S-functions, you can use the S-Function Builder to generate new S-functions or incorporate existing C or C++ code without interacting with the S-function API. The S-Function Builder can also generate TLC files for inlining your S-function during code generation with the Simulink Coder product.
- **The Legacy Code Tool** is a set of MATLAB commands that helps you create an S-function to incorporate legacy C or C++ code. Like the S-Function Builder, the Legacy Code Tool can generate a TLC file to inline your S-function during code generation. The Legacy Code Tool provides access to fewer of the methods in the S-function API than the S-Function Builder or a handwritten C MEX S-function.

The following sections describe the uses, features, and differences of these S-function implementations. The last section compares using a handwritten C MEX S-function, the S-Function Builder, and the Legacy Code Tool to incorporate an existing C function into your Simulink model.



# S-Function Features and Limitations

## S-Function Features

The following tables give overviews of the features supported by different types of S-functions. The first table focuses on handwritten S-functions. The second table compares the features of S-functions automatically generated by the S-Function Builder or Legacy Code Tool.

### Features of Hand-Written S-Functions

Feature	Level-2 MATLAB S-Function	Handwritten C MEX S-Function
Data types	Supports any data type supported by Simulink software, including fixed-point types.	Supports any data type supported by Simulink software, including fixed-point types.
Numeric types	Supports real and complex signals.	Supports real and complex signals.
Frame support	Supports framed and unframed signals.	Supports framed and unframed signals.
Port dimensions	Supports scalar, 1-D, and multidimensional input and output signals.	Supports scalar, 1-D, and multidimensional input and output signals.
S-function API	Supports a larger set of the S-function API. See “Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods” on page 3-3 for a list of supported methods.	Supports the entire S-function API.
Code generation support	Requires a handwritten TLC file to generate code.	Natively supports code generation. Requires a handwritten TLC file to inline the S-function during code generation.
Simulink Accelerator mode	Provides the option to use a TLC file in Accelerator mode, instead of running interpretively.	Provides the option to use a TLC or MEX file in Accelerator mode.
Model reference	Supports Normal and Accelerator mode simulations when used in a referenced model. Requires a TLC file for Accelerator mode.	Provides options for sample time inheritance and Normal mode support when used in a referenced model. See “Model Reference Requirements and Limitations”.
Simulink. AliasType and Simulink. NumericType support	Supports Simulink.NumericType and Simulink.AliasType classes (see “Configure Custom Data Types” on page 9-18).	Supports all of these classes (see “Configure Custom Data Types” on page 9-18).
Bus input and output signals	Does not support bus input or output signals.	Supports nonvirtual bus input or output signals.
Tunable and run-time parameters	Supports tunable and run-time parameters.	Supports tunable and run-time parameters.
Work vectors	Supports DWork vectors (see “Using DWork Vectors in Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 10-15).	Supports all work vector types (see “Types of DWork Vectors” on page 8-4).

**Features of Automatically Generated S-Functions**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>S-Function Builder</b>	<b>Legacy Code Tool</b>
Data types	Supports any data type supported by Simulink software, including fixed-point types.	Supports all built-in data types. To use a fixed-point data type, you must specify the data type as a <code>Simulink.NumericType</code> . You cannot use a fixed-point type with unspecified scaling.
Numeric types	Supports real and complex signals.	Supports complex signals only for built-in data types.
Frame support	Supports framed and unframed signals.	Does not support frame-based signals.
Port dimensions	Supports scalar, 1-D, and multidimensional input and output signals.	Supports scalar, 1-D, and multidimensional input and output signals.
S-function API	Supports creation of custom <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> , <code>mdlInitializeSampleTimes</code> , <code>mdlDerivatives</code> , <code>mdlUpdate</code> , and <code>mdlOutputs</code> . Also allows for automatic generation of <code>mdlStart</code> and <code>mdlTerminate</code> .	Supports <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> , <code>mdlInitializeSampleTimes</code> , <code>mdlStart</code> , <code>mdlInitializeConditions</code> , <code>mdlOutputs</code> , and <code>mdlTerminate</code> .
Code generation support	Natively supports code generation. Also, automatically generates a TLC file for inlining the S-function during code generation.	Natively supports code generation optimized for embedded systems. Also, automatically generates a TLC file that supports expression folding for inlining the S-function during code generation.
Simulink Accelerator™ mode	Uses a TLC file in Accelerator mode, if the file was generated. Otherwise, uses the MEX file.	Provides the option to use a TLC or MEX file in Accelerator mode.
Model reference	Uses default behaviors when used in a referenced model.	Uses default behaviors when used in a referenced model.
<code>Simulink.AliasType</code> and <code>Simulink.NumericType</code>	Does not support these classes.	Supports <code>Simulink.AliasType</code> and <code>Simulink.NumericType</code> .
Bus input and output signals	Supports bus input and output signals. See <code>sfbuilder_bususage</code> for an example.	Supports bus input and output signals. You must define a <code>Simulink.Bus</code> object in the MATLAB workspace that is equivalent to the structure of the input or output used in the legacy code. Does not support bus parameters.
Tunable and run-time parameters	Supports tunable parameters only during simulation. Supports run-time parameters.	Supports tunable and run-time parameters.

Feature	S-Function Builder	Legacy Code Tool
Work vectors	Does not provide access to work vectors.	Supports DWork vectors with the usage type <code>SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DWORK</code> . See “Types of DWork Vectors” on page 8-4 for a discussion on the different DWork vector usage types.

## S-Function Limitations

The following table summarizes the major limitations of the different types of S-functions.

Implementation	Limitations
Level-2 MATLAB S-functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Does not support bus input and output signals.</li> <li>Cannot incorporate legacy code during simulation, only during code generation through a TLC file.</li> </ul>
Handwritten C MEX S-function	Supports model reference with some limitations. See “S-Functions in Referenced Models”.
S-Function Builder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Generates S-function code using a wrapper function which incurs additional overhead.</li> <li>Does not support the following S-function features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Work vectors</li> <li>Port-based sample times</li> <li>Multiple sample times or a nonzero offset time</li> <li>Dynamically-sized input and output signals for an S-function with multiple input and output ports</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>Note</b> S-functions with one input and one output port can have dynamically-sized signals.</p>

Implementation	Limitations
Legacy Code Tool	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Generates C MEX S-functions for existing functions written in C or C++ only. The tool does not support transformation of MATLAB or Fortran functions.</li><li>• Can interface with C++ functions, but not C++ objects.</li><li>• Does not support simulating continuous or discrete states.</li><li>• Does not support use of function pointers as the output of the legacy function being called.</li><li>• Always sets the S-function's flag for direct feedthrough on page 1-7 (<code>sizes.DirFeedthrough</code>) to <code>true</code>.</li><li>• Supports only the continuous, but fixed in minor time step, sample time and offset on page 1-8 option.</li><li>• Supports complex numbers, but only with Simulink built-in data types.</li><li>• Does not support the following S-function features:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Work vectors, other than general DWork vectors</li><li>• Frame-based input and output signals</li><li>• Port-based sample times</li><li>• Multiple block-based sample times</li></ul></li></ul>

## S-Functions Incorporate Legacy C Code

### In this section...

“Setup Working Environment for Incorporating Legacy C Code ” on page 2-7  
“Overview” on page 2-7  
“Using a Hand-Written S-Function to Incorporate Legacy Code” on page 2-8  
“Using the S-Function Builder to Incorporate Legacy Code” on page 2-9  
“Using the Legacy Code Tool to Incorporate Legacy Code” on page 2-13

### Setup Working Environment for Incorporating Legacy C Code

This example opens up a directory containing files required for this topic.

Open this example to access the following files.

- `doubleIt.c`
- `doubleIt.h`
- `wrapsfcn.c`
- `wrapsfcn.tlc`
- `builder_wrapsfcn.c`
- `builder_wrapsfcn.tlc`
- `builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c`
- `lct_wrapsfcn.m`
- `legacy_wrapsfcn.c`
- `legacy_wrapsfcn.tlc`

### Overview

C MEX S-functions allow you to call existing C code within your Simulink models. For example, consider the simple C function `doubleIt.c` that outputs a value two times the value of the function input.

```
double doubleIt(double u)
{
    return(u * 2.0);
}
```

You can create an S-function that calls `doubleIt.c` by either:

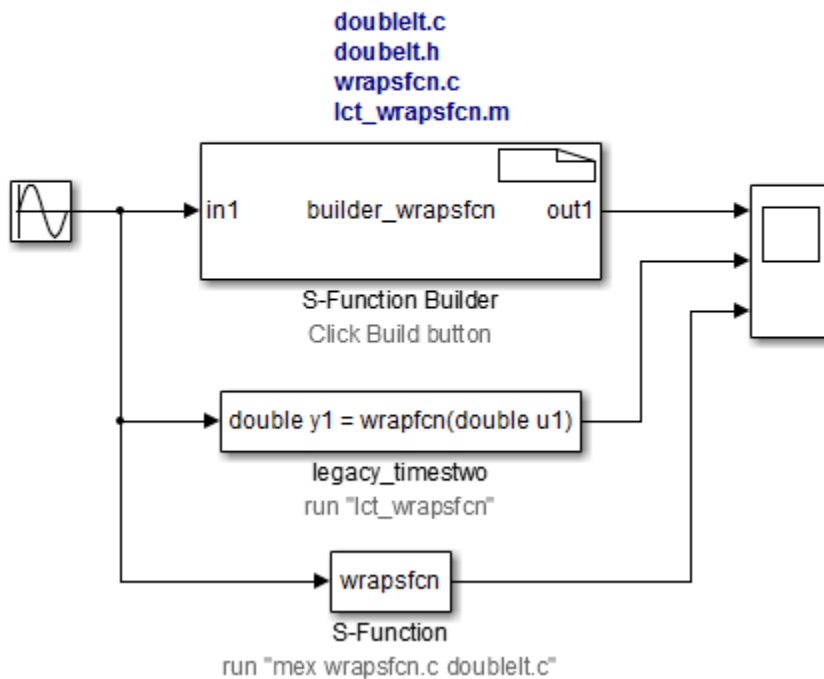
- Writing a wrapper S-function on page 2-8. Using this method, you hand write a new C S-function and associated TLC file. This method requires the most knowledge about the structure of a C S-function.
- Using an S-Function Builder block on page 2-9. Using this method, you enter the characteristics of the S-function into a block dialog. This method does not require any knowledge about writing S-functions. However, a basic understanding of the structure of an S-function can make the S-Function Builder dialog box easier to use.

- Using the Legacy Code Tool on page 2-13. Using this command line method, you define the characteristics of your S-function in a data structure in the MATLAB workspace. This method requires the least amount of knowledge about S-functions.

You can also call external C code from a Simulink model using a MATLAB Function block. For more information see “Integrate C Code by Using the MATLAB Function Block”.

The following sections describe how to create S-functions for use in a Simulink simulation and with Simulink Coder code generation, using the previous three methods. The example model contains blocks that use these S-functions. If you plan to create the model, copy the files `doubleIt.c` and `doubleIt.h` into your working folder.

**Demonstration model for choosing an S-function implementation to incorporate legacy C code.**  
 Click on the file names to copy them into your working directory then follow each block's instructions to generate MEX-files:



## Using a Hand-Written S-Function to Incorporate Legacy Code

The S-function `wrapsfcn.c` calls the legacy function `doubleIt.c` in its `mdlOutputs` method. Save the `wrapsfcn.c` file into your working folder, if you are planning to create the example model.

To incorporate the legacy code into the S-function, `wrapsfcn.c` begins by declaring `doubleIt.c` with the following line:

```
extern real_T doubleIt(real_T u);
```

Once declared, the S-function can use `doubleIt.c` in its `mdlOutputs` method. For example:

```
/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Calls the doubleIt.c function to multiple the input by 2.
```

```

*/
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int tid){
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    real_T          *y      = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);

    *y = doubleIt(*uPtrs[0]);
}

```

To compile the `wrapsfcn.c` S-function, run the following `mex` command. Make sure that the `doubleIt.c` file is in your working folder.

```
mex wrapsfcn.c doubleIt.c
```

To generate code for the S-function using the Simulink Coder code generator, you need to write a Target Language Compiler (TLC) file. The following TLC file `wrapsfcn.tlc` uses the `BlockTypeSetup` function to declare a function prototype for `doubleIt.c`. The TLC file's `Outputs` function then tells the Simulink Coder code generator how to inline the call to `doubleIt.c`. For example:

```

%implements "wrapsfcn" "C"
%% File      : wrapsfcn.tlc
%% Abstract:
%%   Example tlc file for S-function wrapsfcn.c
%%

%% Function: BlockTypeSetup =====
%% Abstract:
%%   Create function prototype in model.h as:
%%   "extern double doubleIt(double u);"
%%

%function BlockTypeSetup(block, system) void
%openfile buffer

%% PROVIDE ONE LINE OF CODE AS A FUNCTION PROTOTYPE
extern double doubleIt(double u);

%closefile buffer
%<LibCacheFunctionPrototype(buffer)>
%%endfunction %% BlockTypeSetup

%% Function: Outputs =====
%% Abstract:
%%   CALL LEGACY FUNCTION: y = doubleIt( u );
%%

%function Outputs(block, system) Output

/* %<Type> Block: %<Name> */

%assign u = LibBlockInputSignal(0, "", "", 0)
%assign y = LibBlockOutputSignal(0, "", "", 0)

%% PROVIDE THE CALLING STATEMENT FOR "doubleIt"
%<y> = doubleIt( %<u> );

%endfunction %% Outputs

```

For more information on the TLC, see "Target Language Compiler Basics" (Simulink Coder).

## Using the S-Function Builder to Incorporate Legacy Code

The S-Function Builder automates the creation of S-functions and TLC files that incorporate legacy code. For this example, in addition to `doubleIt.c`, you need the header file `doubleIt.h` that declares the `doubleIt.c` function format, as follows:

```
extern real_T doubleIt(real_T in1);
```

Use the S-Function Builder block to configure the block dialog to call the legacy function `doubleIt.c`. In the S-Function Builder block dialog:

- The **S-function name** field in the **Parameters** pane defines the name `builder_wrapsfcn` for the generated S-function.
- The **Data Properties** pane names the input and output ports as `in1` and `out1`, respectively.
- The **Libraries** pane provides the interface to the legacy code.
  - The **Library/Object/Source files** field contains the source file name `doubleIt.c`.
  - The **Includes** field contains the following line to include the header file that declares the legacy function:

```
#include <doubleIt.h>
```

- The **Outputs** pane calls the legacy function with the lines:
 

```
/* Call function that multiplies the input by 2 */
    *out1 = doubleIt(*in1);
```
- The **Build Info** pane selects the **Generate wrapper TLC** option.

When you click **Build**, the S-Function Builder generates three files.

File Name	Description
<code>builder_wrapsfcn.c</code>	The main S-function.
<code>builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c</code>	A wrapper file containing separate functions for the code entered in the <b>Outputs</b> , <b>Continuous Derivatives</b> , and <b>Discrete Updates</b> panes of the S-Function Builder.
<code>builder_wrapsfcn.tlc</code>	The S-function's TLC file.

The `builder_wrapsfcn.c` file follows a standard format:

- The file begins with a set of `#define` statements that incorporate the information from the S-Function Builder. For example, the following lines define the first input port:

```
#define NUM_INPUTS      1
/* Input Port 0 */
#define IN_PORT_0_NAME  in1
#define INPUT_0_WIDTH  1
#define INPUT_DIMS_0_COL 1
#define INPUT_0_DTYPE   real_T
#define INPUT_0_COMPLEX COMPLEX_NO
#define IN_0_FRAME_BASED FRAME_NO
#define IN_0_DIMS      1-D
#define INPUT_0_FEEDTHROUGH 1
```

- Next, the file declares all the wrapper functions found in the `builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c` file. This example requires only a wrapper function for the **Outputs** code.

```
extern void builder_wrapsfcn_Outputs_wrapper(const real_T *in1,
                                             real_T *out1);
```

- Following these definitions and declarations, the file contains the S-function methods, such as `mdlInitializeSizes`, that initialize the S-function's input ports, output ports, and parameters. See "Process View" on page 4-52 for a list of methods that are called during the S-function initialization phase.



- The `mdlOutputs` method of the file calls the `builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c` function. The method uses the input and output names `in1` and `out1`, as defined in the **Data Properties** pane, when calling the wrapper function. For example:

```
/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 *
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    const real_T *in1 = (const real_T*) ssGetInputPortSignal(S,0);
    real_T *out1 = (real_T *)ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);

    builder_wrapsfcn_Outputs_wrapper(in1, out1);
}

```

- The file `builder_wrapsfcn.c` concludes with the required `mdlTerminate` method.

The wrapper function `builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c` has three parts:

- The **Include Files** section includes the `doubleIt.h` file, along with the standard S-function header files:

```
/*
 * Include Files
 *
 */
#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
#include "tmwtypes.h"
#include "simstruc_types.h"
#else
#include "rtwtypes.h"
#endif
/* %%-SFUNWIZ_wrapper_includes_Changes_BEGIN --- EDIT HERE TO _END */
#include <math.h>
#include <doubleIt.h>
/* %%-SFUNWIZ_wrapper_includes_Changes_END --- EDIT HERE TO _BEGIN */

```

- The **External References** section contains information from the **External reference declarations** field on the **Libraries** pane. This example does not use this section.
- The **Output functions** section declares the function `builder_wrapfcn_Outputs_wrapper`, which contains the code entered in the S-Function Builder block dialog's **Outputs** pane:

```
/*
 * Output functions
 *
 */
void builder_wrapfcn_Outputs_wrapper(const real_T *in1,
                                     real_T *out1)
{
/* %%-SFUNWIZ_wrapper_Outputs_Changes_BEGIN --- EDIT HERE TO _END */
/* Call function that multiplies the input by 2 */

    *out1 = doubleIt(*in1);
/* %%-SFUNWIZ_wrapper_Outputs_Changes_END --- EDIT HERE TO _BEGIN */
}

```

---

**Note** Compared to a handwritten S-function, the S-Function Builder places the call to the legacy C function down an additional level through the wrapper file `builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c`.

---

The TLC file `builder_wrapsfcn.tlc` generated by the S-Function Builder is similar to the previous handwritten version. The file declares the legacy function in `BlockTypeSetup` and calls it in the `Outputs` method.

```
%% File : builder_wrapsfun.tlc
%%

```

```

%% Description:
%% Simulink Coder wrapper functions interface generated for
%% S-function "builder_wrapsfun.c".
%%
%implements builder_wrapsfun "C"
%% Function: BlockTypeSetup =====
%%
%% Purpose:
%% Set up external references for wrapper functions in the
%% generated code.
%%
%function BlockTypeSetup(block, system) Output
    %assign realType = LibGetDataTypeNameFromId(::CompiledModel.tSS_DOUBLE)

    %if IsModelReferenceSimTarget() || CodeFormat == "S-Function" || ::isRAccel
    %assign hFileName = "builder_wrapsfun_accel_wrapper"
    %assign hFileNameMacro = FEVAL("upper", hFileName)
    %openfile hFile = "%<hFileName>.h"
    %selectfile hFile
    #ifndef _%<hFileNameMacro>_H_
    #define _%<hFileNameMacro>_H_

    #ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
    #include "tmwtypes.h"
    #else
    #include "rtwtypes.h"
    #endif
    #ifdef __cplusplus
    #define SFB_EXTERN_C extern "C"
    #else
    #define SFB_EXTERN_C extern
    #endif
    SFB_EXTERN_C void builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper_accel(const %<realType> *in1,
        %<realType> *out1);
    #undef SFB_EXTERN_C
    #endif
    %closefile hFile

    %assign cFileName = "builder_wrapsfun_accel_wrapper"
    %openfile cFile = "%<cFileName>.c"
    %selectfile cFile
    #include <string.h>
    #ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
    #include "tmwtypes.h"
    #else
    #include "rtwtypes.h"
    #endif
    #include "%<hFileName>.h"

    extern void builder_wrapsfun_Start_wrapper(void);
    extern void builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper(const %<realType> *in1,
        %<realType> *out1);
    extern void builder_wrapsfun_Terminate_wrapper(void);
    void builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper_accel(const %<realType> *in1,
        %<realType> *out1){
    builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper(in1,
        out1);
    }

    %closefile cFile

    %<LibAddToCommonIncludes("%<hFileName>.h")>

    %else
    %openfile externs

    #ifdef __cplusplus
    #define SFB_EXTERN_C extern "C"
    #else
    #define SFB_EXTERN_C extern
    #endif

```

```

SFB_EXTERN_C void builder_wrapsfun_Start_wrapper(void);

SFB_EXTERN_C void builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper(const %<realType> *in1,
                                                    %<realType> *out1);

SFB_EXTERN_C void builder_wrapsfun_Terminate_wrapper(void);

#ifdef SFB_EXTERN_C
%closefile externs
%<LibCacheExtern(externs)>

#endif
%%
%endfunction

%% Function: Outputs =====
%%
%% Purpose:
%%   Code generation rules for mdlOutputs function.
%%
%function Outputs(block, system) Output
%%
%assign pu0 = LibBlockInputSignalAddr(0, "", "", 0)
%assign py0 = LibBlockOutputSignalAddr(0, "", "", 0)

%if IsModelReferenceSimTarget() || CodeFormat == "S-Function" || ::isRAccel
    builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper_accel(%<pu0>, %<py0>);
%else
    builder_wrapsfun_Outputs_wrapper(%<pu0>, %<py0>);
%endif

%%
%endfunction

%% [EOF] builder_wrapsfun.tlc

```

## Using the Legacy Code Tool to Incorporate Legacy Code

The section “Integrate C Functions into Simulink Models with Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-35 in “Writing S-Functions in C” shows how to use the Legacy Code Tool to create an S-function that incorporates `doubleIt.c`. For a script that performs the steps in that example, copy the file `lct_wrapsfcn.m` to your working folder. Make sure that the `doubleIt.c` and `doubleIt.h` files are in your working folder then run the script by typing `lct_wrapsfcn` at the MATLAB command prompt. The script creates and compiles the S-function `legacy_wrapsfcn.c` and creates the TLC file `legacy_wrapsfcn.tlc` via the following commands.

```

% Create the data structure
def = legacy_code('initialize');

% Populate the data structure
def.SourceFiles = {'doubleIt.c'};
def.HeaderFiles = {'doubleIt.h'};
def.SFunctionName = 'legacy_wrapsfcn';
def.OutputFcnSpec = 'double y1 = doubleIt(double u1)';
def.SampleTime = [-1,0];

% Generate the S-function
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', def);

% Compile the MEX-file
legacy_code('compile', def);

% Generate a TLC-file
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', def);

```

The S-function `legacy_wrapsfcn.c` generated by the Legacy Code Tool begins by including the `doubleIt.h` header file. The `mdlOutputs` method then directly calls the `doubleIt.c` function, as follows:

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    /*
     * Get access to Parameter/Input/Output/DWork/size information
     */
    real_T *u1 = (real_T *) ssGetInputPortSignal(S, 0);
    real_T *y1 = (real_T *) ssGetOutputPortSignal(S, 0);

    /*
     * Call the legacy code function
     */
    *y1 = doubleIt( *u1);
}
```

The S-function generated by the Legacy Code Tool differs from the S-function generated by the S-Function Builder as follows:

- The S-function generated by the S-Function Builder calls the legacy function `doubleIt.c` through the wrapper function `builder_wrapsfcn_wrapper.c`. The S-function generated by the Legacy Code Tool directly calls `doubleIt.c` from its `mdlOutputs` method.
- The S-Function Builder uses the input and output names entered into the **Data Properties** pane, allowing you to customize these names in the S-function. The Legacy Code Tool uses the default names `y` and `u` for the outputs and inputs, respectively. You cannot specify customized names to use in the generated S-function when using the Legacy Code Tool.
- The S-Function Builder and Legacy Code Tool both specify an inherited sample time, by default. However, the S-Function Builder uses an offset time of `0.0` while the Legacy Code Tool specifies that the offset time is fixed in minor time steps.

The TLC file `legacy_wrapsfcn.tlc` supports expression folding by defining `BlockInstanceSetup` and `BlockOutputSignal` functions. The TLC file also contains a `BlockTypeSetup` function to declare a function prototype for `doubleIt.c` and an `Outputs` function to tell the Simulink Coder code generator how to inline the call to `doubleIt.c`:

```
%% Function: BlockTypeSetup =====
%%
%%function BlockTypeSetup(block, system) void
%%
%% The Target Language must be C
%%if ::GenCPP==1
%%<LibReportFatalError("This S-Function generated by the Legacy Code Tool
%% must be only used with the C Target Language")>
%%endif
%%<LibAddToCommonIncludes("doubleIt.h")>
%%<LibAddToModelSources("doubleIt")>
%%
%%endfunction

%% Function: BlockInstanceSetup =====
%%
%%function BlockInstanceSetup(block, system) void
%%
%%<LibBlockSetIsExpressionCompliant(block)>
%%
%%endfunction

%% Function: Outputs =====
%%
%%function Outputs(block, system) Output
%%
%%if !LibBlockOutputSignalIsExpr(0)
```

```
        %assign u1_val = LibBlockInputSignal(0, "", "", 0)
        %assign y1_val = LibBlockOutputSignal(0, "", "", 0)
    %%
    %<y1_val = doubleIt( %<u1_val>);
    %endif
%%
%endfunction

%% Function: BlockOutputSignal =====
%%
%function BlockOutputSignal(block,system,portIdx,ucv,lcu,idx,retType) void
%%
%assign u1_val = LibBlockInputSignal(0, "", "", 0)
%assign y1_val = LibBlockOutputSignal(0, "", "", 0)
%%
%switch retType
%case "Signal"
    %if portIdx == 0
        %return "doubleIt( %<u1_val>)"
    %else
        %assign errTxt = "Block output port index not supported: %<portIdx>"
    %endif
%default
    %assign errTxt = "Unsupported return type: %<retType>"
    %<LibBlockReportError(block,errTxt)>
%endswitch
%%
%endfunction
```



# Writing S-Functions in MATLAB

---

- “Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2
- “Maintain Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-10

## Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

### In this section...

“Setup Working Environment to Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Function” on page 3-2  
“About Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2  
“About Run-Time Objects” on page 3-3  
“Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Template” on page 3-3  
“Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods” on page 3-3  
“Using the setup Method” on page 3-4  
“Example of Writing a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function” on page 3-5  
“Instantiating a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function” on page 3-7  
“Operations for Variable-Size Signals” on page 3-8  
“Generating Code from a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function” on page 3-8  
“MATLAB S-Function Examples” on page 3-8  
“MATLAB S-Function Limitations” on page 3-8

## Setup Working Environment to Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Function

This example opens up a directory containing the following files required from this topic.

- 1 msfuntmpl\_basic.m
- 2 msfuntmpl.m
- 3 msfcn\_unit\_delay.m
- 4 msfcndemo\_sfundsc2.slx

## About Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

The Level-2 MATLAB S-function API allows you to use the MATLAB language to create custom blocks with multiple input and output ports and capable of handling any type of signal produced by a Simulink model, including matrix and frame signals of any data type. The Level-2 MATLAB S-function API corresponds closely to the API for creating C MEX S-functions. Much of the documentation for creating C MEX S-functions applies also to Level-2 MATLAB S-functions. To avoid duplication, this section focuses on providing information that is specific to writing Level-2 MATLAB S-functions.

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function is MATLAB function that defines the properties and behavior of an instance of a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block that references the MATLAB function in a Simulink model. The MATLAB function itself comprises a set of callback methods (see “Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods” on page 3-3) that the Simulink engine invokes when updating or simulating the model. The callback methods perform the actual work of initializing and computing the outputs of the block defined by the S-function.

To facilitate these tasks, the engine passes a run-time object to the callback methods as an argument. The run-time object effectively serves as a MATLAB proxy for the S-Function block, allowing the callback methods to set and access the block properties during simulation or model updating.



## About Run-Time Objects

When the Simulink engine invokes a Level-2 MATLAB S-function callback method, it passes an instance of the `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class to the method as an argument. This instance, known as the run-time object for the S-Function block, serves the same purpose for Level-2 MATLAB S-function callback methods as the `SimStruct` structure serves for C MEX S-function callback methods. The object enables the method to provide and obtain information about various elements of the block ports, parameters, states, and work vectors. The method does this by getting or setting properties or invoking methods of the block run-time object. See the documentation for the `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class for information on getting and setting run-time object properties and invoking run-time object methods.

Run-time objects do not support MATLAB sparse matrices. For example, if the variable `block` is a run-time object, the following line in a Level-2 MATLAB S-function produces an error:

```
block.Outport(1).Data = speye(10);
```

where the `speye` command forms a sparse identity matrix.

---

**Note** Other MATLAB programs besides MATLAB S-functions can use run-time objects to obtain information about a MATLAB S-function in a model that is simulating. See “Access Block Data During Simulation” in *Using Simulink* for more information.

---

## Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Template

Use the basic Level-2 MATLAB S-function template `msfuntmpl_basic.m` to get a head start on creating a new Level-2 MATLAB S-function. The template contains skeleton implementations of the required callback methods defined by the Level-2 MATLAB S-function API. To write a more complicated S-function, use the annotated template `msfuntmpl.m`.

To create a MATLAB S-function, make a copy of the template and edit the copy as necessary to reflect the desired behavior of the S-function you are creating. The following two sections describe the contents of the MATLAB code template. The section “Example of Writing a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function” on page 3-5 describes how to write a Level-2 MATLAB S-function that models a unit delay.

## Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods

The Level-2 MATLAB S-function API defines the signatures and general purposes of the callback methods that constitute a Level-2 MATLAB S-function. The S-function itself provides the implementations of these callback methods. The implementations in turn determine the block attributes (e.g., ports, parameters, and states) and behavior (e.g., the block outputs as a function of time and the block inputs, states, and parameters). By creating an S-function with an appropriate set of callback methods, you can define a block type that meets the specific requirements of your application.

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function must include the following callback methods:

- A `setup` function to initialize the basic S-function characteristics
- An `Outputs` function to calculate the S-function outputs

Your S-function can contain other methods, depending on the requirements of the block that the S-function defines. The methods defined by the Level-2 MATLAB S-function API generally correspond to similarly named methods defined by the C MEX S-function API. For information on when these methods are called during simulation, see “Process View” on page 4-52 in “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52.

The following table lists all the Level-2 MATLAB S-function callback methods and their C MEX counterparts.

<b>Level-2 MATLAB Method</b>	<b>Equivalent C MEX Method</b>
setup (see “Using the setup Method” on page 3-4)	mdlInitializeSizes
CheckParameters	mdlCheckParameters
Derivatives	mdlDerivatives
Disable	mdlDisable
Enable	mdlEnable
InitializeConditions	mdlInitializeConditions
Outputs	mdlOutputs
PostPropagationSetup	mdlSetWorkWidths
ProcessParameters	mdlProcessParameters
Projection	mdlProjection
SetInputPortComplexSignal	mdlSetInputPortComplexSignal
SetInputPortDataType	mdlSetInputPortDataType
SetInputPortDimensions	mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo
SetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn	mdlSetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn
SetInputPortSampleTime	mdlSetInputPortSampleTime
SetOutputPortComplexSignal	mdlSetOutputPortComplexSignal
SetOutputPortDataType	mdlSetOutputPortDataType
SetOutputPortDimensions	mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo
SetOutputPortSampleTime	mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime
SimStatusChange	mdlSimStatusChange
Start	mdlStart
Terminate	mdlTerminate
Update	mdlUpdate
WriteRTW	mdlRTW

## Using the setup Method

The body of the setup method in a Level-2 MATLAB S-function initializes the instance of the corresponding Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block. In this respect, the setup method is similar to the mdlInitializeSizes and mdlInitializeSampleTimes callback methods implemented by C MEX S-functions. The setup method performs the following tasks:

- Initializing the number of input and output ports of the block.
- Setting attributes such as dimensions, data types, complexity, and sample times for these ports.
- Specifying the block sample time. See “Specify Sample Time” in *Using Simulink* for more information on how to specify valid sample times.
- Setting the number of S-function dialog parameters.
- Registering S-function callback methods by passing the handles of local functions in the MATLAB S-function to the `RegBlockMethod` method of the S-Function block's run-time object. See the documentation for `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` for information on using the `RegBlockMethod` method.

## Example of Writing a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function

The following steps illustrate how to write a simple Level-2 MATLAB S-function. When applicable, the steps include examples from the S-function example `msfcn_unit_delay.m` used in the model `msfcdemo_sfundsc2`. All lines of code use the variable name `block` for the S-function run-time object.

- 1 Open MATLAB S-function template `msfuntmpl_basic.m` from the working folder. If you change the file name when you copy the file, change the function name in the `function` line to the same name.
- 2 Modify the `setup` method to initialize the S-function's attributes. For this example:
  - Set the run-time object's `NumInputPorts` and `NumOutputPorts` properties to 1 in order to initialize one input port and one output port.
  - Invoke the run-time object's “`SetPreCompInpPortInfoToDynamic`” and “`SetPreCompOutPortInfoToDynamic`” methods to indicate that the input and output ports inherit their compiled properties (dimensions, data type, complexity, and sampling mode) from the model.
  - Set the `DirectFeedthrough` property of the run-time object's `InputPort` to `false` in order to indicate the input port does not have direct feedthrough. Retain the default values for all other input and output port properties that are set in your copy of the template file. The values set for the `Dimensions`, `DatatypeID`, and `Complexity` properties override the values inherited using the `SetPreCompInpPortInfoToDynamic` and `SetPreCompOutPortInfoToDynamic` methods.
  - Set the run-time object's `NumDialogPrms` property to 1 in order to initialize one S-function dialog parameter.
  - Specify that the S-function has an inherited sample time by setting the value of the runtime object's `SampleTimes` property to `[-1 0]`.
  - Call the run-time object's `RegBlockMethod` method to register the following four callback methods used in this S-function.
    - `PostPropagationSetup`
    - `InitializeConditions`
    - `Outputs`
    - `Update`

Remove any other registered callback methods from your copy of the template file. In the calls to `RegBlockMethod`, the first input argument is the name of the S-function API method

and the second input argument is the function handle to the associated local function in the MATLAB S-function.

The following `setup` method from `msfcn_unit_delay.m` performs the previous list of steps:

```
function setup(block)

%% Register a single dialog parameter
block.NumDialogPrms = 1;

%% Register number of input and output ports
block.NumInputPorts = 1;
block.NumOutputPorts = 1;

%% Setup functional port properties to dynamically
%% inherited.
block.SetPreCompInpPortInfoToDynamic;
block.SetPreCompOutPortInfoToDynamic;

%% Hard-code certain port properties
block.InputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
block.InputPort(1).DirectFeedthrough = false;

block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;

%% Set block sample time to [0.1 0]
block.SampleTimes = [0.1 0];

%% Register methods
block.RegBlockMethod('PostPropagationSetup',@DoPostPropSetup);
block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions',@InitConditions);
block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs', @Output);
block.RegBlockMethod('Update', @Update);
```

If your S-function needs continuous states, initialize the number of continuous states in the `setup` method using the run-time object's `NumContStates` property. Do not initialize discrete states in the `setup` method.

- 3** Initialize the discrete states in the `PostPropagationSetup` method. A Level-2 MATLAB S-function stores discrete state information in a `DWork` vector. The default `PostPropagationSetup` method in the template file suffices for this example.

The following `PostPropagationSetup` method from `msfcn_unit_delay.m`, named `DoPostPropSetup`, initializes one `DWork` vector with the name `x0`.

```
function DoPostPropSetup(block)

%% Setup Dwork
block.NumDworks = 1;
block.Dwork(1).Name = 'x0';
block.Dwork(1).Dimensions = 1;
block.Dwork(1).DatatypeID = 0;
block.Dwork(1).Complexity = 'Real';
block.Dwork(1).UsedAsDiscState = true;
```

If your S-function uses additional `DWork` vectors, initialize them in the `PostPropagationSetup` method, as well (see “Using `DWork` Vectors in Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 10-15).

- 4 Initialize the values of discrete and continuous states or other DWork vectors in the `InitializeConditions` or `Start` callback methods. Use the `Start` callback method for values that are initialized once at the beginning of the simulation. Use the `InitializeConditions` method for values that need to be reinitialized whenever an enabled subsystem containing the S-function is reenabled.

For this example, use the `InitializeConditions` method to set the discrete state's initial condition to the value of the S-function's dialog parameter. For example, the `InitializeConditions` method in `msfcn_unit_delay.m` is:

```
function InitConditions(block)

    %% Initialize Dwork
    block.Dwork(1).Data = block.DialogPrm(1).Data;
```

For S-functions with continuous states, use the `ContStates` run-time object method to initialize the continuous state data. For example:

```
block.ContStates.Data(1) = 1.0;
```

- 5 Calculate the S-function's outputs in the `Outputs` callback method. For this example, set the output to the current value of the discrete state stored in the DWork vector.

The `Outputs` method in `msfcn_unit_delay.m` is:

```
function Output(block)

    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.Dwork(1).Data;
```

- 6 For an S-function with continuous states, calculate the state derivatives in the `Derivatives` callback method. Run-time objects store derivative data in their `Derivatives` property. For example, the following line sets the first state derivative equal to the value of the first input signal.

```
block.Derivatives.Data(1) = block.InputPort(1).Data;
```

This example does not use continuous states and, therefore, does not implement the `Derivatives` callback method.

- 7 Update any discrete states in the `Update` callback method. For this example, set the value of the discrete state to the current value of the first input signal.

The `Update` method in `msfcn_unit_delay.m` is:

```
function Update(block)

    block.Dwork(1).Data = block.InputPort(1).Data;
```

- 8 Perform any cleanup, such as clearing variables or memory, in the `Terminate` method. Unlike C MEX S-functions, Level-2 MATLAB S-function are not required to have a `Terminate` method.

For information on additional callback methods, see “Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Callback Methods” on page 3-3. For a list of run-time object properties, see the reference page for `Simulink.MSFCnRunTimeBlock` and the parent class `Simulink.RunTimeBlock`.

## Instantiating a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function

To use a Level-2 MATLAB S-function in a model, copy an instance of the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block into the model. Open the Block Parameters dialog box for the block and enter the name of the

MATLAB file that implements your S-function into the **S-function name** field. If your S-function uses any additional parameters, enter the parameter values as a comma-separated list in the Block Parameters dialog box **Parameters** field.

## Operations for Variable-Size Signals

Following are modifications to the Level-2 MATLAB S-functions template (`msfuntmpl_basic.m`) and additional operations that allow you to use variable-size signals.

```
function setup(block)
% Register the properties of the output port
block.OutputPort(1).DimensionsMode = 'Variable';
block.RegBlockMethod('SetInputPortDimensionsMode', @SetInputDimsMode);

function DoPostPropSetup(block)
%Register dependency rules to update current output size of output port a depending on
%input ports b and c
block.AddOutputDimsDependencyRules(a, [b c], @setOutputVarDims);

%Configure output port b to have the same dimensions as input port a
block.InputPortSameDimsAsOutputPort(a,b);

%Configure DWork a to have its size reset when input size changes.
block.DWorkRequireResetForSignalSize(a,true);

function SetInputDimsMode(block, port, dm)
% Set dimension mode
block.InputPort(port).DimensionsMode = dm;
block.OutputPort(port).DimensionsMode = dm;

function setOutputVarDims(block, opIdx, inputIdx)
% Set current (run-time) dimensions of the output
outDimsAfterReset = block.InputPort(inputIdx(1)).CurrentDimensions;
block.OutputPort(opIdx).CurrentDimensions = outDimsAfterReset;
```

## Generating Code from a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function

Generating code for a model containing a Level-2 MATLAB S-function requires that you provide a corresponding Target Language Compiler (TLC) file. You do not need a TLC file to accelerate a model containing a Level-2 MATLAB S-function. The Simulink Accelerator software runs Level-2 MATLAB S-functions in interpreted mode. However, M-file S-functions do not work with accelerated mode if the M-file S-function is in a model reference. For more information on writing TLC files for MATLAB S-functions, see “Inlining S-Functions” (Simulink Coder) and “Inline MATLAB File S-Functions” (Simulink Coder).

## MATLAB S-Function Examples

The Level-2 MATLAB S-function examples provide a set of self-documenting models that illustrate the use of Level-2 MATLAB S-functions. Enter `sfundemos` at the MATLAB command prompt to view the examples.

## MATLAB S-Function Limitations

- Level-2 MATLAB S-functions do not support zero-crossing detection.
- You cannot trigger a function-call subsystem from a Level-2 MATLAB S-function.

## See Also

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function

## **More About**

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “S-Function Examples” on page 1-19
- “Configure Block Features for MATLAB S-Functions”

## Maintain Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions

### In this section...

“About the Maintenance of Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-10

“Level-1 MATLAB S-Function Arguments” on page 3-10

“Level-1 MATLAB S-Function Outputs” on page 3-11

“Define S-Function Block Characteristics” on page 3-12

“Processing S-Function Parameters” on page 3-12

“Convert Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions to Level-2” on page 3-13

### About the Maintenance of Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions

**Note** The information provided in this section is intended only for use in maintaining existing Level-1 MATLAB S-functions. Use the more capable Level-2 API to develop new MATLAB S-functions (see “Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2). Level-1 MATLAB S-functions support a much smaller subset of the S-function API than Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, and their features are limited compared to built-in blocks.

A Level-1 MATLAB S-function is a MATLAB function of the following form

```
[sys,x0,str,ts]=f(t,x,u,flag,p1,p2,...)
```

where  $f$  is the name of the S-function. During simulation of a model, the Simulink engine repeatedly invokes  $f$ , using the `flag` argument to indicate the task (or tasks) to be performed for a particular invocation. The S-function performs the task and returns the results in an output vector.

### Level-1 MATLAB S-Function Arguments

The Simulink engine passes the following arguments to a Level-1 MATLAB S-function:

<code>t</code>	Current time
<code>x</code>	State vector
<code>u</code>	Input vector
<code>flag</code>	Integer value that indicates the task to be performed by the S-function

The following table describes the values that `flag` can assume and lists the corresponding Level-2 MATLAB S-function method for each value.



## Flag Argument

Level-1 Flag	Level-2 Callback Method	Description
0	setup	Defines basic S-Function block characteristics, including sample times, initial conditions of continuous and discrete states, and the <code>sizes</code> array (see “Define S-Function Block Characteristics” on page 3-12 for a description of the <code>sizes</code> array).
1	mdlDerivatives	Calculates the derivatives of the continuous state variables.
2	mdlUpdate	Updates discrete states, sample times, and major time step requirements.
3	mdlOutputs	Calculates the outputs of the S-function.
4	mdlOutputs method updates the run-time object <code>NextTimeHit</code> property	Calculates the time of the next hit in absolute time. This routine is used only when you specify a variable discrete-time sample time in the <code>setup</code> method.
9	mdlTerminate	Performs any necessary end-of-simulation tasks.

## Level-1 MATLAB S-Function Outputs

A Level-1 MATLAB S-function returns an output vector containing the following elements:

- `sys`, a generic return argument. The values returned depend on the `flag` value. For example, for `flag = 3`, `sys` contains the S-function outputs.
- `x0`, the initial state values (an empty vector if there are no states in the system). `x0` is ignored, except when `flag = 0`.
- `str`, originally intended for future use. Level-1 MATLAB S-functions must set this to the empty matrix, `[]`.
- `ts`, a two-column matrix containing the sample times and offsets of the block (see “Specify Sample Time” in *Using Simulink* for information on how to specify a sample times and offsets).

For example, if you want your S-function to run at every time step (continuous sample time), set `ts` to `[0 0]`. If you want your S-function to run at the same rate as the block to which it is connected (inherited sample time), set `ts` to `[-1 0]`. If you want it to run every 0.25 seconds (discrete sample time) starting at 0.1 seconds after the simulation start time, set `ts` to `[0.25 0.1]`.

You can create S-functions that do multiple tasks, each at a different sample rate (i.e., a multirate S-function). In this case, `ts` should specify all the sample rates used by your S-function in ascending order by sample time. For example, suppose your S-function performs one task every 0.25 second starting from the simulation start time and another task every 1 second starting 0.1 second after the simulation start time. In this case, your S-function should set `ts` equal to `[.25 0; 1.0 .1]`. This will cause the Simulink engine to execute the S-function at the following times:

[0 0.1 0.25 0.5 0.75 1 1.1 ...]. Your S-function must decide at every sample time which task to perform at that sample time.

You can also create an S-function that performs some tasks continuously (i.e., at every time step) and others at discrete intervals.

## Define S-Function Block Characteristics

For the Simulink engine to recognize a Level-1 MATLAB S-function, you must provide it with specific information about the S-function. This information includes the number of inputs, outputs, states, and other block characteristics.

To provide this information, call the `simsizes` function at the beginning of the S-function.

```
sizes = simsizes;
```

This function returns an uninitialized `sizes` structure. You must load the `sizes` structure with information about the S-function. The table below lists the fields of the `sizes` structure and describes the information contained in each field.

### Fields in the `sizes` Structure

Field Name	Description
<code>sizes.NumContStates</code>	Number of continuous states
<code>sizes.NumDiscStates</code>	Number of discrete states
<code>sizes.NumOutputs</code>	Number of outputs
<code>sizes.NumInputs</code>	Number of inputs
<code>sizes.DirFeedthrough</code>	Flag for direct feedthrough
<code>sizes.NumSampleTimes</code>	Number of sample times

After you initialize the `sizes` structure, call `simsizes` again:

```
sys = simsizes(sizes);
```

This passes the information in the `sizes` structure to `sys`, a vector that holds the information for use by the Simulink engine.

## Processing S-Function Parameters

When invoking a Level-1 MATLAB S-function, the Simulink engine always passes the standard block parameters, `t`, `x`, `u`, and `flag`, to the S-function as function arguments. The engine can pass additional block-specific parameters specified by the user to the S-function. The user specifies the parameters in the **S-function parameters** field of the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box (see “Passing Parameters to S-Functions” on page 1-4). If the block dialog specifies additional parameters, the engine passes the parameters to the S-function as additional function arguments. The additional arguments follow the standard arguments in the S-function argument list in the order in which the corresponding parameters appear in the block dialog. You can use this block-specific S-function parameter capability to allow the same S-function to implement various processing options.

## Convert Level-1 MATLAB S-Functions to Level-2

You can convert Level-1 MATLAB S-functions to Level-2 MATLAB S-functions by mapping the code associated with each Level-1 S-function flag to the appropriate Level-2 S-function callback method. See the Flag Arguments on page 3-10 table for a mapping of Level-1 flags to Level-2 callback methods. In addition:

- Store discrete state information for Level-2 MATLAB S-functions in DWork vectors, initialized in the PostPropagationSetup method.
- Access Level-2 MATLAB S-function dialog parameters using the DialogPrm run-time object property, instead of passing them into the S-function as function arguments.
- For S-functions with variable sample times, update the NextTimeHit run-time object property in the Outputs method to set the next sample time hit for the Level-2 MATLAB S-function.

For example, the following table shows how to convert the Level-1 MATLAB S-function `sfundsc2.m` to a Level-2 MATLAB S-function. The example uses the Level-2 MATLAB S-function template `msfuntmpl_basic.m` as a starting point when converting the Level-1 MATLAB S-function. The line numbers in the table corresponds to the lines of code in `sfundsc2.m`.

### `sfundsc2_level2.m`

```
function sfundsc2_level2(block)
%SFUNDSC2_LEVEL2 Level-2 version of sfundsc2.m
%
% Copyright 2003-2007 The MathWorks, Inc.

%%
%% The setup method is used to setup the basic attributes of the
%% S-function such as ports, parameters, etc. Do not add any other
%% calls to the main body of the function.
%%
setup(block);

%endfunction

function setup(block)

% Register number of ports
block.NumInputPorts = 1;
block.NumOutputPorts = 1;

% Setup port properties to be inherited or dynamic
block.SetPreCompInpPortInfoToDynamic;
block.SetPreCompOutPortInfoToDynamic;

% Override input port properties
block.InputPort(1).DatatypeID = 0; % double
block.InputPort(1).Complexity = 'Real';
block.InputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
block.InputPort(1).DirectFeedthrough = false;

% Override output port properties
block.OutputPort(1).DatatypeID = 0; % double
block.OutputPort(1).Complexity = 'Real';
block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
```

```
% Register parameters
block.NumDialogPrms    = 0;

% Register sample times
block.SampleTimes = [.10 0];

%% -----
%% Options
%% -----
% Specify if Accelerator should use TLC or call back into
% MATLAB file
block.SetAccelRunOnTLC(false);

%% -----
%% Register methods
%% -----
block.RegBlockMethod('PostPropagationSetup', @DoPostPropSetup);
block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions', @InitializeConditions);
block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs', @Outputs);
block.RegBlockMethod('Update', @Update);
%endfunction

%% -----
%% The local functions
%% -----
function DoPostPropSetup(block)

    block.NumDworks = 1;
    block.Dwork(1).Name      = 'x0';
    block.Dwork(1).Dimensions = 1;
    block.Dwork(1).DatatypeID = 0;      % double
    block.Dwork(1).Complexity = 'Real'; % real
    block.Dwork(1).UsedAsDiscState = true;

%endfunction

function InitializeConditions(block)
%% Initialize Dwork
    block.Dwork(1).Data = 0;

%endfunction

function Outputs(block)

    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.Dwork(1).Data;

%endfunction

function Update(block)

    block.Dwork(1).Data = block.InputPort(1).Data;

%endfunction
```

Line Number	Code in <code>sfundsc2.m</code>	Code in Level-2 MATLAB file ( <code>sfundsc2_level2.m</code> )
1	<pre>function [sys,x0,str,ts]= ...     sfundsc2(t,x,u,flag)</pre>	<pre>function sfundsc2(block)     setup(block);</pre> <p>The syntax for the function line changes to accept one input argument <code>block</code>, which is the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block's run-time object. The main body of the Level-2 MATLAB S-function contains a single line that calls the local <code>setup</code> function.</p>
13 - 19	<pre>switch flag, case 0, [sys,x0,str,ts] = ...     mdlInitializeSizes;</pre>	<pre>function setup(block)</pre> <p>The <code>flag</code> value of zero corresponds to calling the <code>setup</code> method. A Level-2 MATLAB S-function does not use a <code>switch</code> statement to invoke the callback methods. Instead, the local <code>setup</code> function registers callback methods that are directly called during simulation.</p>
24 - 31	<pre>case 2,     sys = mdlUpdate(t,x,u); case 3,     sys = mdlOutputs(t,x,u);</pre>	<p>The <code>setup</code> function registers two local functions associated with <code>flag</code> values of 2 and 3.</p> <pre>block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs',@Output); block.RegBlockMethod('Update',@Update);</pre>
53 - 66	<pre>sizes = simsizes;  sizes.NumContStates = 0; sizes.NumDiscStates = 1; sizes.NumOutputs = 1; sizes.NumInputs = 1; sizes.DirFeedthrough = 0; sizes.NumSampleTimes = 1;  sys = simsizes(sizes);  x0 = 0; str = []; ts = [.1 0];</pre>	<p>The <code>setup</code> function also initializes the attributes of the Level-2 MATLAB S-function:</p> <pre>block.NumInputPorts = 1; block.NumOutputPorts = 1; block.InputPort(1).Dimensions = 1; block.InputPort(1).DirectFeedthrough = false; block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1; block.NumDialogPrms = 0; block.SampleTimes = [0.1 0];</pre> <p>Because this S-function has discrete states, the <code>setup</code> method registers the <code>PostPropagationSetup</code> callback method to initialize a <code>DWork</code> vector and the <code>InitializeConditions</code> callback method to set the initial state value.</p> <pre>block.RegBlockMethod('PostPropagationSetup',...     @DoPostPropSetup); block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions', ...     @InitConditions);</pre>
56	<pre>sizes.NumDiscStates = 1;</pre>	<p>The <code>PostPropagationSetup</code> method initializes the <code>DWork</code> vector that stores the single discrete state.</p> <pre>function DoPostPropSetup(block)  %% Setup Dwork block.NumDworks = 1; block.Dwork(1).Name = 'x0'; block.Dwork(1).Dimensions = 1; block.Dwork(1).DatatypeID = 0; block.Dwork(1).Complexity = 'Real'; block.Dwork(1).UsedAsDiscState = true;</pre>

Line Number	Code in <code>sfundsc2.m</code>	Code in Level-2 MATLAB file ( <code>sfundsc2_level2.m</code> )
64	<pre>x0 = 0;</pre>	<p>The <code>InitializeConditions</code> method initializes the discrete state value.</p> <pre>function InitConditions(block)  %% Initialize Dwork block.Dwork(1).Data = 0</pre>
77 - 78	<pre>function sys = ...     mdlUpdate(t,x,u)  sys = u;</pre>	<p>The <code>Update</code> method calculates the next value of the discrete state.</p> <pre>function Update(block) block.Dwork(1).Data = block.InputPort(1).Data;</pre>
88 - 89	<pre>function sys = ...     mdlOutputs(t,x,u) sys = x;</pre>	<p>The <code>Outputs</code> method calculates the S-function's output.</p> <pre>function Outputs(block) block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.Dwork(1).Data;</pre>

# Writing S-Functions in C

---

- “Create a Basic C MEX S-Function” on page 4-2
- “Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-8
- “Use Array or Nested Array of Buses with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-13
- “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15
- “Model a State-Space System Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-27
- “Templates for C S-Functions” on page 4-30
- “Integrate C Functions Using Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-33
- “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52
- “S-Functions in Normal Mode Referenced Models” on page 4-61
- “Debug C MEX S-Functions” on page 4-63
- “Convert Level-1 C MEX S-Functions” on page 4-69

## Create a Basic C MEX S-Function

### In this section...

- “About C MEX S-Functions” on page 4-2
- “Introducing an Example of a Basic C MEX S-Function” on page 4-3
- “Defines and Includes” on page 4-5
- “Callback Method Implementations” on page 4-5
- “Simulink/Simulink Coder Interfaces” on page 4-7
- “Building the Timestwo Example” on page 4-7

### About C MEX S-Functions

You can create C MEX S-functions using any of the following approaches:

- Handwritten S-function — You can write a C MEX S-function from scratch. (“Create a Basic C MEX S-Function” on page 4-2 provides a step-by-step example.) See “Templates for C S-Functions” on page 4-30 for a complete skeleton implementation of a C MEX S-function that you can use as a starting point for creating your own S-functions.
- S-Function Builder — This block integrates a C/C++ code and builds a C MEX S-function from specifications and code fragments that you supply using a graphical user interface. This eliminates the need for you to write S-functions from scratch. See “Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-8 for more information about the S-Function Builder.
- Legacy Code Tool — This utility builds a C MEX S-function from existing C code and specifications that you supply using MATLAB code. See “Integrate C Functions Using Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-33 for more information about integrating legacy C code into Simulink models.

Each of these approaches involves a tradeoff between the ease of writing an S-function and the features supported by the S-function. Although handwritten S-functions support the widest range of features, they can be difficult to write. The S-Function Builder block simplifies the task of writing C MEX S-functions but supports fewer features. The Legacy Code Tool provides the easiest approach to creating C MEX S-functions from existing C code but supports the fewest features. See “Available S-Function Implementations” on page 2-2 for more information on the features and limitations of each of these approaches to writing a C MEX S-function.

If you have Simulink Coder, in addition to the previous three approaches, the Simulink Coder product provides a method for generating a C MEX S-function from a graphical subsystem. If you are new to writing C MEX S-functions, you can build portions of your application in a Simulink subsystem and use the S-function target to convert it to an S-function. The generated files provides insight on how particular blocks can be implemented within an S-function. For details and limitations on using the S-function target, see “Use S-Function Target for Model or Subsystem” (Simulink Coder). You can develop an S-function to represent external code using an API that interacts with the Simulink engine. Use this S-function with the code generator to produce code. For details regarding different types of S-functions in code generation, see “S-Functions and Code Generation” (Simulink Coder).

A C MEX S-function must provide information about the function to the Simulink engine during the simulation. As the simulation proceeds, the engine, the ODE solver, and the C MEX S-function interact to perform specific tasks. These tasks include defining initial conditions and block characteristics, and computing derivatives, discrete states, and outputs.



As with MATLAB S-functions, the Simulink engine interacts with a C MEX S-function by invoking callback methods that the S-function implements. Each method performs a predefined task, such as computing block outputs, required to simulate the block whose functionality the S-function defines. However, the S-function is free to perform the task in each method according to the functionality the S-function implements. For example, the `mdlOutputs` method must compute the block outputs at the current simulation time. However, the S-function can calculate these outputs in any way that is appropriate for the function. This callback-based API allows you to create S-functions, and hence custom blocks, of any desired functionality.

The set of callback methods that C MEX S-functions can implement is larger than that available for MATLAB S-functions. C MEX S-functions are required to implement only a small subset of the callback methods in the S-function API. If your block does not implement a particular feature, such as matrix signals, you are free to omit the callback methods needed to implement a feature. This allows you to create simple blocks very quickly.

The general format of a C MEX S-function is shown below:

```
#define S_FUNCTION_NAME  your_sfunction_name_here
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2
#include "simstruc.h"

static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
}

<additional S-function routines/code>

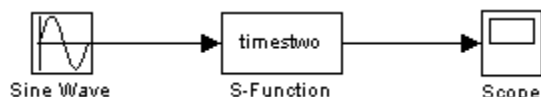
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
}
#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE    /* Is this file being compiled as a
                           MEX-file? */
#include "simulink.c"      /* MEX-file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h"       /* Code generation registration
                           function */
#endif
#endif
```

`mdlInitializeSizes` is the first routine the Simulink engine calls when interacting with the S-function. The engine subsequently invokes other S-function methods (all starting with `mdl`). At the end of a simulation, the engine calls `mdlTerminate`.

## Introducing an Example of a Basic C MEX S-Function

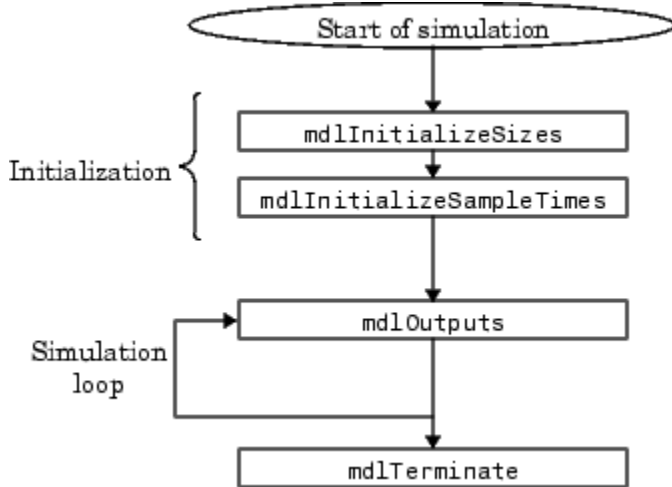
This section presents an example of a C MEX S-function that you can use as a model for creating simple C S-functions. The example S-function `timestwo.c` outputs twice its input.

The following model uses the `timestwo` S-function to double the amplitude of a sine wave and plot it in a scope.



The block dialog for the S-function specifies `timestwo` as the S-function name; the parameters field is empty.

The `timestwo` S-function contains the S-function callback methods shown in this figure. At the end of S-function, include the code snippet as described in “Simulink/Simulink Coder Interfaces” on page 4-7.



The contents of `timestwo.c` are shown below. A description of the code is provided after the example.

```

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME timestwo /* Defines and Includes on page 4-5 */
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

static void mdlInitializeSizes on page 4-5(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0);
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }

    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

    if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S,1)) return;
    ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);

    ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);

    /* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl.doc */
    ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
}

static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes on page 4-6(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);
}

static void mdlOutputs on page 4-6(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    int_T i;
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    int_T width = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);

```

```

    for (i=0; i<width; i++) {
        *y++ = 2.0 *(*uPtrs[i]);
    }
}

static void mdlTerminate on page 4-7(SimStruct *S){}

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX-file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX-file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h" /* Code generation registration function */
#endif

```

This example has three parts:

- Defines and includes
- Callback method implementations
- Simulink (or Simulink Coder) product interfaces

## Defines and Includes

The example starts with the following `define` statements.

```

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME  timestwo
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

```

The first `define` statement specifies the name of the S-function (`timestwo`). The second `define` statement specifies that the S-function is in the *Level 2* format (for more information about Level 1 and Level 2 S-functions, see “Convert Level-1 C MEX S-Functions” on page 4-69).

After defining these two items, the example includes `simstruc.h`, which is a header file that gives access to the `SimStruct` data structure and the MATLAB Application Program Interface (API) functions.

```

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME  timestwo
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2
#include "simstruc.h"

```

The `simstruc.h` file defines a data structure, called the `SimStruct`, that the Simulink engine uses to maintain information about the S-function. The `simstruc.h` file also defines macros that enable your MEX file to set values in and get values (such as the input and output signal to the block) from the `SimStruct` (see “About SimStruct Functions” on page 12-2).

## Callback Method Implementations

The next part of the `timestwo` S-function contains implementations of required callback methods.

### `mdlInitializeSizes`

The Simulink engine calls `mdlInitializeSizes` to inquire about the number of input and output ports, sizes of the ports, and any other information (such as the number of states) needed by the S-function.

The `timestwo` implementation of `mdlInitializeSizes` specifies the following size information:

- Zero parameters

Therefore, the **S-function parameters** field of the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box must be empty. If it contains any parameters, the engine reports a parameter mismatch.

- One input port and one output port

The widths of the input and output ports are dynamically sized. This tells the engine that the S-function can accept an input signal of any width. By default, the widths of dynamically sized input and output port are equal when the S-function has only one input and output port.

- One sample time

The `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` callback method specifies the actual value of the sample time.

- Exception free code

Specifying exception-free code speeds up execution of your S-function. You must take care when specifying this option. In general, if your S-function is not interacting with the MATLAB environment, you can safely specify this option. For more details, see “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52.

### **mdlInitializeSampleTimes**

The Simulink engine calls `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` to set the sample times of the S-function. A `timestwo` block executes whenever the driving block executes. Therefore, it has a single inherited sample time, `INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME`.

### **mdlOutputs**

The engine calls `mdlOutputs` at each time step to calculate the block outputs. The `timestwo` implementation of `mdlOutputs` multiplies the input signal by 2 and writes the answer to the output.

The line:

```
InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
```

accesses the input signal. The `ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs` macro returns a vector of pointers, which you *must* access using

```
*uPtrs[i]
```

For more details on accessing input signals, see “Accessing Signals Using Pointers” on page 4-58.

The line:

```
real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
```

accesses the output signal. The `ssGetOutputPortRealSignal` macro returns a pointer to an array containing the block outputs.

The line:

```
int_T width = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);
```

obtains the width of the signal passing through the block. The S-function loops over the inputs to compute the outputs.

## **mdlTerminate**

The engine calls `mdlTerminate` to provide the S-function with an opportunity to perform tasks at the end of the simulation. This is a mandatory S-function routine. The `timestwo` S-function does not perform any termination actions, and this routine is empty.

## **Simulink/Simulink Coder Interfaces**

At the end of the S-function, include the following code to attach your S-function to either the Simulink or Simulink Coder products.

```
#ifndef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
#include "simulink.c"
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h"
#endif
```

This trailer is required at the end of every S-function. If it is omitted, any attempt to compile your S-function will abort with a failure during build of exports file error message.

## **Building the Timestwo Example**

To compile this S-function, enter

```
mex timestwo.c
```

at the command line. The `mex` command compiles and links the `timestwo.c` file using the default compiler. The `mex` command creates a dynamically loadable executable for the Simulink software to use. If you have multiple MATLAB-supported compilers, you can change the default using the `mex -setup` command. See “Change Default Compiler” and the list of .

The resulting executable is referred to as a MEX S-function, where MEX stands for “MATLAB Executable.” The MEX file extension varies from platform to platform. For example, on a 32-bit Microsoft® Windows system, the MEX file extension is `.mexw32`.

## Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function

### In this section...

“How the S-Function Builder Builds an S-Function” on page 4-11

“Deploy the Generated S-Function” on page 4-12

This topic will show you how to create a bus and connect it to an S-Function Builder. At the end, you will use the S-Function Builder to build a simple C MEX S-function.

The S-Function Builder is a Simulink block that integrates C/C++ code to build an S-function from specifications and C code that you supply. The S-Function Builder also serves as a wrapper for the generated S-function in models that use the S-function. To learn more on S-Function Builder, see “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15. To see more examples on how to use S-Function Builder, type `sfundemos` in the MATLAB Command Window, then navigate to **C-file S-functions > S-function Builder**.

- 1 Start building your S-function by setting the current folder to the folder in which you want to create an S-function. Then, add this folder to the MATLAB path.

```
mkdir newSfun
addpath(fullfile(pwd, 'newSfun'))
cd('newSfun')
```

- 2 If you wish to connect a bus to the input or output port of the S-Function Builder block, you must first create a bus object. You can create a bus object interactively using the Simulink **Type Editor**. Alternatively, you can use `Simulink.Bus`:

- a In the MATLAB Command Window, enter:

```
a = Simulink.Bus
```

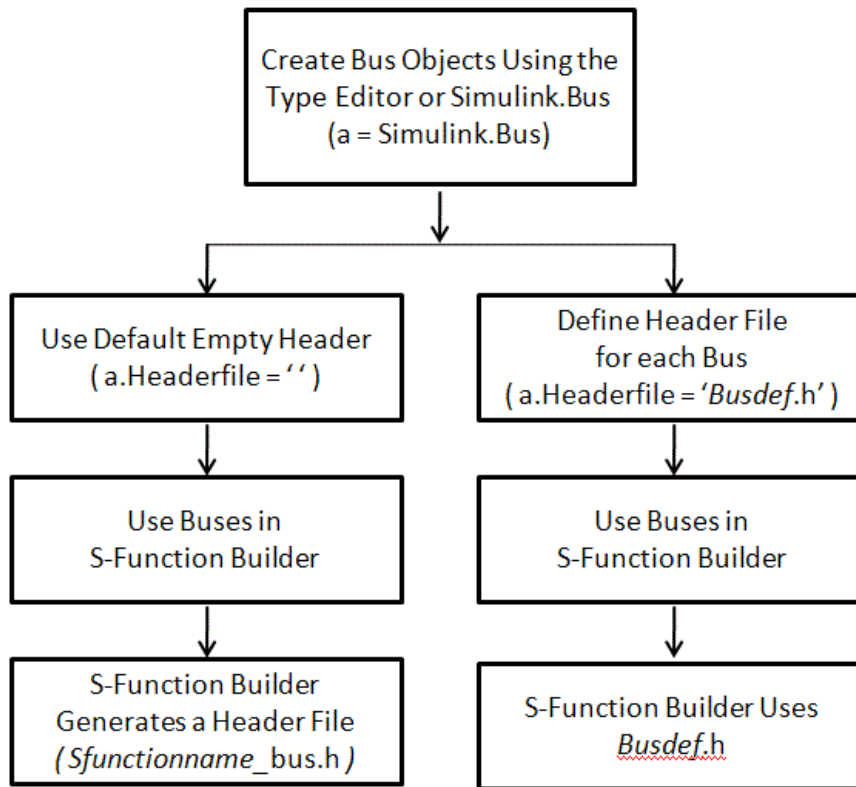
As a result, the `HeaderFile` for the bus defaults to the empty character vector:

```
a =
Simulink.Bus
  Description: ''
  HeaderFile: ''
  Elements: [0x1 double]
```

- b If you want to specify the header file for the bus, then at the MATLAB Command Window, enter the following:

```
a.Headerfile = 'Busdef.h'
```

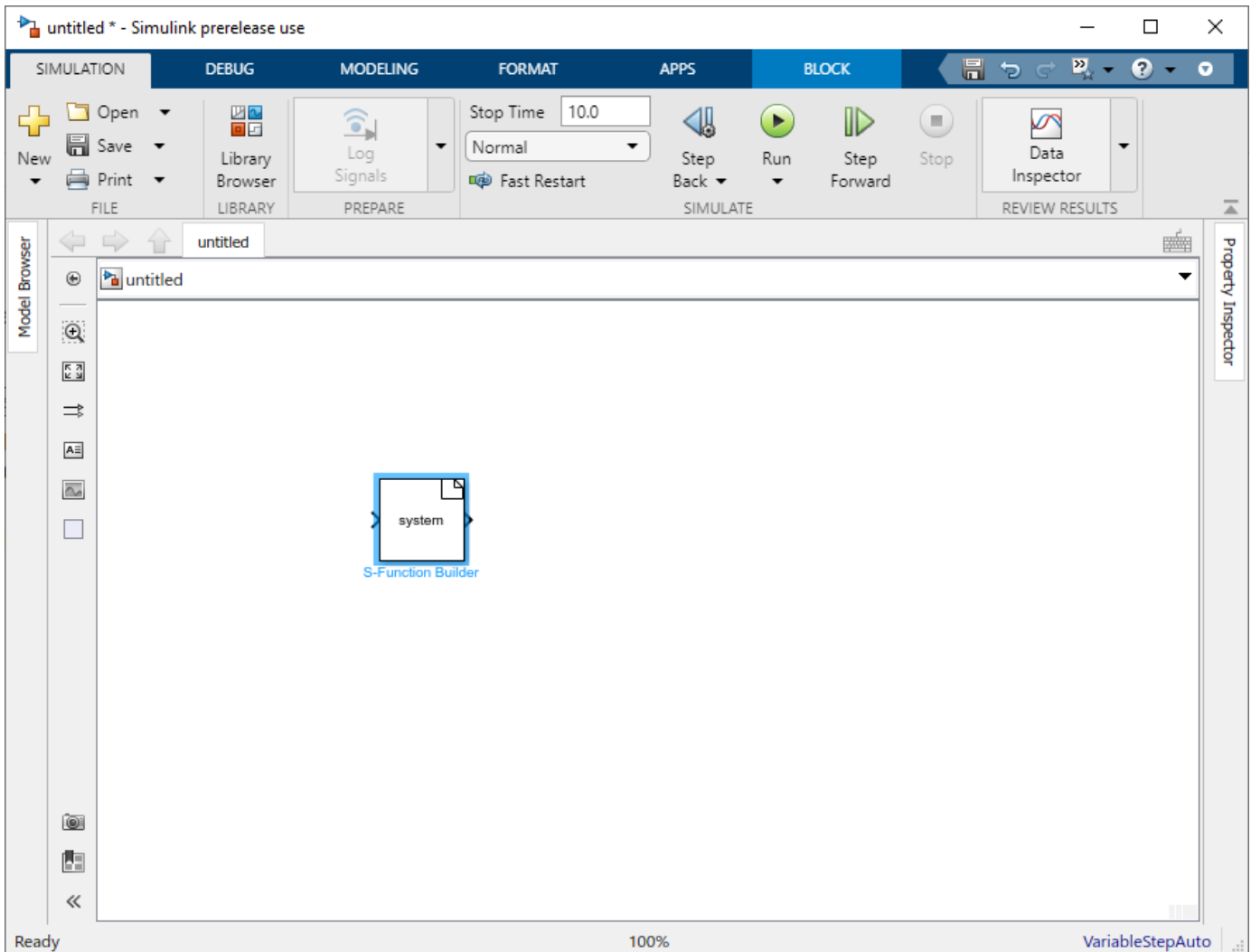
If you do not specify a header file, Simulink automatically generates `Sfunctionname_bus.h`



For a demonstration on how to use the S-Function Builder with a bus, enter the following command at the MATLAB Command Window:

```
open_system(fullfile(matlabroot, '/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/sfbuilder_bususage'))
```

- 3 Create a new Simulink model. Click on the canvas and type S-Function Builder to create an instance of the S-Function Builder block. Alternatively, drag an S-Function Builder block from the **User-Defined Functions** library in the Library Browser into the new model.
- 4 Click on the canvas and type S-Function Builder or copy an instance of the S-Function Builder block from the **User-Defined Functions** library into the new model.



- 5 Double-click to open the S-Function Builder editor.
- 6 Use the specification and code entry panes on the S-Function Builder dialog box to enter information and custom source code required to tailor the generated S-function to your application.
- 7 Check whether the bus is in between the specified upper and lower saturation limits. To do this, create two input and two output ports, and assign the ports according to the table below:

PORTS AND PARAMETERS		LIBRARIES		
Name	Scope	Data Type	Dimensions	Complexity
u0	input	Bus:SFB_COUNTERBUS	[1,1]	real
u1	input	int32	[1,1]	real
y0	output	Bus:SFB_COUNTERBUS	[1,1]	real
y1	output	int32	[1,1]	real

- 8 Fill the Outputs\_wrapper function with the logic of your code. See the example code:



```

void sfbuilder_bus_Outputs_wrapper(const SFB_COUNTERBUS *u0,
                                   const int32_T *u1,
                                   const SFB_COUNTERBUS *y0,
                                   int32_T *y1)
{
  /* Output_BEGIN */
  int32_T limit;
  boolean_T inputGELower;

  /* limit is sum of SFB_SIGNALBUS.input and the second input(u1) */
  limit = u0->inputsignal.input + *u1;

  /* check if SFB_SIGNALBUS.limit is >= LIMITBUS.lower_saturation_limit */
  inputGELower = (limit >= u0->limits.lower_saturation_limit);

  if((u0->limits.upper_saturation_limit >= limit) && inputGELower)
  {
    *y1 = limit;
  }
  else
  {
    if(inputGELower)
    {
      limit = u0->limits.upper_saturation_limit;
    } else
    {
      limit = u0->limits.lower_saturation_limit;
    }
    *y1 = limit;
  }

  y0->inputsignal.input = *y1;
  y0->limits = u0->limits;
  /* Output_END */
}

```

- 9 Click the arrow under **Build** and Select **Generate TLC wrapper** to create a wrapper for your S-function for code generation.
- 10 Click **Build** on the S-Function Builder to start the build process.

The S-Function Builder builds a MEX file that implements the specified S-function and saves the file in the current folder (see “How the S-Function Builder Builds an S-Function” on page 4-11).

- 11 Save the model containing the S-Function Builder block.

## How the S-Function Builder Builds an S-Function

The S-Function Builder builds an S-function by generating the following source files in the current folder:

- `sfun.c` — This file contains the C source code representation of the standard portions of the generated S-function.
- `sfun_wrapper.c` — This file contains the custom code that you entered in the S-Function Builder dialog box.

- `sfun.tlc` — This file permits the generated S-function to run in Simulink Rapid Accelerator mode and allows for inlining the S-function during code generation. In addition, this file generates code for the S-function in Accelerator mode which allows the model to run faster.
- `sfun_bus.h` — If you specify any `Input port` or `Output port` as a bus in the **Ports and Parameters** table, but do not specify a header file, then the S-Function Builder automatically generates this header file.

After generating the S-function source code, the S-Function Builder uses the `mex` command to build the MEX file representation of the S-function from the generated source code and any external custom source code and libraries that you specified.

### Deploy the Generated S-Function

To use the generated S-function in another model, first check to ensure that the folder containing the generated S-function is on the MATLAB path. Then, copy the S-Function Builder block from the model used to create the S-function into the target model. If necessary, set the target model's parameters to the values required by the target model.

Alternatively, you can deploy the generated S-function without using the S-Function Builder block or exposing the underlying C source file.

- 1 Open the Simulink model that will include the S-function.
- 2 Click the canvas to create an instance of the S-function block, or copy an S-Function block from the **User-Defined Functions** library in the Library Browser into the model.
- 3 Double-click on the S-Function block.
- 4 In the Block Parameters dialog box that opens, in the **S-function name** edit field, enter the name of the executable file generated by the S-Function Builder.
- 5 Enter any parameters for the S-function into the **S-function parameters** edit field. Enter the parameters in the order in which they appear in the S-Function Builder dialog box.
- 6 Click **OK** on the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box.

By creating a block from a generated S-function, you can also create a mask for your S-Function block. To learn more about how to add a mask for your S-function, see “Create Block Masks”. To see an example of how block masks are added to an S-function, enter the following command on the MATLAB Command Window.

```
open_system(fullfile(matlabroot, '/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/sfcdemo_matadd'));
```

You can use the generated executable file in any S-Function block in any model as long as the executable file is on the MATLAB path.

### See Also

S-Function | S-Function Builder

### More About

- “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15
- “Model a State-Space System Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-27

## Use Array or Nested Array of Buses with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function

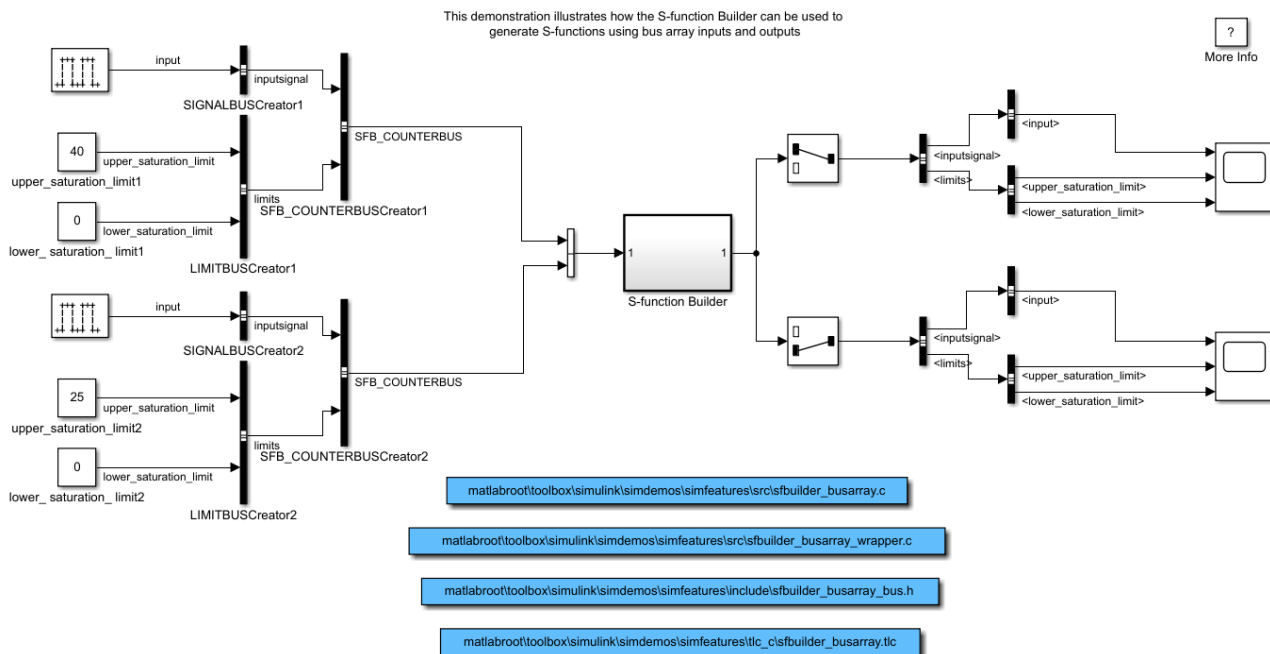
This example shows how to use S-Function builder with arrays of buses and nested arrays of buses. An array of buses is an array whose elements are nonvirtual buses. You can specify arrays of buses as elements in a bus. Arrays of buses, regardless of whether they are nested in a bus, can be used with S-Function builder as inputs and outputs to build an S-Function.

If you want to use S-Function builder with a nonvirtual bus, see “Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-8. For more on arrays of buses, see “Work with Arrays of Buses”.

### Use S-Function Builder with Array of Buses

Open This Model

This example shows how to build an S-Function with an array of buses by using S-Function builder. This model contains two groups of signals, each signal containing a pulse generator and a lower and upper limit scalar. Each of these signals is combined into a bus, and those two buses are combined into an array of buses. The array of buses is then passed through S-Function builder where the S-Function is built.



Copyright 2021 The MathWorks, Inc.

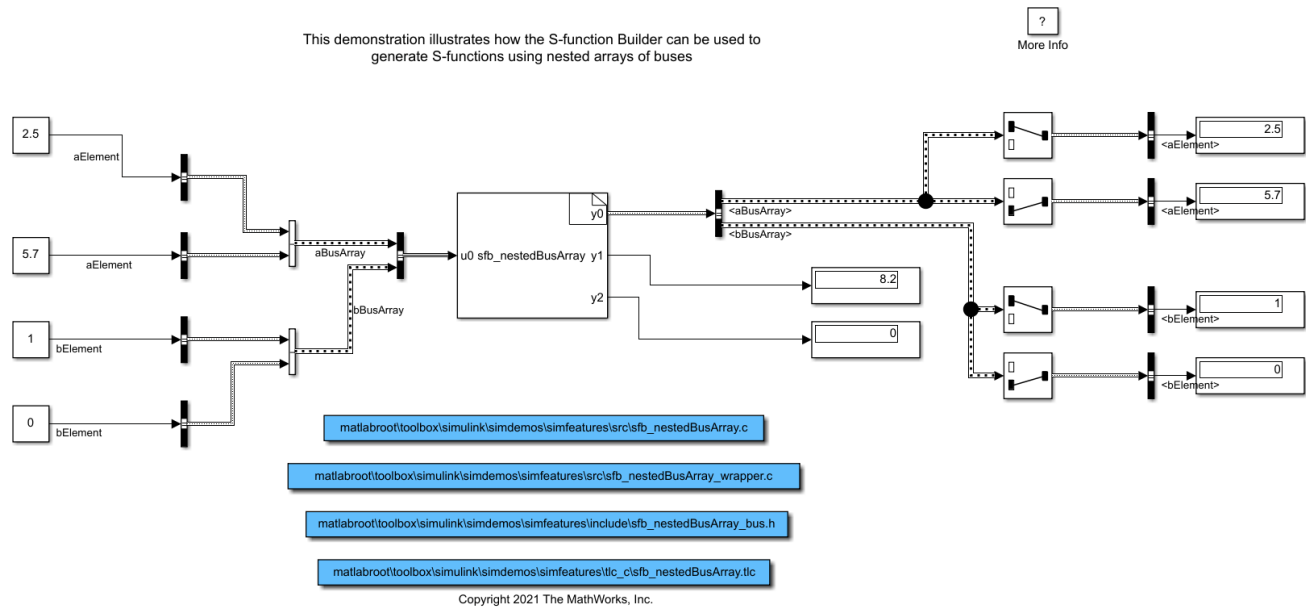
In the C code in S-Function builder,  $u0[0]$  denotes the first element and  $u0[1]$  denotes the second element in the input bus array  $u0$ . Similarly,  $y0[0]$  denotes the first element and  $y0[1]$  denotes the second element of the output bus array  $y0$ .

After going through S-Function builder, the signal is split through two channel selectors. The Scope blocks display the signals.

## Use S-Function Builder with Nested Array of Buses

Open This Model

This example shows how to build an S-Function with a nested array of buses by using S-Function builder. This model contains four separate signals that are each turned into a bus, and then the two buses are combined into an array of buses. Those buses are then combined into a bus that contains an array of buses using a Bus Creator block and then passed into S-Function builder to build an S-Function.



In the C code in S-Function builder, the output  $y_0$  is the nested array of buses. The output  $y_1$  is the sum of the elements of the first array of buses,  $aBusArray$ . The elements of  $aBusArray$  are  $aBusArray[0].aElement$  and  $aBusArray[1].aElement$ . The output  $y_2$  is the product of the elements of the second array of buses,  $bBusArray$ . The elements of  $bBusArray$  are  $bBusArray[0].bElement$  and  $bBusArray[1].bElement$ .

After passing through S-Function builder, the signal  $y_0$  is split back into the original signals as shown. The signal  $y_1$ , which is the sum of the first two buses from  $aBusArray$ , is displayed as is  $y_2$ , the product of the second two buses from  $bBusArray$ .

## See Also

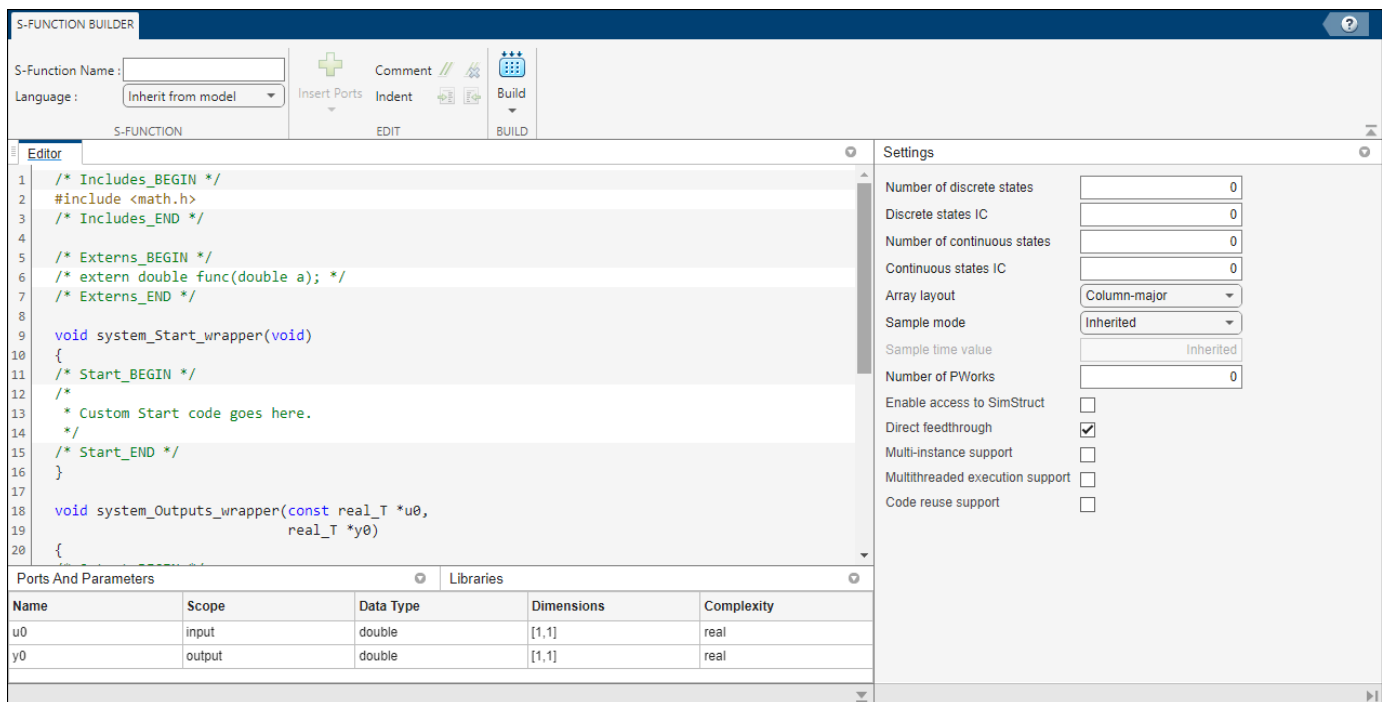
“Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15 | “Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-8 | “Work with Arrays of Buses” | “Group Nonvirtual Buses in Arrays of Buses”

## Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder

The S-Function Builder is a Simulink block that integrates C/C++ code to build an S-function from specifications and C code that you supply. The S-Function Builder block also serves as a wrapper for the generated S-function in models that use the S-function.

### Create an S-Function Builder Block and Specify Settings

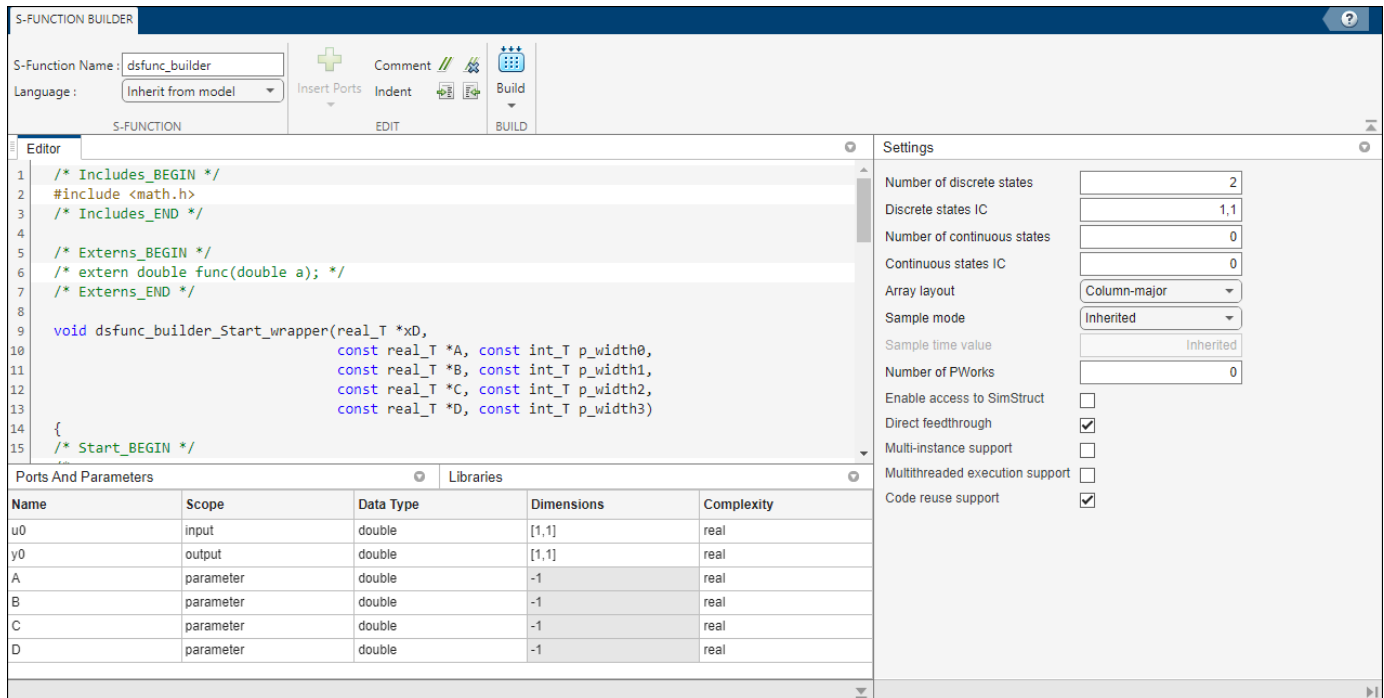
To add the S-Function Builder block to a model, click the Simulink canvas and type **S-Function Builder** or drag a S-Function Builder block from **Simulink Library > User-Defined**. To open the S-Function Builder editor, double-click the S-Function Builder block icon or select the block. Then select **Open Block** from the **Edit** menu on the model editor or the block's context menu.



S-Function Builder editor is composed of four user interface components:

- S-Function Builder toolstrip
- Settings pane
- Ports and Parameters Table
- Libraries table

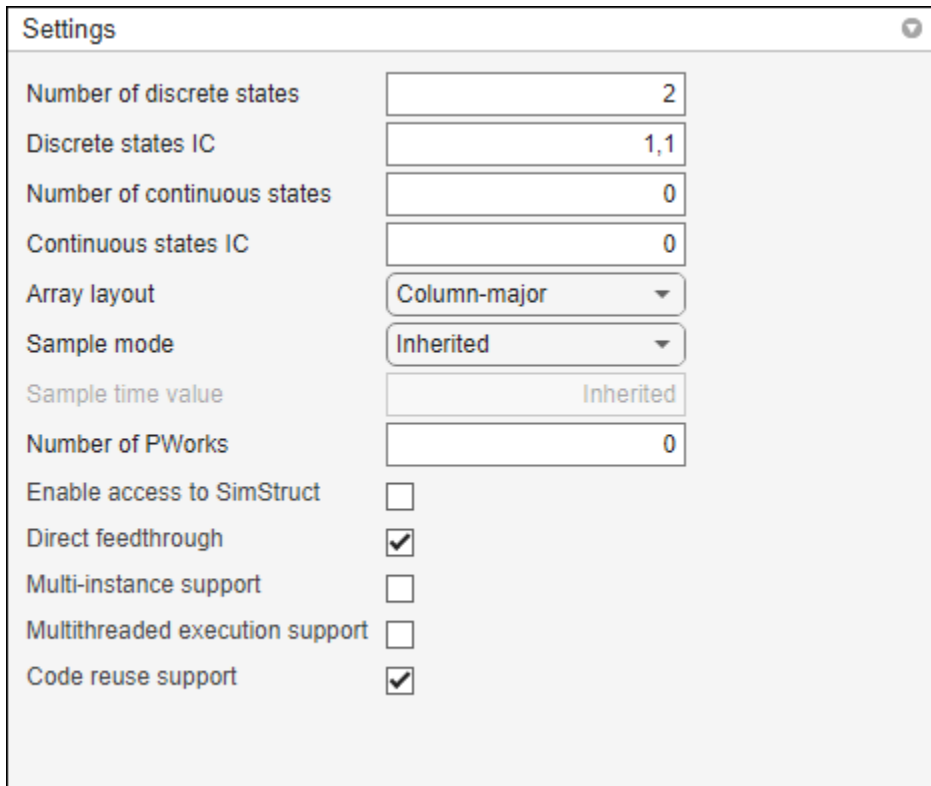
To start constructing your S-function, specify a name for the S-function. When you name the S-function, all functions in the S-Function Builder editor change, and the S-function name becomes a prefix to all wrapper functions.



Use the S-Function Builder toolstrip to specify a target language for the S-function:

- **C** — Generate C S-functions.
- **C++** — Generate C++ S-functions.
- **Inherit from model** — Inherit the language from the **Language** configuration parameter for the model.

Use the **Settings** pane on the right of the S-Function Builder editor to specify the basic features of the S-function, such as initial conditions, and number of states. The S-Function Builder block uses the settings to generate the `mdlInitializeSizes` callback method. The Simulink engine invokes this method during the model initialization phase of the simulation to obtain basic information about the S-function.



Setting	Value
Number of discrete states	2
Discrete states IC	1,1
Number of continuous states	0
Continuous states IC	0
Array layout	Column-major
Sample mode	Inherited
Sample time value	Inherited
Number of PWorks	0
Enable access to SimStruct	<input type="checkbox"/>
Direct feedthrough	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Multi-instance support	<input type="checkbox"/>
Multithreaded execution support	<input type="checkbox"/>
Code reuse support	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Set Number of States and Initial Conditions

Using the **Settings** pane, you can specify the number of discrete and continuous states and their initial conditions.

You can enter the values of initial conditions as a comma-separated list, (for example, 1, 1, 1) or as a vector (for example, [1 1 1]). The number of initial conditions must be equal to the number of states indicated.

### Set Array Layout

Set the array layout of your C/C++ code. You can select one of the options listed in the table.

Option	Array Layout of C/C++ Function	Action
Column-major	Column-major	The S-Function Builder block adds the SimStruct function <code>ssSetArrayLayoutForCodeGen</code> in <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> to mark the S-function for column-major code generation.

Option	Array Layout of C/C++ Function	Action
Row-major	Row-major	<p>The S-Function Builder block adds the SimStruct function <code>ssSetArrayLayoutForCodeGen</code> in <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> to mark the S-function for row-major code generation.</p> <p>During simulation, if your C/C++ code involves matrices or multidimensional inputs, outputs, or parameters, transposes are added to these S-function callback methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>mdlOutputs</code></li> <li>• <code>mdlUpdate</code></li> <li>• <code>mdlDerivatives</code></li> </ul> <p>Simulink also applies these transposes when running accelerator and rapid accelerator simulations. The S-function is not inlined by using TLC. Instead, the MEX S-function with transposes is compiled directly.</p>
Any	C/C++ function is not affected by array layout	<p>The S-Function Builder block adds the SimStruct function <code>ssSetArrayLayoutForCodeGen</code> in <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> to mark the S-function as accepting both row-major and column-major code generation.</p>

### Select Sample Mode

Select the sample mode of your S-function. The sample mode determines the length of the interval between the times when the S-function updates its output. You can select one of these options:

- **Inherited** — The S-function inherits the sample mode from the block connected to the input port. When inherited sample mode is selected, the **Sample time value** field of the **Settings** table is inactive.
- **Continuous** — The block updates output values at each simulation step. When continuous sample time is selected, the **Sample time value** field of the **Settings** table is inactive.
- **Discrete** — The S-function updates output values at the rate specified in the **Sample time value** field of the **Settings** table.

### Set the Number of PWorks

Set **PWorks**, the number of data pointers used by the S-function. **PWorks** points to the memory over the lifecycle of the block. If you enter any other value than 0 for **Number of PWorks**, it adds a pointer, `void **PW`, to all functions in S-Function Builder. For example, you can declare and initialize a pointer to a file or memory at the `Start_wrapper`, access it in `Outputs_wrapper`, `Update_wrapper`, and `Derivatives_wrapper` functions, and deallocate it at the `Terminate_wrapper` function. The code written in these functions is called by the `mdlStart`, `mdlOutputs`, `mdlUpdate`, `mdlDerivatives`, and `mdlTerminate` methods. See the examples *Moving Average with Start and Terminate* and *Permutation using Cpp Classes in S-Function Demos*.



---

**Note** To use `PWorks` and model operating point in the same S-function, specify the operating point compliance as `USE_CUSTOM_OPERATING_POINT`.

When you use `PWorks` without explicitly specifying the operating point compliance, the compliance becomes `DISALLOW_OPERATING_POINT` after compilation. For more information, see “S-Function Compliance with the ModelOperatingPoint” on page 9-34.

---

### Enable Access to SimStruct

Make the `SimStruct` (`S`) accessible to the wrapper functions that the S-Function Builder is using. This selection enables you to use the `SimStruct` macros and functions with your code in the `Outputs_wrapper`, `Derivatives_wrapper`, and the `Update_wrapper` functions. When you turn this setting on, `SimStruct *S` is added to the list of parameters.

For example, with this option enabled, you can use macros such as `ssGetT` in code that computes the S-function outputs:

```
double t = ssGetT(S);
if(t < 2)
{
    y0[0] = u0[0];
} else
{
    y0[0]= 0.0;
}
```

### Direct Feedthrough

If the values from the current time step of the S-function inputs are used to compute the outputs, then on the **Settings** table, select **Direct Feedthrough**. The Simulink engine uses this information to detect algebraic loops created by directly or indirectly connecting the S-function output to the S-function input.

### Multi-instance Support

To declare that multiple execution instances of the generated S-function can operate with each other and that the function is configured to be used within the For Each Subsystem, on the **Settings** table, select **Multi-instance Support**. For more information on configuring an S-Function for Multi-instance support, see S-Function Support under For Each Subsystem.

### Multithreaded Execution Support

To declare that the generated S-function can run multithreaded, on the **Settings** table, select **Multithreaded Execution Support**.

### Code Reuse Support

To declare that the generated S-function meets the requirements for subsystem code reuse, on the **Settings** table, select **Code Reuse Support**. For more information on configuring an S-function for code reuse, see S-Functions for Code Reuse.

## Specify Ports and Parameters for the S-Function

Use the **Ports and Parameters** table on the bottom of the editor to specify input and output ports and parameters for the S-function. To add a port or parameter:

- Select the **Ports and Parameters** table, and from the S-Function Builder toolstrip, select your choice under **Insert Port**.
- Select the **Ports and Parameters** table and right-click one of the headers on the table.

To delete a port or parameter in the table, select the port or parameter you would like to delete, right-click to open the menu and click **Delete**.

The order of the ports and parameters in the table is the order of ports and parameters on the block. For example, the first input port on the table is the input port with the index 0, and the first parameter is the parameter with index 0.

You can define these settings in the **Ports and Parameters** table.

- 1 Name** — Name of port or parameter. To change the name of a port or parameter, double-click the name.
- 2 Scope** — Scope of port or parameter. The variable could be an input or output port or a parameter. Click the scope value to change scope of the port or parameter.
- 3 Data type** — Data type of port or parameter. You can specify Simulink built-in numeric data types for ports and parameters. You can also specify `fixdt` data types and bus types for ports. The `int64` and `uint64` data types are not supported for parameters.
- 4 Dimensions** — Dimension of port or parameter. To inherit dimensions for ports, specify the dimension as `-1`. For parameters, the dimension is set to `-1` and is inherited from the block parameters on the block interface.

To specify a 1-D dimension, only enter the number of rows for the dimension, for example, `[2]`. To enter an N-D dimension, enter the dimension as a vector with elements specifying size of each dimension. Dynamically sized ports are not supported for the third or higher dimensions

- 5 Complexity** — Specify the complexity of the port or parameter as real or complex.

## Use the Libraries Table to Specify External Code and Paths

The **Libraries** table allows you to specify the location of external code files referenced by custom code that you enter in other the wrapper methods of the S-Function Builder editor.

To enter a new path or an entry, select the **Libraries** table and select one of the options under **Insert Paths** on the S-Function Builder toolstrip. Alternatively, click one of the tags or values on the **Libraries** table. Once you select path or entry, you can change your selection by clicking the tag on the table. You can enter paths or entries to the external libraries, object codes and source files referenced by custom code on the S-Function Builder editor.

Tag to choose	Purpose
LIB_PATH	Specify object and library paths.
INC_PATH	Specify the include search paths for header files and source files.

Tag to choose	Purpose
SRC_PATH	Specify search paths for object files and source files.
ENV_PATH	Specify environment variables.
ENTRY	Specify the object, source, and library file names. You can also enter preprocessor directives in this field, for example, -DDEBUG, -DHARDWARE_VARIANT=1 or -UDEBUG. Specify each file on a separate line.

Enclose the names of the header files on the top of the code editor. If you are using custom header files that are not on the same path, include the directory with the INC\_PATH tag. Similarly, use the top of the editor to declare external functions that are not declared in the header files. Include each declaration on a separate line.

You can enter paths or entries for to the external libraries, object codes, and source files referenced by custom code on the S-Function Builder editor.

For example, consider an S-Function Builder project in C:\Program Files\MATLAB\work. The table shows on how to link to external files:

File Locations	Entries to the Libraries Table
c:\customfolder\customfunctions.lib	LIB_PATH c:\customfolder ENTRY customfunctions.lib
C:\Program Files\MATLAB\work\customobjs\userfunctions.obj	LIB_PATH \$MATLABROOT\customobjs ENTRY userfunctions.obj
D:\externalsource\freesource.c	SRC_PATH D:\externalsource ENTRY freesource.c

You can use LIB\_PATH to specify both object and library file paths. You can include the library name in the LIB\_PATH declaration. However, you must place the object file name on a separate line. The tag \$MATLABROOT indicates a path relative to the MATLAB installation. List multiple LIB\_PATH entries on separate lines. The paths are searched in the order you specify.

Each directive must be listed on a separate line.

---

**Note** Do not put quotation marks around the library path, even if the path name has spaces in it. If you add quotation marks, the compiler will not find the library.

---

## Develop the S-Function

The S-Function Builder block uses wrapper methods to specify the S-function code and properties that generate the corresponding S-function. Use the appropriate wrapper methods to construct the S-function body. Click **Apply** on the toolstrip to generate the S-function code.

This table provides a summary of S-Function Builder methods:

S-Function Method	Wrapper Method	Purpose
Start and Terminate	<system_name>_Start_wrapper  <system_name>_Terminate_wrapper	Allocate and deallocate memory at the start and the end of simulation. Allocated memory is referenced using PWorks for use throughout the S-Function.
Outputs	<system_name>_Outputs_wrapper	Enter the code that computes the outputs of the S-function at each simulation time step.
Update	<system_name>_Update_wrapper	Enter the code that computes the value of discrete states at the next time step using the values at the current time step. This method only exists when you specify <b>Number of Discrete States</b> on the <b>Settings</b> table.
Derivatives	<system_name>_Derivatives_wrapper	Enter the code to compute state derivatives. This method only exists when you specify <b>Number of Continuous States</b> on the <b>Settings</b> table.

### Compute Outputs Using Outputs Method

In the S-Function Builder, use the `Outputs_wrapper` method to enter the code that computes the outputs of the S-function at each simulation time step. When generating the S-function code, the S-Function Builder block generates a wrapper method using the name of your model and a wrapper function in the form of `<system_name>_<function_name>_wrapper`. For example, if your model is named `dsfunc_builder`, the output method appears as `dsfunc_builder_Output_wrapper` in the S-Function Builder editor. If you do not have a name for your S-Function Builder block yet, it appears as `system_Output_wrapper`.

See the following code for an example of the `Outputs` method:

```
void sfun_Outputs_wrapper(const real_T *u,
                        real_T *y,
                        const real_T *xD, /* optional */
                        const real_T *xC, /* optional */
                        const real_T *param0, /* optional */
                        int_T p_width0 /* optional */
                        real_T *param1 /* optional */
                        int_T p_width1 /* optional */
                        int_T y_width, /* optional */
                        int_T u_width) /* optional */
{
/* Your code inserted here */
}
```

where `sfun` is the name of the S-function. The S-Function Builder inserts a call to this wrapper function in the `mdlOutputs` callback method that it generates for your S-function. The Simulink

engine invokes the `mdlOutputs` method at each simulation or sample time step to compute the S-function output. The `mdlOutputs` method in turn invokes the wrapper function containing your output code. Your output code then computes and returns the S-function output.

The `mdlOutputs` method passes some or all of the following arguments to the outputs wrapper function.

Argument	Description
<code>u0, u1, ... uN</code>	Pointers to arrays that contain the inputs to the S-function, where <b>N</b> is the number of input ports specified on the <b>Input</b> scope found on the <b>Ports and Parameters</b> table. The names of the arguments that appear in the outputs wrapper function are the same as the names found on the <b>Input</b> scope of the <b>Ports and Parameters</b> table. The width of each array is the same as the input width specified for each input on the <b>Dimensions</b> pane. If the input is a matrix, the width equals the product of the dimensions of the arrays. If you specify -1 as an input width, the width of the array is specified by the wrapper function's <code>u_width</code> argument.
<code>y0, y1, ... yN</code>	Pointer to arrays that contain the outputs of the S-function, where <b>N</b> is the number of output ports specified on the <b>Scope</b> pane on the <b>Ports and Parameters</b> table. The names of the arguments that appear in the outputs wrapper function are the same as the names found on the <b>Output</b> scope of <b>Ports and Parameters</b> table. The width of each array is the same as the output width specified for each output on the <b>Dimensions</b> pane. If an output is a matrix, the width equals the product of the dimensions of the arrays. If you specified -1 as the output width, the width of the array is specified by the wrapper function's <code>y_width</code> argument. Use this array to pass the outputs that your code computes back to the Simulink engine.
<code>xD</code>	Pointer to an array that contains the discrete states of the S-function. This argument appears only if you specify discrete states on the <b>Number of discrete states</b> in the <b>Settings</b> menu. At the first simulation time step, the discrete states have the initial values that you specify on the <b>Discrete states IC</b> . At subsequent sample-time steps, the states are obtained from the values that the S-function computes at the preceding time step.
<code>xC</code>	Pointer to an array that contains the continuous states of the S-function. This argument appears only if you specify number of continuous states on the <b>Number of continuous states</b> row of the <b>Settings</b> menu. At the first simulation time step, the continuous states have the initial values that you specify on the <b>Continuous states IC</b> row. At subsequent time steps, the states are obtained by numerically integrating the derivatives of the states at the preceding time step.
<code>param0, p_width0, param1, p_width1, ... paramN, p_widthN</code>	<code>param0, param1, ...paramN</code> are pointers to arrays that contain the S-function parameters, where <b>N</b> is the number of parameters specify on the <b>Ports and Parameters</b> table. <code>p_width0, p_width1, ...p_widthN</code> are the widths of the parameter arrays. If a parameter is a matrix, the width equals the product of the dimensions of the arrays. For example, the width of a 3-by-2 matrix parameter is 6.

Argument	Description
y_width	Width of the array that contains the S-function outputs. This argument appears in the generated code only if you specify -1 as the width of the S-function output. If the output is a matrix, y_width is the product of the dimensions of the matrix.
u_width	Width of the array that contains the S-function inputs. This argument appears in the generated code only if you specify -1 as the width of the S-function input. If the input is a matrix, u_width is the product of the dimensions of the matrix.

These arguments permit you to compute the output of the block as a function of its inputs and, optionally, its states and parameters. The code that you enter in this field can invoke external functions declared in the header files or external declarations on the **Libraries** table, which allows you to use existing code to compute the outputs of the S-function.

### Update Discrete States Using Update Method

Use the `Update_wrapper` function to enter code that computes the values of the discrete states at the next time step according to the values at the current time step. See the following code:

```
void sfun_Update_wrapper(const real_T *u,
                        const real_T *y,
                        real_T *xD,
                        const real_T *param0, /* optional */
                        int_T p_width0, /* optional */
                        real_T *param1, /* optional */
                        int_T p_width1, /* optional */
                        int_T y_width, /* optional */
                        int_T u_width) /* optional */
{
    /* Your code inserted here. */
}
```

where `sfun` is the name of the S-function. The S-Function Builder block inserts a call to this wrapper function in the `mdlUpdate` callback method that it generates for the S-function. The Simulink engine calls the `mdlUpdate` method at the end of each time step to obtain the values of the discrete states at the next time step (see “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52). At the next time step, the engine passes the updated states back to the `mdlOutputs` method.

The `mdlUpdate` callback method generated for the S-function passes the following arguments to the `Update_wrapper` function:

- u
- y
- xD
- param0, p\_width0, param1, p\_width1, ... paramN, p\_widthN
- y\_width
- u\_width

See “Compute Outputs Using Outputs Method” on page 4-22 for the meanings and usage of these arguments. Your code should use the discrete states variable, `xD`, to return the values of the discrete

states that it computes. The arguments allow your code to compute the discrete states as functions of the S-function inputs, outputs, and, optionally, parameters. Your code can invoke external functions declared in the code editor.

### Compute Continuous States Using Derivatives Method

If the S-function has continuous states, use the `Derivatives_wrapper` function to enter the code required to compute the state derivatives. Enter code for the `mdlDerivatives` function to compute the derivatives of the continuous states editor under this field. An example declaration of the function may look like the following:

```
void system_Derivatives_wrapper(const real_T *u,
                               const real_T *y,
                               real_T *dx,
                               real_T *xC,
                               const real_T *param0, /* optional */
                               int_T p_width0, /* optional */
                               real_T *param1, /* optional */
                               int_T p_width1, /* optional */
                               int_T y_width, /* optional */
                               int_T u_width) /* optional */
{
    /* Your code inserted here. */
}
```

where `system` is the name of the S-function.

The S-Function Builder block inserts a call to this wrapper function in the `mdlDerivatives` method that it generates for the S-function. The Simulink engine calls the `mdlDerivatives` method at the end of each time step to obtain the derivatives of the continuous states (see “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52). The Simulink solver numerically integrates the derivatives to determine the continuous states at the next time step. At the next time step, the engine passes the updated states back to the `mdlOutputs` method. For more information on how Simulink engine interacts with S-functions, see “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52.

The `mdlDerivatives` method generated for the S-function passes the following arguments to the derivatives wrapper function:

- `u`
- `y`
- `dx`
- `xC`
- `param0`, `p_width0`, `param1`, `p_width1`, ... `paramN`, `p_widthN`
- `y_width`
- `u_width`

The `dx` argument is a pointer to an array whose width is the same as the number of continuous derivatives specified on the **Settings** pane. Your code should use this array to return the values of the derivatives that it computes. See the explanation under “Compute Outputs Using Outputs Method” on page 4-22 method for the meanings and usage of the other arguments. The arguments allow your

code to compute derivatives as a function of the S-function inputs, outputs, and, optionally, parameters. Your code can invoke external functions declared in the code editor.

### Allocate and Deallocate Memory Using Start and Terminate Methods

Use the `Start_wrapper` method to write code to allocate memory at the start of simulation. The allocated is referenced by `Pworks` for use throughout the S-function. Similarly, use the `Terminate_wrapper` method to write code to free up the memory allocated at the `Start_wrapper` method. Memory referenced by `PWorks` can also be seen by **Terminate**, and should be deallocated here.

See the “Set the Number of PWorks” on page 4-18 to learn more about PWorks.

### Build the S-Function

After entering the code in the S-Function Builder editor, investigate the options under **Build** menu to build your S-function.

The build menu contains the following selections:

- **Show compile steps** — Log each build step in the **Build Log** field.
- **Create a debuggable MEX-file** — Include debugging information in the generated MEX file.
- **Generate wrapper TLC** — Selecting this option allows you to generate a TLC file. You need to generate a TLC file if you are running your model in rapid accelerator mode or generating Simulink Coder code from your model. Also, while it is not necessary for accelerator mode simulations, the TLC file generates code for the S-function and thus makes your model run faster in accelerator mode.
- **Enable support for coverage** — Make an S-Function compatible with model coverage. For more information, see “Coverage for Custom C/C++ Code in Simulink Models” (Simulink Coverage) in the Simulink Coverage™ documentation.
- **Enable support for design verifier** — Generate an S-function for use with the Simulink Design Verifier™. For more information, see “Support Limitations for S-Functions and C/C++ Code” (Simulink Design Verifier).

When you make your selection, click **Build** to build your S-function and build a MEX-file. To exclude building of a MEX-file from the generated source code, select **Generate Code Only**.

### See Also

S-Function | S-Function Builder

### More About

- “Model a State-Space System Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-27
- “Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-8



## Model a State-Space System Using S-Function Builder

In this example, you will use the basic methods in the S-Function Builder to model a two-input, two-output discrete state-space system with two states. The state-space matrices are parameters to the S-function, and the S-function input and output are vectors.

If you would like to study a manually written version of the created S-function, see `dsfunc.c`. Note that to create a S-function from an example S-Function Builder model, you need to build the model first.

### Configure the S-Function Builder Settings

Specify the number of discrete states and their initial conditions, the sample mode, and the sample time of the S-function. This example contains two discrete states, each initialized to 1, and a discrete sample mode with a sample time of 1. Ensure that the **Direct feedthrough** is selected, because the current values of the S-function inputs are used to compute its outputs.

SETTINGS	
Number of discrete states	2
Discrete states IC	1,1
Number of continuous states	0
Continuous states IC	0
Array layout	Column-major
Sample mode	Discrete
Sample time value	1
Number of PWorks	0
Enable access to SimStruct	<input type="checkbox"/>
Direct feedthrough	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

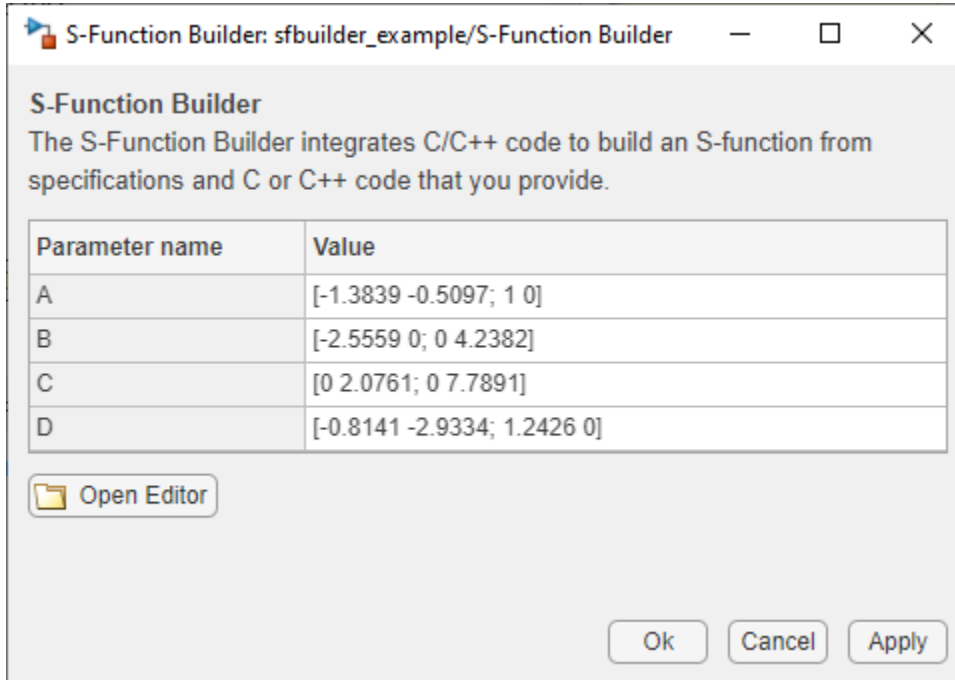
### Define Ports and Parameters

Use the **Ports and Parameters** table on the bottom of the editor to specify the ports and parameters of the S-function. For this example, we have one input, one output port, and four parameters.

To set or change the values of the block parameters, you can:

- Double-click the S-Function Builder block on the model.
- Use the **Block Parameters** from the context menu.

Alternatively, you can store the state-space matrices in variables in the MATLAB workspace and enter the variable names into the **Value** field for each parameter. Enter the values in the image for state-space parameters on the **Value** field of the **Block Parameters** table.



## Define the Output Method

In this example, The `Outputs_wrapper` method calculates the S-function output as a function of the input and state vectors and the state-space matrices. In the outputs code, reference S-function parameters using the parameter names defined on the **Ports and Parameters** table. Index into 2-D matrices using a scalar index, again keeping in mind that S-functions use zero-based indexing. For example, to access the element  $C(2, 1)$  in the S-function parameter C, use `C[1]` in the S-function code.

```
void dsfunc_builder_Outputs_wrapper(const real_T *u,
                                   real_T *y,
                                   const real_T *xD,
                                   const real_T *xC,
                                   const real_T *A, const int_T p_width0,
                                   const real_T *B, const int_T p_width1,
                                   const real_T *C, const int_T p_width2,
                                   const real_T *D, const int_T p_width3)
{
  /* Output_BEGIN */
  y[0]=C[0]*xD[0]+C[2]*xD[1]+D[0]*u[0]+D[2]*u[1];
  y[1]=C[1]*xD[0]+C[3]*xD[1]+D[1]*u[0]+D[3]*u[1];
  /* Output_END */
}
```

## Define the Update Method

The `Update_wrapper` method updates the discrete states. As with the outputs code, use the S-function parameter names and index into 2-D matrices using a scalar index, keeping in mind that S-functions use zero-based indexing. For example, to access the element  $A(2,1)$  in the S-function parameter `A`, use `A[1]` in the S-function code. The variable `xD` stores the final values of the discrete states. Enter the following code in the `Update_wrapper` function.

```
void dsfunc_builder_Update_wrapper(const real_T *u,
                                  real_T *y,
                                  real_T *xD,
                                  const real_T *A, const int_T p_width0,
                                  const real_T *B, const int_T p_width1,
                                  const real_T *C, const int_T p_width2,
                                  const real_T *D, const int_T p_width3)
{
  /* Update_BEGIN */
  real_T tempX[2] = {0.0, 0.0};
  tempX[0]=A[0]*xD[0]+A[2]*xD[1]+B[0]*u[0]+B[2]*u[1];
  tempX[1]=A[1]*xD[0]+A[3]*xD[1]+B[1]*u[0]+B[3]*u[1];

  xD[0] = tempX[0];
  xD[1] = tempX[1];
  /* Update_END */
}
```

## Build the State-Space System

Click the arrow under **Build** and select the following options:

- **Show compile steps**
- **Create a debuggable MEX-file**
- **Generate wrapper TLC**

To learn more about what each option does, see “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15.

To build your S-function, click **Build** on the toolstrip to create an executable file for this S-function. You can now run the model and compare the output to the original discrete state-space S-function contained in `sfcn_demo_dsfunc`.

## See Also

S-Function | S-Function Builder

## More About

- “Build S-Functions Automatically Using S-Function Builder” on page 4-15
- “Use a Bus with S-Function Builder to Create an S-Function” on page 4-8

## Templates for C S-Functions

### In this section...

“About the Templates for C S-Functions” on page 4-30

“S-Function Source File Requirements” on page 4-30

“The SimStruct” on page 4-32

“Data Types in S-Functions” on page 4-32

“Compiling C S-Functions” on page 4-32

### About the Templates for C S-Functions

Use one of the provided C MEX S-function templates as a starting point for creating your own S-function. The templates contain skeleton implementations of callback methods with comments that explain their use. The template file, `sfuntmpl_basic.c`, contains commonly used S-function routines. A template containing all available routines (as well as more comments) can be found in `sfuntmpl_doc.c` in the same folder.

---

**Note** We recommend that you use the C MEX file template when developing MEX S-functions.

---

### S-Function Source File Requirements

This section describes requirements that every S-function source file must meet to compile correctly. The S-function templates meet these requirements.

#### Statements Required at the Top of S-Functions

For S-functions to operate properly, *each* source module of your S-function that accesses the `SimStruct` must contain the following sequence of defines and include

```
#define S_FUNCTION_NAME your_sfunction_name_here
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2
#include "simstruc.h"
```

where *your\_sfunction\_name\_here* is the name of your S-function (i.e., what you enter in the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box). These statements give you access to the `SimStruct` data structure that contains pointers to the data used by the simulation. The included code also defines the macros used to store and retrieve data in the `SimStruct`, described in detail in “Convert Level-1 C MEX S-Functions” on page 4-69. In addition, the code specifies that you are using the Level-2 S-function format.

---

**Note** All S-functions from Simulink version 1.3 through version 2.1 are considered to be Level-1 S-functions. They are compatible with newer versions of the software, but we recommend that you write new S-functions in the Level-2 format.

---

The following headers are included by `simstruc.h` when compiling as a MEX file.

## Header Files Included by `simstruc.h` When Compiling as a MEX File

Header File	Description
<code>matlabroot/extern/include/tmwtypes.h</code>	General data types, e.g., <code>real_T</code>
<code>matlabroot/simulink/include/simstruc_types.h</code>	SimStruct data types, e.g., <code>DTypeId</code>
<code>matlabroot/extern/include/mex.h</code>	MATLAB MEX file API routines to interface MEX files with the MATLAB environment
<code>matlabroot/extern/include/matrix.h</code>	MATLAB External Interface API routines to query and manipulate MATLAB matrices

When compiling your S-function for use with the Simulink Coder product, `simstruc.h` includes the following.

## Header Files Included by `simstruc.h` When Used by the Simulink Coder Product

Header File	Description
<code>matlabroot/extern/include/tmwtypes.h</code>	General types, e.g., <code>real_T</code>
<code>matlabroot/simulink/include/simstruc_types.h</code>	SimStruct data types, e.g., <code>DTypeId</code>
<code>matlabroot/rtw/c/src/rt_matrx.h</code>	Macros for MATLAB API routines

## Callback Methods That an S-Function Must Implement

Your S-function must implement the following functions (see “Configure C/C++ S-Function Features”):

- `mdlInitializeSizes` specifies the sizes of various parameters in the `SimStruct`, such as the number of output ports for the block.
- `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the sample time(s) of the block.
- `mdlOutputs` calculates the output of the block.
- `mdlTerminate` performs any actions required at the termination of the simulation. If no actions are required, this function can be implemented as a stub.

## Statements Required at the Bottom of S-Functions

Your S-function must include the following trailer code at the end of the main module only.

```
#ifndef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this being compiled as MEX-file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX-file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h" /* Code generation registration func */
#endif
```

These statements select the appropriate code for your particular application:

- `simulink.c` is included if the file is being compiled into a MEX- file.
- `cg_sfun.h` is included if the file is being used with the Simulink Coder product to produce a standalone or real-time executable.

---

**Note** This trailer code must not be in the body of any S-function routine.

---

## The SimStruct

The file `simstruct.h` is a C language header file that defines the `SimStruct` data structure and its access macros. It encapsulates all the data relating to the model or S-function, including block parameters and outputs.

There is one `SimStruct` data structure allocated for the Simulink model. Each S-function in the model has its own `SimStruct` associated with it. The organization of these `SimStruct`s is much like a folder tree. The `SimStruct` associated with the model is the *root* `SimStruct`. Any `SimStruct` associated with an S-function is a *child* `SimStruct`.

The Simulink product provides a set of macros that S-functions can use to access the fields of the `SimStruct`. See “About `SimStruct` Functions” on page 12-2 for more information.

## Data Types in S-Functions

The file `tmwtypes.h` is a C language header file that defines a set of data types used in the S-function template and in the `SimStruct`. These data types, such as `real_T`, `uint32_T`, etc., provide a way to switch between different data types for 16, 32, and 64 bit systems, allowing greater platform independence and flexibility.

S-functions are not required to use these data types. For example, you can edit the example `csfunc.c` and change `real_T` to `double` and `int_T` to `int`. If you compile and simulate the S-function, the results will be identical to the results using the previous data types.

## Compiling C S-Functions

Your S-function can be compiled in one of three modes, defined either by the `mex` command or by the Simulink Coder product when the S-function is built:

- `MATLAB_MEX_FILE` — Indicates that the S-function is being built as a MEX file for use with the Simulink product.
- `RT` — Indicates that the S-function is being built with the Simulink Coder product for a real-time application using a fixed-step solver.
- `NRT` — Indicates that the S-function is being built with the Simulink Coder product for a non-real-time application using a variable-step solver.

The build process you use automatically defines the mode for your S-function.

## Integrate C Functions Using Legacy Code Tool

### In this section...

“Overview” on page 4-33  
 “Integrate C Functions into Simulink Models with Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-35  
 “Integrate C Function Whose Arguments Are Pointers to Structures” on page 4-37  
 “Registering Legacy Code Tool Data Structures” on page 4-41  
 “Declaring Legacy Code Tool Function Specifications” on page 4-42  
 “Generating and Compiling the S-Functions” on page 4-48  
 “Generating a Masked S-Function Block for Calling a Generated S-Function” on page 4-48  
 “Forcing Simulink Accelerator Mode to Use S-Function TLC Inlining Code” on page 4-49  
 “Calling Legacy C++ Functions” on page 4-49  
 “Handling Multiple Registration Files” on page 4-49  
 “Deploying Generated S-Functions” on page 4-50  
 “Legacy Code Tool Examples” on page 4-50  
 “Legacy Code Tool Limitations” on page 4-50

### Overview

You can integrate existing C (or C++) functions, such as device drivers, lookup tables, and general functions and interfaces, into Simulink models by using the Legacy Code Tool. Using specifications that you supply as MATLAB code, the tool transforms existing functions into C MEX S-functions that you can include in Simulink models. If you use Simulink Coder to generate code, Legacy Code Tool can insert an appropriate call to your C function into the generated code. For details, see “Import Calls to External Code into Generated Code with Legacy Code Tool” (Simulink Coder).

In comparison to using the S-Function Builder or writing an S-function, Legacy Code Tool is easier to use and generates optimized code (does not generate wrapper code) often required by embedded systems. However, consider alternative approaches for a hybrid system, such as a system that includes a plant and controller, or a system component written in a language other than C or C++. Alternative approaches are more flexible in that they support more features and programming languages.

To interact with the Legacy Code Tool, you

- Use a Legacy Code Tool data structure to specify
  - A name for the S-function
  - Specifications for the existing C functions
  - Files and paths required for compilation
  - Options for the generated S-function
- Use the `legacy_code` function to
  - Initialize the Legacy Code Tool data structure for a given C function
  - Generate an S-function for use during simulation

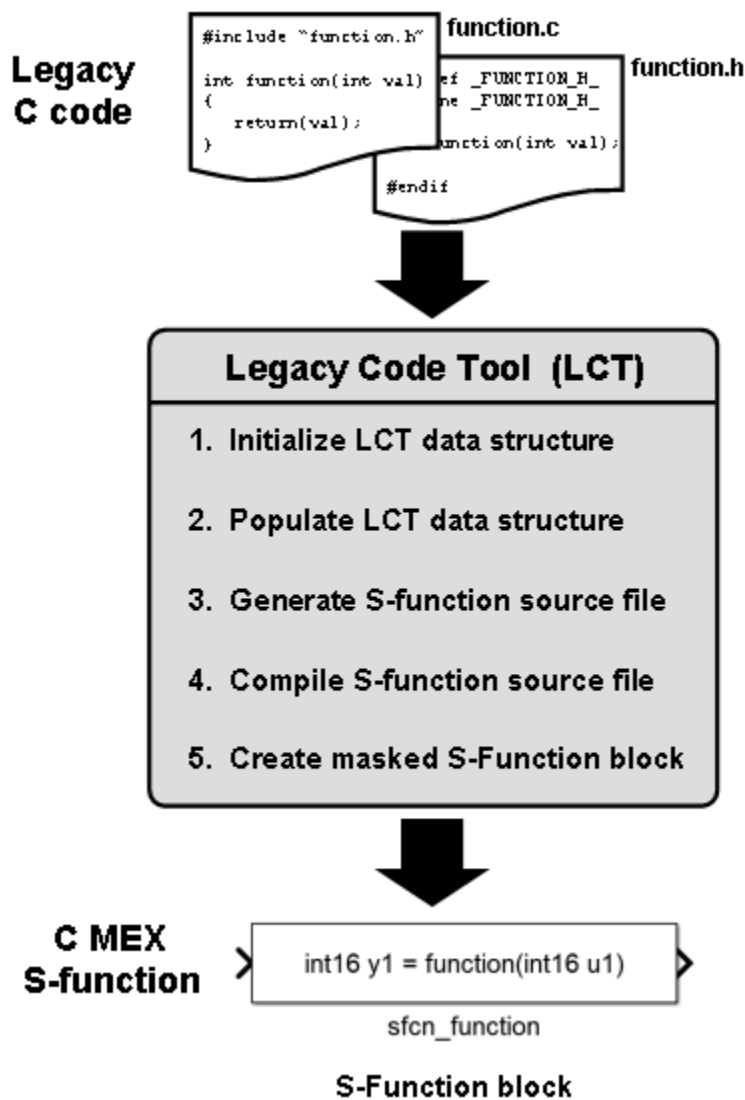
- Compile and link the generated S-function into a dynamically loadable executable
- Generate a masked S-function block for calling the generated S-function
- Generate a TLC block file and, if necessary, an *sFunction\_makecfg.m* or *rtwmakecfg.m* file for code generation (Simulink Coder product license required)

---

**Note** Before you can use `legacy_code`, ensure that a C compiler is set up for your MATLAB installation.

---

The following diagram illustrates a general procedure for using the Legacy Code Tool. “Integrate C Functions into Simulink Models with Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-35 provides an example that uses the Legacy Code Tool to transform an existing C function into a C MEX S-function.



If you have a Simulink Coder product license, see “Import Calls to External Code into Generated Code with Legacy Code Tool” (Simulink Coder) for information on using the Legacy Code Tool for code generation.



## Integrate C Functions into Simulink Models with Legacy Code Tool

This example demonstrates how to integrate an existing C function into a Simulink model using Legacy Code Tool.

Suppose that you have a C function that outputs the value of its floating-point input multiplied by two. The function is defined in a source file named `doubleIt.c`, and its declaration exists in a header file named `doubleIt.h`.

<pre>#include "doubleIt.h"  double doubleIt(double inVal) {     return(2 * inVal); }</pre>	<pre>#ifndef _DOUBLEIT_H_ #define _DOUBLEIT_H_  double doubleIt(double inVal);  #endif</pre>
<b>doubleIt.c</b>	<b>doubleIt.h</b>

- 1 Initialize a MATLAB struct `def` with fields that represent Legacy Code Tool properties using the `legacy_code` function.

```
def = legacy_code('initialize')
```

The Legacy Code Tool data structure named `def` displays its fields in the MATLAB command window as shown here:

```
def =

    SFunctionName: ''
InitializeConditionsFcnSpec: ''
    OutputFcnSpec: ''
    StartFcnSpec: ''
    TerminateFcnSpec: ''
    HeaderFiles: {}
    SourceFiles: {}
    HostLibFiles: {}
    TargetLibFiles: {}
    IncPaths: {}
    SrcPaths: {}
    LibPaths: {}
    SampleTime: 'inherited'
    Options: [1x1 struct]
```

- 2 Specify appropriate values for fields in the Legacy Code Tool data structure to identify properties of the existing C function. For example, specify the C function source and header filenames by entering the following commands at the MATLAB command prompt:

```
def.SourceFiles = {'doubleIt.c'};
def.HeaderFiles = {'doubleIt.h'};
```

You must also specify information about the S-function that the Legacy Code Tool produces from the C code. For example, specify a name for the S-function and its output function declaration by entering:

```
def.SFunctionName = 'ex_sfundoubleit';
def.OutputFcnSpec = 'double y1 = doubleIt(double u1)';
```

For information about the various data structure fields, see the `legacy_code` reference page.

- 3 Generate an S-function source file from the existing C function by using the `legacy_code` function. At the MATLAB command prompt, type:

```
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', def);
```

The Legacy Code Tool uses the information specified in `def` to create the S-function source file named `ex_sfun_doubleit.c` in the current MATLAB folder.

- 4 Compile and link the S-function source file into a dynamically loadable executable for Simulink using the `legacy_code` function. At the MATLAB command prompt, type:

```
legacy_code('compile', def);
```

The following messages appear in the MATLAB command window:

```
### Start Compiling ex_sfun_doubleit
    mex('ex_sfun_doubleit.c', 'd:\work\lct_demos\doubleIt.c',
        '-Id:\work\lct\lct_demos')
### Finish Compiling ex_sfun_doubleit
### Exit
```

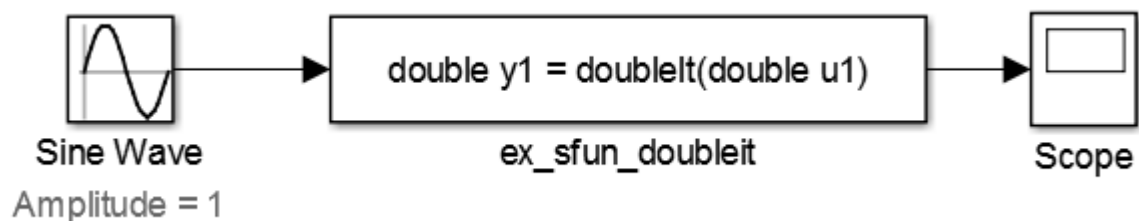
On a 32-bit Microsoft Windows system, the resulting S-function executable is named `ex_sfun_doubleit.mexw32`.

- 5 Insert a masked S-Function block into a Simulink model.

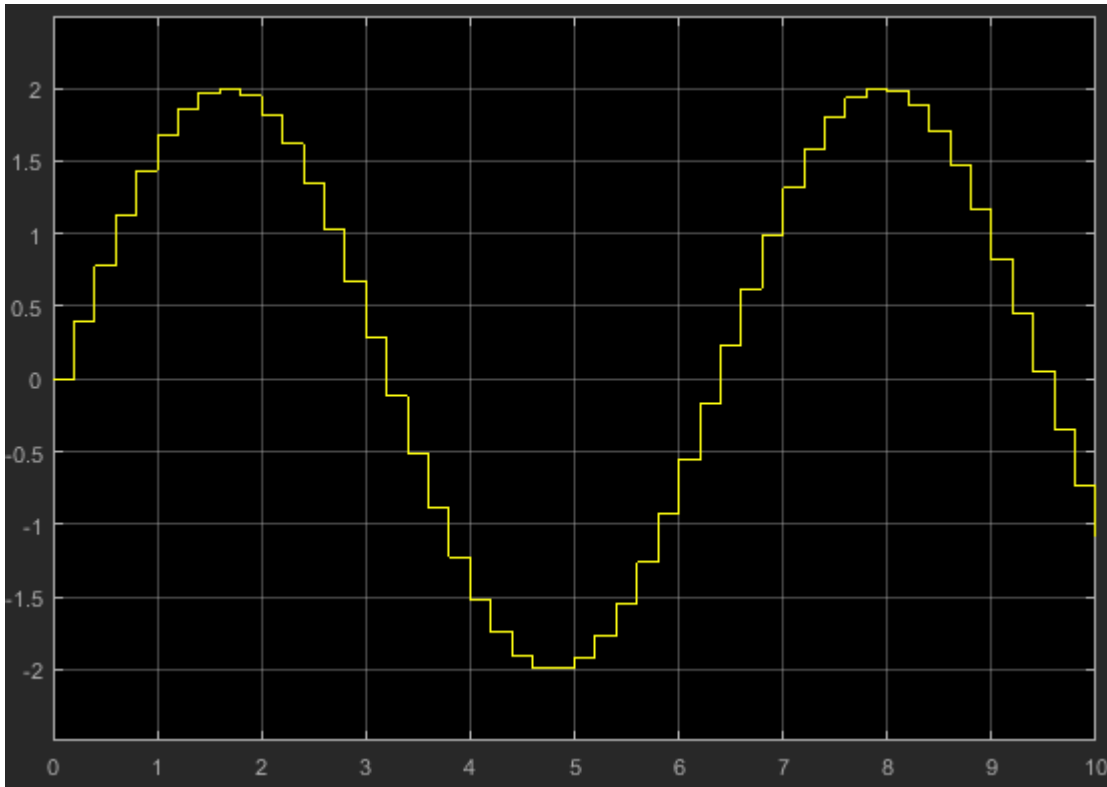
```
legacy_code('slblock_generate', def);
```

The Legacy Code Tool configures the block to use the C MEX S-function created in the previous step. Also, the tool masks the block such that it displays the value of its `OutputFcnSpec` property (see the description of the `legacy_code` function).

- 6 Add a Sine Wave block of amplitude 1 to the input of the C-MEX S-function block and a Scope block to the output.



Run the simulation. The C-MEX S-Function block returns the value of its floating-point input multiplied by two. It behaves like the C function `doubleIt`.



## Integrate C Function Whose Arguments Are Pointers to Structures

This example shows how to use the Legacy Code Tool to integrate a C function whose arguments are pointers to structures.

In Simulink®, create a `Simulink.Bus` object to represent a structure type. Use bus signals in a model to represent structured signals and states. Create MATLAB structures in a workspace or in a block parameter dialog box to represent parameter structures.

For information about buses, see “Composite Interface Guidelines”. For information about parameter structures, see “Organize Related Block Parameter Definitions in Structures”. To create bus objects, see “Create and Specify Simulink.Bus Objects”.

### Explore External Code

Copy this custom source code into a file named `ex_mySrc_LCT.c` in your current folder.

```
<include>ex_mySrc_LCT.c</include>
```

The arguments of the function `myFcn` are pointers to structures. The function accepts an input signal argument, a parameter argument, and an output signal argument.

Copy this custom header code into a file named `ex_myTypes_LCT.h` in your current folder.

```
<include>ex_myTypes_LCT.h</include>
```

The file defines the signal and parameter structure types that `myFcn` uses.

### Create Bus Objects to Represent Structure Types in Simulink

At the command prompt, use the function `Simulink.importExternalCTypes` to generate bus objects in the base workspace.

```
Simulink.importExternalCTypes('ex_myTypes_LCT.h');
```

The bus objects correspond to the `struct` types that `ex_myTypes_LCT.h` defines.

### Create Block to Execute External Code

Create a structure variable, `def`, to store the specifications for an S-function that calls the external code. Use the function `legacy_code` to create the structure and set default values.

```
def = legacy_code('initialize');
```

Set the name of the S-function to `sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT`.

```
def.SFunctionName = 'sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT';
```

Identify the external source and header files by their file names.

```
def.SourceFiles = {'ex_mySrc_LCT.c'};
def.HeaderFiles = {'ex_myTypes_LCT.h'};
```

Specify the prototype of the output function, which the model calls every simulation step, by copying the prototype of the external function `myFcn`. Set the names of the arguments to `u1`, `p1`, and `y1` to represent the input argument, the parameter argument, and the output argument. Use the syntax `[1]` to specify that each argument is a pointer.

```
def.OutputFcnSpec = ['void myFcn(sigStructType u1[1], ',...
    'paramStructType p1[1], sigStructType y1[1])'];
```

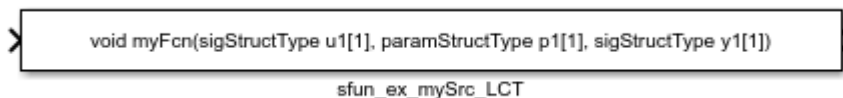
Use the function `legacy_code` to create the S-function and the corresponding C MEX executable from the specification, `def`. Specify the option `'generate_for_sim'` to prepare the S-function for normal and accelerated simulations.

```
legacy_code('generate_for_sim',def);
```

```
### Start Compiling sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT
mex('-IC:\TEMP\Bdoc23a_2213998_3568\ib570499\30\tp6c676437\simulink-ex12763634', '-c', '-out
Building with 'Microsoft Visual C++ 2019 (C)'.
MEX completed successfully.
mex('sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT.c', '-IC:\TEMP\Bdoc23a_2213998_3568\ib570499\30\tp6c676437\simulink-ex
Building with 'Microsoft Visual C++ 2019 (C)'.
MEX completed successfully.
### Finish Compiling sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT
### Exit
```

Create a masked S-Function block that calls the S-function during simulation.

```
legacy_code('slblock_generate', def);
```



The block appears in a new model.

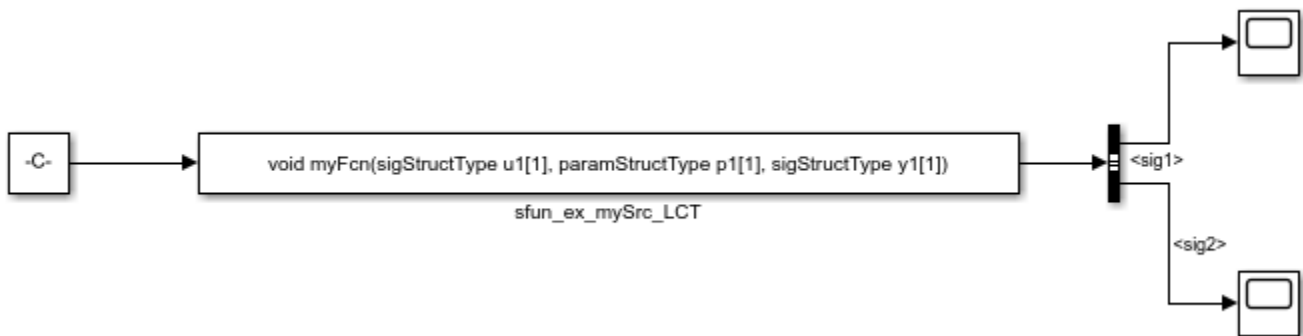
To use the S-Function block in your model, create a bus signal of type `sigStructType` to use as the block input. The block output is also a bus signal. The block mask accepts a parameter, **P1**. To set the value of the parameter, use a MATLAB structure whose fields match those of the structure type `paramStructType`.

### Verify Execution of External Code

Create a harness model that verifies the execution of the external code during simulation.

For an example, view the model `ex_lct_struct`.

```
open_system('ex_lct_struct')
```



In the Constant block dialog box, the **Constant value** parameter is set to a structure whose fields match those of the structure type `sigStructType`. On the **Signal Attributes** tab, **Output data type** is set to the bus object `sigStructType`.

The S-Function block calls the S-function `sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT` that you created. The output of the block enters a Bus Selector block, which extracts the signal elements `sig1` and `sig2`.

The S-Function block accepts a parameter through the mask dialog box. Create a MATLAB structure `structParam` to use as the value of the parameter.

```
structParam = struct;  
structParam.param1 = 15;  
structParam.param2 = 20;  
structParam.param3 = 5;
```

Optionally, use a `Simulink.Parameter` object to contain the structure. If you use a parameter object, you can set the data type of the structure by using the bus object `paramStructType`.

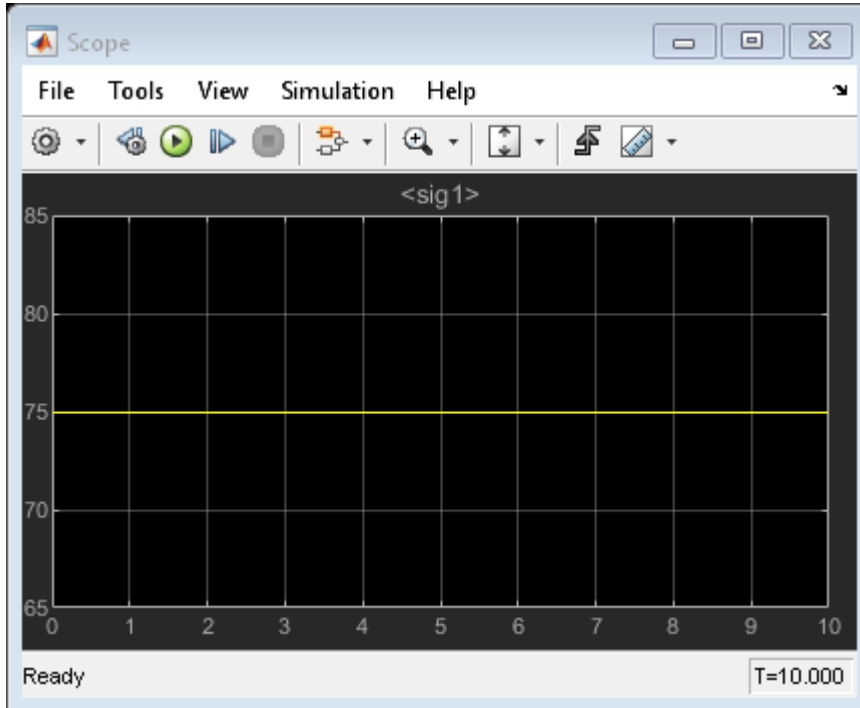
```
structParam = Simulink.Parameter(structParam);  
structParam.DataType = 'Bus: paramStructType';
```

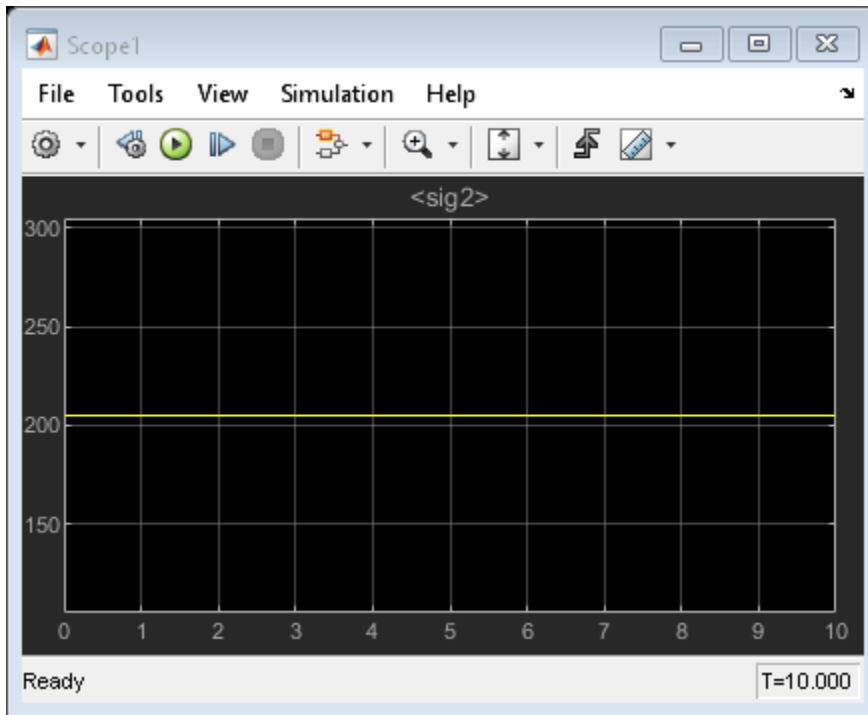
In the mask dialog box, set **P1** to `structParam`.

```
set_param('ex_lct_struct/sfun_ex_mySrc_LCT', 'SParameter1', 'structParam')
```

Simulate the model. The Scope blocks show that the S-Function block calls the external function `myFcn`.

```
open_system('ex_lct_struct/Scope')  
open_system('ex_lct_struct/Scope1')  
sim('ex_lct_struct')  
%
```





## Registering Legacy Code Tool Data Structures

The first step to using the Legacy Code Tool is to register one or more MATLAB structures with fields that represent properties of the existing C code and the S-function being generated. The registration process is flexible. You can choose to set up resources and initiate registration in a variety of ways, including

- Placing all required header and source files in the current working folder or in a hierarchical folder structure
- Generating and placing one or more S-functions in the current working folder
- Having one or more registration files in the same folder

To register a Legacy Code Tool data structure:

- 1 Use the `legacy_code` function, specifying `'initialize'` as the first argument.

```
lct_spec = legacy_code('initialize')
```

The Legacy Code Tool data structure named `lct_spec` displays its fields in the MATLAB command window as shown below:

```
lct_spec =
    SFunctionName: ''
InitializeConditionsFcnSpec: ''
    OutputFcnSpec: ''
    StartFcnSpec: ''
    TerminateFcnSpec: ''
    HeaderFiles: {}
    SourceFiles: {}
```

```
HostLibFiles: {}
TargetLibFiles: {}
IncPaths: {}
SrcPaths: {}
LibPaths: {}
SampleTime: 'inherited'
Options: [1x1 struct]
```

- 2 Define values for the data structure fields (properties) that apply to your existing C function and the S-function you intend to generate. Minimally, you must specify
  - Source and header files for the existing C function (`SourceFiles` and `HeaderFiles`)
  - A name for the S-function (`SFunctionName`)
  - At least one function specification for the S-function (`InitializeConditionsFcnSpec`, `OutputFcnSpec`, `StartFcnSpec`, `TerminateFcnSpec`)

For a complete list and descriptions of the fields in the structure, see the `legacy_code` function reference page.

If you define fields that specify compilation resources and you specify relative paths, the Legacy Code Tool searches for the resources relative to the following directories, in the following order:

- 1 Current working folder
- 2 C-MEX S-function folder, if different than the current working folder
- 3 Directories you specify
  - `IncPaths` for header files
  - `SrcPaths` for source files
  - `LibPaths` for target and host libraries
- 4 Directories on the MATLAB search path, excluding toolbox directories

## Declaring Legacy Code Tool Function Specifications

The `InitializeConditionsFcnSpec`, `OutputFcnSpec`, `StartFcnSpec`, and `TerminateFcnSpec` fields defined in the Legacy Code Tool data structure (see the description of the `legacy_code` function) require character vector values that adhere to a specific syntax format. The required syntax format enables the Legacy Code Tool to map the return value and arguments of an existing C function to the return value, inputs, outputs, parameters, and work vectors of the S-function that the tool generates.

### General syntax

```
return-spec = function-name(argument-spec)
```

For example, the following character vector specifies a function named `doubleIt` with return specification `double y1` and input argument specification `double u1`.

```
def.OutputFcnSpec = 'double y1 = doubleIt(double u1)';
```

For more detail on declaring function specifications, see

- “Return Specification” on page 4-43
- “Function Name” on page 4-43



- “Argument Specification” on page 4-43
- “Supported Data Types” on page 4-46
- “Legacy Code Tool Function Specification Rules” on page 4-47
- “Legacy C Function Rules” on page 4-47

### Return Specification

The return specification defines the data type and variable name for the return value of the existing C function.

*return-type return-variable*

<i>return-type</i>	A data type listed in “Supported Data Types” on page 4-46.
<i>return-variable</i>	Token of the form $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n$ , where $n$ is the total number of output arguments.

If the function does not return a value, you can omit the return specification or specify it as `void`.

The following table shows valid function specification syntax for an integer return value. Use the table to identify the syntax you should use for your C function prototype.

Return Type	C Function Prototype	Legacy Code Tool Function Specification
No return value	<code>void myfunction(...)</code>	<code>void myfunction(...)</code>
Scalar value	<code>int = myfunction(...)</code>	<code>int16 y1 = myfunction(...)</code>

### Function Name

The function name that you specify must be the same as your existing C function name.

For example, consider the following C function prototype:

```
float doubleIt(float inVal);
```

In this case, the function name in the Legacy Code Tool function specification must be `doubleIt`.

You should not specify the name of a C macro. If you must, set the field `Options.isMacro` to `true` in case expression folding is enabled.

### Argument Specification

The argument specification defines one or more data type and token pairs that represent the input, output, parameter, and work vector arguments of the existing C function. The function input and output arguments map to block input and output ports and parameters map to workspace parameters.

*argument-type argument-token*

<i>argument-type</i>	A data type listed in “Supported Data Types” on page 4-46.
----------------------	--

<i>argument-token</i>	Token of one of the following forms: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Input — <math>u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n</math>, where <math>n</math> is the total number of input arguments</li> <li>• Output — <math>y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n</math>, where <math>n</math> is the total number of output arguments</li> <li>• Parameter — <math>p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n</math>, where <math>n</math> is the total number of parameter arguments</li> <li>• Work vectors (persistent memory) — <math>work_1, work_2, \dots, work_n</math>, where <math>n</math> is the total number of work vector arguments</li> </ul>
-----------------------	---

If the function has no arguments, you can omit the argument specification or specify it as `void`.

Consider the following C function prototype:

```
float powerIt(float inVal, int exponent);
```

To generate an S-function that calls the preceding function at each time step, set the Legacy Code Tool data structure field `OutputFcnSpec` to the following:

```
'single y1 = powerIt(single u1, int16 p1)'
```

Using this function specification, the Legacy Code Tool maps the following information.

Return Value or Argument	of C Type	To Token	of Data Type
Return value	float	y1	single
inVal	float	u1	single
exponent	int	p1	int16

If your function requires a Simulink S-function block with multiple input and output ports, map function arguments to input ports using a uniquely numbered `u` token. For output ports, use a uniquely numbered `y` token. These tokens are described in the preceding argument specification table. For example, consider the following C function prototype:

```
void myfunc(double *y2, double u2, double u3, double u1, double *y1);
```

An `OutputFcnSpec` character vector mapping the arguments to input and output ports looks similar to the following:

```
'void myfunc(double y2[1], double u2, double u3, double u1, double y1[1])'
```

The resulting S-function block includes three input ports and two output ports. The first input maps to function argument `u1`, the second input to `u2`, and the third input to `u3`. For the output ports, the function argument `y1[1]` maps to the first output, and argument `y2[1]` maps to the second output. For another example of mapping a function prototype to multiple input and output ports, see “Using Buses with Legacy Functions Having Structure Arguments”.

The following table shows valid function specification syntax for arguments of type integer. Use the table to identify and then adapt the syntax you should use for your C function prototype.

Argument Type	C Function Prototype	Legacy Code Tool Function Specification
<b>Input Arguments</b>		
No arguments	function(void)	function(void)
Scalar pass by value	function(int in1)	function(int16 u1)
Scalar pass by pointer	function(int *in1)	function(int16 u1[1])
Fixed vector	function(int in1[10]) or function(int *in1)	function(int16 u1[10])
Variable vector	function(int in1[]) or function(int *in1)	function(int16 u1[])
Fixed matrix	function(int in1[15]) or function(int in1[]) or function(int *in1)	function(int16 u1[3][5])
Variable matrix	function(int in1[]) or function(int *in1)	function(int16 u1[][])
<b>Output Arguments</b>		
Scalar pointer	function(int *y1)	function(int16 y1[1])
Fixed vector	function(int y1[10]) or function(int *y1)	function(int16 y1[10])
Fixed matrix	function(int y1[15]) or function(int y1[]) or function(int *y1)	function(int16 y1[3][5])
<b>Parameter Arguments</b>		
Scalar pass by value	function(int p1)	function(int16 p1)
Scalar pass by pointer	function(int *p1)	function(int16 p1[1])
Fixed vector	function(int p1[10]) or function(int *p1)	function(int16 p1[10])
Variable vector	function(int p1[]) or function(int *p1)	function(int16 p1[])
Fixed matrix	function(int p1[15]) or function(int p1[]) or function(int *p1)	function(int16 p1[3][5])
Variable matrix	function(int p1[]) or function(int *p1)	function(int16 p1[][])
<b>Work Vector Arguments</b>		
Scalar passed by value	function(int work1)	function(int16 work1)
Scalar pointer	function(int *work1) function(void *work1) function(void **work1)	function(int16 work1[1]) void function(void *work1) void function(void **work1)
Fixed vector	function(int work1[10]) or function(int *work1)	function(int16 work1[10])

Argument Type	C Function Prototype	Legacy Code Tool Function Specification
Fixed matrix	function(int work1[15]) or function(int work1[]) or function(int *work1)	function(int16 work1[3][5])

### Supported Data Types

Data Type	Supported for Input and Output?	Supported for Parameters?	Supported for Work Vectors?
“Data Types Supported by Simulink” (with the exception of <code>string</code> )	Yes	Yes	Yes
<code>Simulink.Bus</code> <sup>1</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
Array of <code>Simulink.Bus</code> <sup>2</sup>	Yes	No	Yes
<code>Simulink.NumericType</code> <sup>3</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<code>Simulink.AliasType</code> <sup>1</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<code>enum</code> <sup>1</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
Fixed-point <sup>4</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
Fi objects	N/A	Yes	N/A
Complex numbers <sup>5</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
1-D array	Yes	Yes	Yes
2-D array <sup>6</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
n-D array <sup>7</sup>	Yes	Yes	Yes
<code>void *</code>	No	No	Yes
<code>void **</code>	No	No	Yes

- 1 You must supply the header file that defines the structure of the bus, defines the `enum` type, or defines the data type with the same name as an alias. The structure of the bus declared in the header file must match the structure of the bus object (for example, the number and order of elements, data types and widths of elements, and so on). For an example, see “Using Buses with Legacy Functions Having Structure Arguments”.

To generate data type objects and enumeration classes that correspond to custom data types that your C code defines, use the `Simulink.importExternalCTypes` function.

- 2 A bus element can be complex, but only with Simulink built-in data types. Nesting of arrays to any level is also supported.
- 3 You must supply the header file that defines the data type only if the numeric data type is also an alias.
- 4 You must declare the data as a `Simulink.NumericType` object (unspecified scaling is not supported). For examples, see “Fixed Point Signals in Legacy Functions” and “Fixed Point Parameters in Legacy Functions”.
- 5 Limited to use with Simulink built-in data types. To specify a complex data type, enclose the built-in data type within angle brackets (<>) and prepend the word `complex` (for example, `complex<double>`). For an example, see “Complex Signals in Legacy Function”.

- 6 The MATLAB, Simulink, and Simulink Coder products store multidimensional array data in column-major format as a vector. If your external function code is written for row-major data, use `convertNDArrayToRowMajor` S-function option in `legacy_code`.
- 7 For a multidimensional signal, you can use the `size` function to determine the number of elements in the signal. For examples, see “Lookup Tables Implemented in Legacy Functions” and “Multi-Dimensional Signals in Legacy Functions”.

For more information, see “Data Types Supported by Simulink”.

### Legacy Code Tool Function Specification Rules

Specifications for the `legacy_code` must adhere to the following rules:

- If an argument is not scalar, you must pass the argument by reference.
- The numbering of input, output, parameter, and work vector argument tokens must start at 1 and increase monotonically.
- For a given Legacy Code Tool data structure, the data type and size of input, output, parameter, and work vector arguments must be the same across function specifications for `StartFcnSpec`, `InitializeConditionsFcnSpec`, `OutputFcnSpec`, and `TerminateFcnSpec`.
- You can specify argument dimensions with expressions that use the following:
  - Functions: `numel`, `size`
  - Parameter values
  - Operators: `+`, `-`, `*`, and `/`
  - Integer and floating point literals
  - Parentheses for grouping sub-expressions

For example:

```
def.OutputFcnSpec=
foo4(int8 p1[], int8 u1[], double y1[numel(u1)+2][numel(u1)+3], ...
int32 (numel(p1)+numel(u1))*2+size(y1,2));
```

### Legacy C Function Rules

To integrate a C function using the Legacy Code Tool, the function must adhere to the following rules:

- The function must not change the value of input arguments. If an input signal is a passed-by-reference argument to the function, the function must not modify the data pointed to by the argument.
- The function's return value cannot be a pointer.
- Function specifications you define for the `StartFcnSpec`, `InitializeConditionsFcnSpec`, or `TerminateFcnSpec` cannot access input or output arguments. For `StartFcnSpec` and `InitializeConditionsFcnSpec`, you can access output ports if the S-Function option `outputsConditionallyWritten` is set to `true`. With this option setting, the generated S-Function specifies that the memory associated with each output port cannot be overwritten and is global (`SS_NOT_REUSABLE_AND_GLOBAL`).

## Generating and Compiling the S-Functions

After you register a Legacy Code Tool data structure for an existing C function, use the `legacy_code` function as explained below to generate, compile, and link the S-function.

- 1 Generate a C MEX S-function based on the information defined in the structure. Call `legacy_code` with `'sfcn_cmex_generate'` as the first argument and the name of the data structure as the second argument.

```
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', lct_spec);
```

- 2 Compile and link the S-function. This step assumes that a C compiler is set up for your MATLAB installation. Call `legacy_code` with `'compile'` as the first argument and the name of the data structure as the second argument.

```
legacy_code('compile', lct_spec);
```

Informational messages similar to the following appear in the MATLAB command window and a dynamically loadable executable results. On a 32-bit Windows system, the Simulink software names the file `ex_sfundoubleit.mexw32`.

```
### Start Compiling ex_sfundoubleit
mex ex_sfundoubleit.c -Id:\work\lct\lct_demos
### Finish Compiling ex_sfundoubleit
### Exit
```

As a convenience, you can generate, compile, and link the S-function in a single step by calling `legacy_code` with the character vector `'generate_for_sim'`. The function also generates a TLC file for accelerated simulations, if the `Options.useTlcWithAccel` field of the Legacy Code Tool data structure is set to 1.

Once you have generated a dynamically loadable executable, you or others can use it in a model by adding an S-Function block that specifies the compiled S-function.

## Generating a Masked S-Function Block for Calling a Generated S-Function

You have the option of using the Legacy Code Tool to generate a masked S-function block (graphical representation) that is configured to call a generated C MEX S-function. To generate such a block, call `legacy_code` with `'slblock_generate'` as the first argument and the name of the Legacy Code Tool data structure as the second argument.

```
legacy_code('slblock_generate', lct_spec);
```

The tool masks the block such that it displays the value of the `OutputFcnSpec` field. You can then add the block to a model manually.

If you prefer that the Legacy Code Tool add the block to a model automatically, specify the name of the model as a third argument. For example:

```
legacy_code('slblock_generate', lct_spec, 'myModel');
```

If the specified model (for example, `myModel`) exists, `legacy_code` opens the model and adds the masked S-function block described by the Legacy Code Tool data structure. If the model does not exist, the function creates a new model with the specified name and adds the masked S-function block.

## Forcing Simulink Accelerator Mode to Use S-Function TLC Inlining Code

If you are using Simulink Accelerator mode, you can generate and force the use of TLC inlining code for the S-function generated by the Legacy Code Tool. To do this:

- 1 Generate a TLC block file for the S-function by calling the `legacy_code` function with `'sfcn_tlc_generate'` as the first argument and the name of the Legacy Code Tool data structure as the second argument.

```
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', lct_spec);
```

Consider the example in “Integrate C Functions into Simulink Models with Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-35. To generate a TLC file for the model shown at the end of that example, enter the following command:

```
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', def);
```

- 2 Force Accelerator mode to use the TLC file by using the `ssSetOptions SimStruct` function to set the S-function option `SS_OPTION_USE_TLC_WITH_ACCELERATOR`.

## Calling Legacy C++ Functions

To call a legacy C++ function after initializing the Legacy Code Tool data structure, assign the value 'C++' to the `Options.language` field. For example,

```
def = legacy_code('initialize');
def.Options.language = 'C++';
```

To verify the new setting, enter

```
def.Options.language
```

---

**Note** The Legacy Code Tool can interface with C++ functions, but not C++ objects. For a work around, see “Legacy Code Tool Limitations” on page 4-50 in the Simulink documentation.

---

## Handling Multiple Registration Files

You can have multiple registration files in the same folder and generate an S-function for each file with a single call to `legacy_code`. Likewise, you can use a single call to `legacy_code` in order to compile and link the S-functions and another to generate corresponding TLC block files, if appropriate.

Consider the following example, where `lct_register_1`, `lct_register_2`, and `lct_register_3` each create and initialize fields of a Legacy Code Tool structure.

```
defs1 = lct_register_1;
defs2 = lct_register_2;
defs3 = lct_register_3;
defs = [defs1(:);defs2(:);defs3(:)];
```

You can then use the following sequence of calls to `legacy_code` in order to generate files based on the three registration files:

```
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', defs);  
legacy_code('compile', defs);  
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', defs);
```

Alternatively, you can process each registration file separately. For example:

```
defs1 = lct_register1;  
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', defs1);  
legacy_code('compile', defs1);  
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', defs1);  
. . .  
defs2 = lct_register2;  
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', defs2);  
legacy_code('compile', defs2);  
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', defs2);  
. . .  
defs3 = lct_register3;  
legacy_code('sfcn_cmex_generate', defs3);  
legacy_code('compile', defs3);  
legacy_code('sfcn_tlc_generate', defs3);
```

## Deploying Generated S-Functions

You can deploy the S-functions that you generate with the Legacy Code Tool for use by others. To deploy an S-function for simulation use only, you need to share only the compiled dynamically loadable executable.

## Legacy Code Tool Examples

For examples of the Legacy Code Tool, see “Implement Algorithms Using Legacy Code Tool”.

## Legacy Code Tool Limitations

Legacy Code Tool

- Generates C MEX S-functions for existing functions written in C or C++. The tool does not support transformation of MATLAB or Fortran functions.
- Can interface with C++ functions, but not C++ objects. One way of working around this limitation is to use the S-Function Builder to generate the shell of an S-function and then call the legacy C++ code from the S-function's `mdlOutputs` callback function.
- Does not support simulating continuous or discrete states. This prevents you from using the `mdlUpdate` and `mdlDerivatives` callback functions. If your application requires this support, see “Using the S-Function Builder to Incorporate Legacy Code” on page 2-9.
- Always sets the S-functions flag for direct feedthrough on page 1-7 (`sizes.DirFeedthrough`) to `true`. Due to this setting and the preceding limitation, the generated S-function cannot break algebraic loops.
- Supports only the continuous, but fixed in minor time step, sample time and offset on page 1-8 option.



- Supports complex numbers, but only with Simulink built-in data types.
- Does not support use of function pointers as the output of the legacy function being called.
- Does not support the following S-function features:
  - Work vectors, other than general DWork vectors
  - Frame-based input and output signals
  - Port-based sample times
  - Multiple block-based sample times
- Does not support use of the scope (::) operator for access of C++ class data and methods. For static methods, you can write simple preprocessor macros, similar to the following, to work around this:  

```
#define CCommon_computeVectorDotProduct CCommon::computeVectorDotProduct
```
- Can generate a terminate function when you have not specified one if the function specification includes a Simulink data type that has the property `HeaderFile`. For an export function model, this terminate function can make the generated S-function incompatible with code generation.

## Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions

In this section...
“Process View” on page 4-52
“Data View” on page 4-57

You can examine how the Simulink engine interacts with S-functions from two perspectives:

- **Process perspective**, i.e., at which points in a simulation the engine invokes the S-function.
- **Data perspective**, i.e., how the engine and the S-function exchange information during a simulation.

### Process View

The following figures show the order in which the Simulink engine invokes the callback methods in an S-function. Solid rectangles indicate callbacks that always occur during model initialization or at every time step. Dotted rectangles indicate callbacks that may occur during initialization and/or at some or all time steps during the simulation loop. See the documentation for each callback method to determine the exact circumstances under which the engine invokes the callback.

---

**Note** The process view diagram represents the execution of S-functions that contain continuous and discrete states, enable zero-crossing detection, and reside in a model that uses a variable-step solver. Different solvers omit certain steps in the diagram. For a better understanding of how the Simulink engine executes your particular S-function, run the model containing the S-function using the Simulink debugger.

---

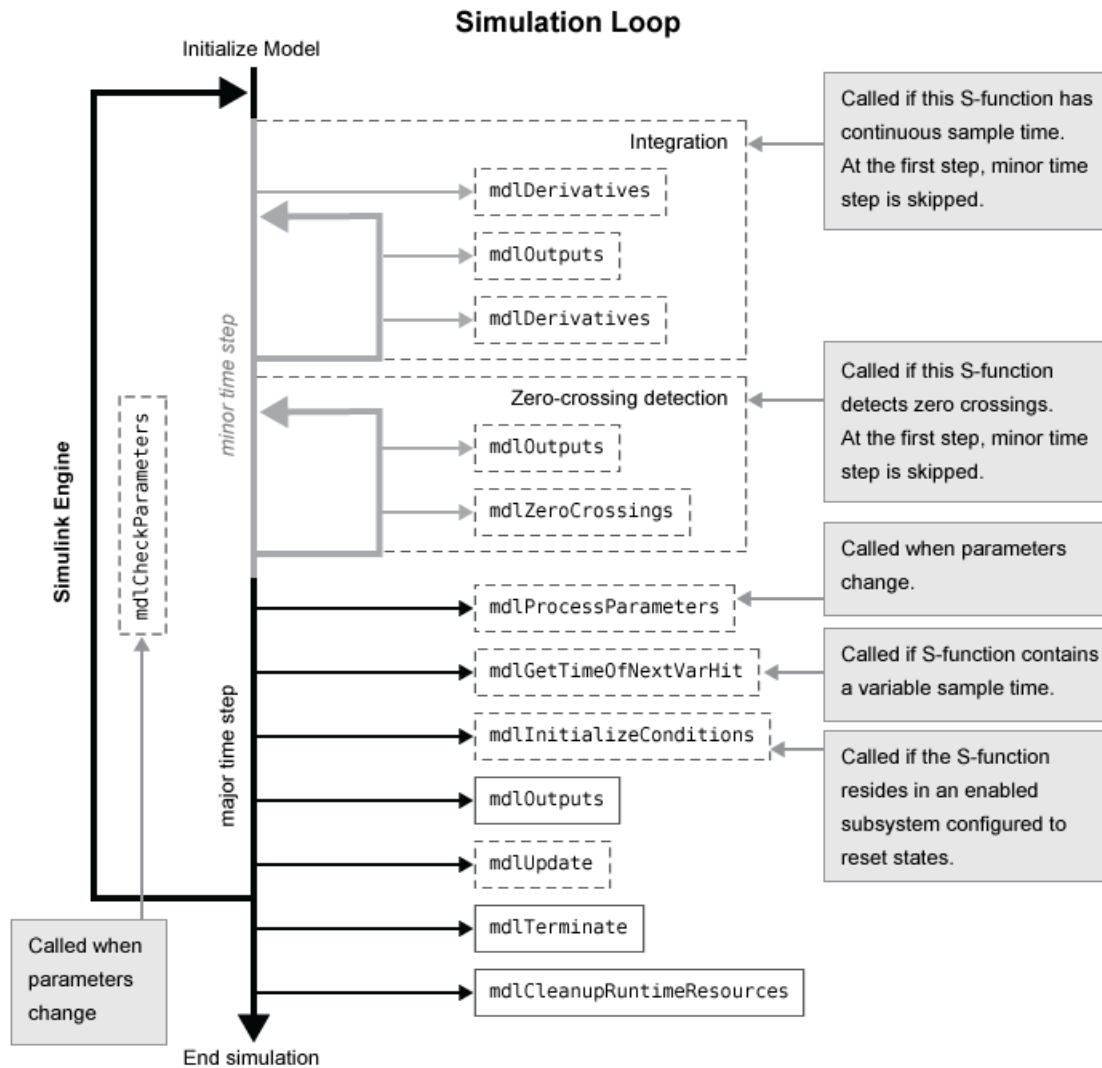
In the following model initialization loop, the Simulink engine configures the S-function for an upcoming simulation. The engine always makes the required calls to `mdlInitializeSizes` and `mdlInitializeSampleTime` to set up the fundamental attributes of the S-function, including input and output ports, S-function dialog parameters, work vectors, sample times, etc.

The engine calls additional methods, as needed, to complete the S-function initialization. For example, if the S-function uses work vectors, the engine calls `mdlSetWorkWidths`. Also, if the `mdlInitializeSizes` method deferred setting up input and output port attributes, the engine calls any methods necessary to complete the port initialization, such as `mdlSetInputPortWidth`, during signal propagation. The `mdlStart` method calls the `mdlCheckParameters` and `mdlProcessParameters` methods if the S-function uses dialog parameters.



**Note** The `mdlInitializeSizes` callback method also runs when you enter the name of a compiled S-function into the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box.

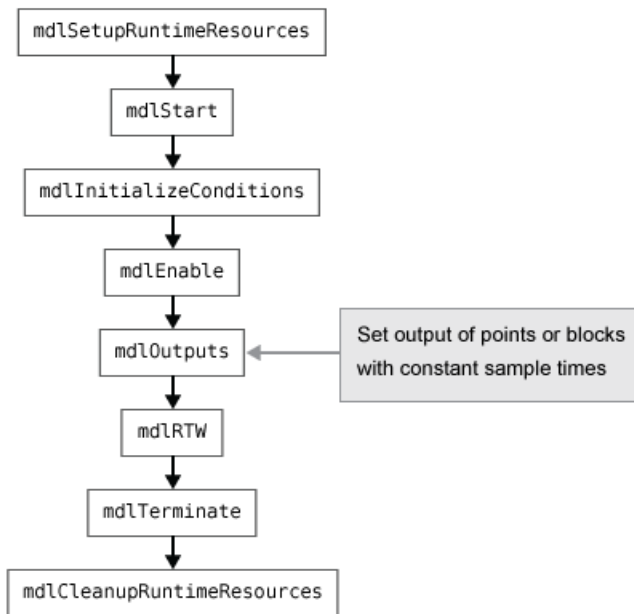
After initialization, the Simulink engine executes the following simulation loop. If the simulation loop is interrupted, either manually or when an error occurs, the engine jumps directly to the `mdlTerminate` method. If the simulation was manually halted, the engine first completes the current time step before invoking `mdlTerminate`.



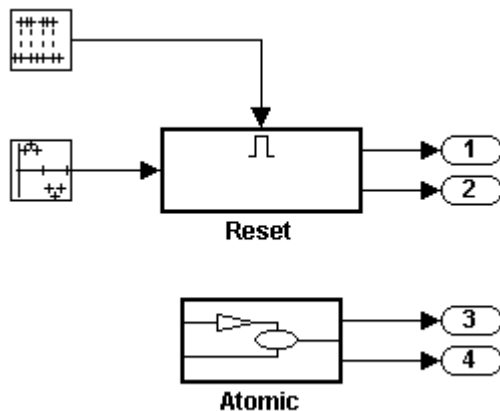
If your model contains multiple S-Function blocks at a given level of model hierarchy, the engine invokes a particular method for every S-function before proceeding to the next method. For example, the engine calls all the `mdlInitializeSizes` methods before calling any `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` methods. The engine uses the block sorted order to determine the order to execute the S-functions. To learn more about how the engine determines the block execution order, see “Control and Display Execution Order”.

### Calling Structure for Code Generation

If you use the Simulink Coder product to generate code for a model containing S-functions, the Simulink engine does not execute the entire calling sequence outlined above. Initialization proceeds as outlined above until the engine reaches the `mdlStart` method. The engine then calls the S-function methods shown in the following figure, where the `mdlRTW` method is unique to the Simulink Coder product.



If the S-function resides in a conditionally executed subsystem, it is possible for the generated code to interleave calls to `mdlInitializeConditions` and `mdlStart`. Consider the following Simulink model.



The model contains two nonvirtual subsystems, the conditionally executed enabled subsystem named `Reset` and the atomic subsystem named `Atomic`. Each subsystem contains an S-Function block that calls the S-function `dsfunc.c`, which models a discrete state-space system with two states. The enabled subsystem `Reset` resets the state values when the subsystem is enabled, and the output values when the subsystem is disabled.

Using the generic real-time (GRT) target, the generated code for the model-wide `Start` function calls the `Start` functions of the two subsystems before calling the model-wide `MdlInitialize` function, as shown in the following code:

```
void MdlStart(void)
{
    /* snip */

    /* Start for enabled SubSystem: '<Root>/Reset' */
    sfcndemo_enablesub_Reset_Start();

    /* end of Start for SubSystem: '<Root>/Reset' */

    /* Start for atomic SubSystem: '<Root>/Atomic' */
    sfcndemo_enablesub_Atomic_Start();

    /* end of Start for SubSystem: '<Root>/Atomic' */

    MdlInitialize();
}
```

The Start function for the enabled subsystem calls the subsystem's InitializeConditions function:

```
void sfcndemo_enablesub_Reset_Start(void)
{
    sfcndemo_enablesub_Reset_Init();
    /* snip */
}
```

The MdlInitialize function, called in MdlStart, contains a call to the InitializeConditions function for the atomic subsystem:

```
void MdlInitialize(void)
{
    /* InitializeConditions for atomic SubSystem:
       '<Root>/Atomic' */

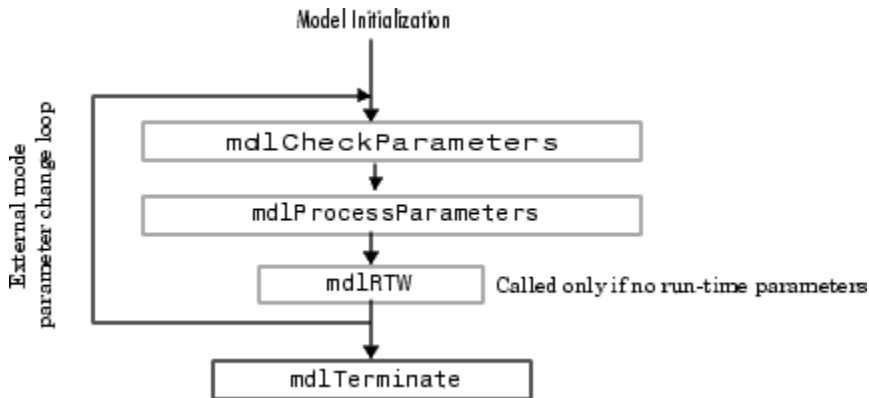
    sfcndemo_enablesub_Atomic_Init();
}
```

Therefore, the model-wide Start function interleaves calls to the Start and InitializeConditions functions for the two subsystems and the S-functions they contain.

For more information about the Simulink Coder product and how it interacts with S-functions, see “S-Functions and Code Generation” (Simulink Coder).

### **Alternate Calling Structure for External Mode**

When you are running a Simulink model in external mode, the calling sequence for S-function routines changes as shown in the following figure.



The engine calls `mdlRTW` once when it enters external mode and again each time a parameter changes or when you click **Update Model** on the **Modeling** tab.

---

**Note** See “External Mode Communication” (Simulink Coder) for the requirements for running in external mode.

---

## Data View

S-function blocks have input and output signals, parameters, and internal states, plus other general work areas. In general, block inputs and outputs are written to, and read from, a block I/O vector. Inputs can also come from

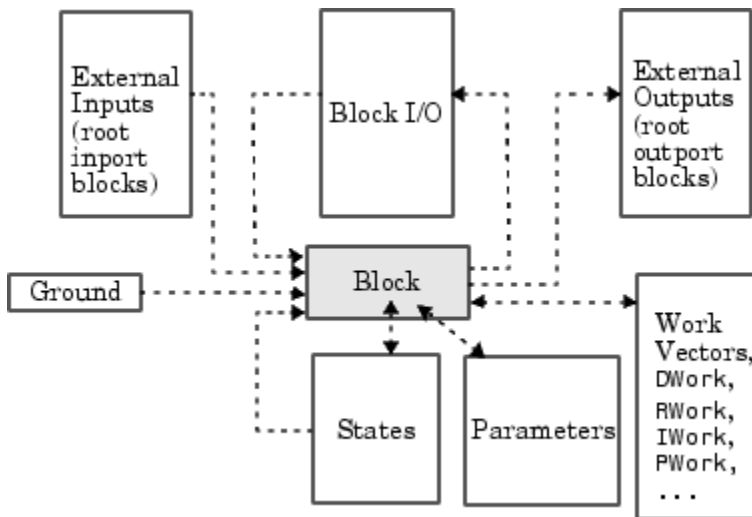
- External inputs via the root Inport blocks
- Ground if the input signal is unconnected or grounded

Block outputs can also go to the external outputs via the root Outport blocks. In addition to input and output signals, S-functions can have

- Continuous states
- Discrete states
- Other working areas such as real, integer, or pointer work vectors

You can parameterize S-function blocks by passing parameters to them using the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box.

The following figure shows the general mapping between these various types of data.



An S-function's `mdlInitializeSizes` routine sets the sizes of the various signals and vectors. S-function methods called during the simulation loop can determine the sizes and values of the signals.

An S-function method can access input signals in two ways:

- Via pointers
- Using contiguous inputs

### Accessing Signals Using Pointers

During the simulation loop, access the input signals using

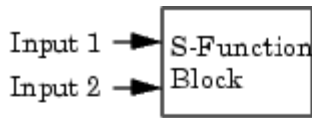
```
InputRealPtrsType uPtrs =
    ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S, portIndex)
```

This returns an array of pointers for the input port with index *portIndex*, where *portIndex* starts at 0. There is one array of pointers for each input port. To access an element of this array you must use

```
*uPtrs[element]
```

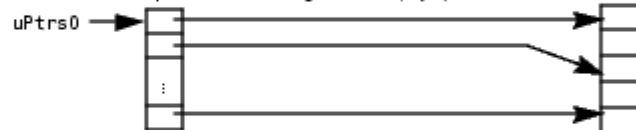
The following figure describes how to access the input signals of an S-function with two inputs.





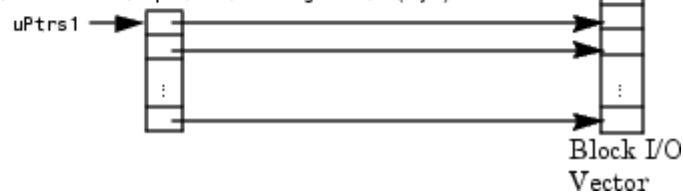
To access Input 1:

```
InputRealPtrsType uPtrs0 = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0)
```



To access Input 2:

```
InputRealPtrsType uPtrs1 = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,1)
```



As shown in the previous figure, the input array pointers can point at noncontiguous places in memory.

You can retrieve the output signal by using this code.

```
real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortSignal(S,outputPortIndex);
```

### Accessing Contiguous Input Signals

An S-function's `mdlInitializeSizes` method can specify that the elements of its input signals must occupy contiguous areas of memory, using `ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous`. If the inputs are contiguous, other methods can use `ssGetInputPortSignal` to access the inputs.

### Accessing Input Signals of Individual Ports

This section describes how to access all input signals of a particular port and write them to the output port. The preceding figure shows that the input array of pointers can point to noncontiguous entries in the block I/O vector. The output signals of a particular port form a contiguous vector. Therefore, the correct way to access input elements and write them to the output elements (assuming the input and output ports have equal widths) is to use this code.

```
int_T element;
int_T portWidth = ssGetInputPortWidth(S,inputPortIndex);
InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,inputPortIndex);
real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortSignal(S,outputPortIdx);

for (element=0; element<portWidth; element++) {
    y[element] = *uPtrs[element];
}
```

A common mistake is to try to access the input signals via pointer arithmetic. For example, if you were to place

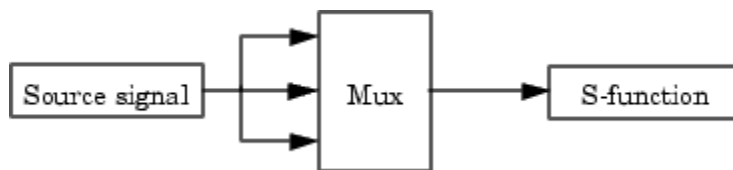
```
real_T *u = *uPtrs; /* Incorrect */
```

just below the initialization of `uPtrs` and replace the inner part of the above loop with

```
*y++ = *u++; /* Incorrect */
```

the code compiles, but the MEX file might crash the Simulink software. This is because it is possible to access invalid memory (which depends on how you build your model). When accessing the input signals incorrectly, a crash occurs when the signals entering your S-function block are not contiguous. Noncontiguous signal data occurs when signals pass through virtual connection blocks such as the Mux or Selector blocks.

To verify that your S-function correctly accesses wide input signals, pass a replicated signal to each input port of your S-function. To do this, create a Mux block with the number of input ports equal to the width of the desired signal entering your S-function. Then, connect the driving source to each S-function input port, as shown in the following figure. Finally, run your S-function using this input signal to verify that it does not crash and produces expected results.



### See Also

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

### More About

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4
- “S-Function Callback Methods” on page 1-14

## S-Functions in Normal Mode Referenced Models

---

**Note** For additional information, see “Model Reference Requirements and Limitations”.

---

When a C S-function appears in a referenced model that executes in Normal mode, successful execution is impossible if all of the following are true:

- The S-function has both an `mdlProcessParameters` function and an `mdlStart` function.
- The `mdlProcessParameters` function depends on the `mdlStart` function.
- The referenced model calls `mdlProcessParameters` before calling `mdlStart`.

Execution fails because `mdlProcessParameters` has dependency requirements that `mdlStart` has not satisfied. Automated analysis cannot guard against all possible causes of such failure: you must check your code manually and verify that `mdlProcessParameters` is not in any way dependent on `mdlStart` being called first. Examples of such dependency include:

- Allocating memory in `mdlStart` and using that memory in `mdlProcessParameters`. This is often done using `ssSetUserData` and `ssGetUserData`.
- Initializing any DWork or any global memory in `mdlStart` and reading the values in `mdlProcessParameters`.

To remind you to check for any such dependency problems, an error message appears by default for any S-function that is used in a Normal mode referenced model and contains both an `mdlProcessParameters` function and an `mdlStart` function. The error message does not mean that any dependency problems exist, but only that they might exist.

If you get such an error message, check for any problematic dependencies in the S-function, and recompile as needed to eliminate them. When no such dependencies exist, you can safely suppress the error message and use the S-function in a Normal mode referenced model. To certify that the S-function is compliant, and the message is therefore unnecessary, include the following statement in `mdlInitializeSizes`:

```
ssSetModelReferenceNormalModeSupport (S, MDL_START_AND_MDL_PROCESS_PARAMS_OK);
```

For information about referenced models, see “Model Reference Basics”.

### Supporting the Use of Multiple Instances of Referenced Models That Are in Normal Mode

You may need to modify S-functions that are used by a model so that the S-functions work with multiple instances of referenced models in Normal mode. The S-functions must indicate explicitly that they support multiple exec instances.

- For C S-functions, use `ssSupportsMultipleExecInstances(s, true)`.
- For MATLAB file S-functions, use `blockSupportMultipleExecInstances = true`.

The limitations for using S-functions with multiple instances of referenced models in Normal mode are the same as the limitations that apply to using S-functions with For Each Subsystem block.

## **See Also**

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function

## **More About**

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “S-Function Features and Limitations” on page 2-3
- “S-Function SimStruct Functions” on page 12-2

## Debug C MEX S-Functions

### In this section...

“About Debugging C MEX S-Functions” on page 4-63

“Debug in Simulink Environment” on page 4-63

“Debug Using Third-Party Software” on page 4-66

### About Debugging C MEX S-Functions

This section provides high-level tips on how to debug C MEX S-functions within the Simulink environment and using third-party software. The following lists highlight some of the more common errors made when writing an S-function. For a more detailed analysis, use the debugger provided with your C compiler.

The examples at the end of this section show how to debug a C MEX S-function during simulation, using third-party software.

- The first example uses the Microsoft Visual C++® .NET (version 7.0) environment.
- The second example debugs an S-function on The Open Group UNIX® platform.

Refer to your compiler documentation for further information on debugging files.

### Debug in Simulink Environment

Before you begin, make sure you have a good understanding of how to write C S-functions and the required callback methods. For assistance:

- Read the section “Available S-Function Implementations” on page 2-2 to determine if you implemented your S-function using the most appropriate method.
- Use the S-Function Builder block to generate simple S-functions and study the contents of the source files.
- Inspect the S-function example models available in *sfundemos*. The folder *matlabroot/simulink/src* (open) contains the S-function source files for these models.

If your S-function is not compiling, first ensure that the `mex` command is properly configured and your S-function includes all necessary files:

- Run `mex -setup` to ensure that your compiler is correctly installed.
- Confirm that you are passing all the source files needed by your S-function to the `mex` command.
- Check that these additional source files are on the MATLAB path.
- Make sure that your S-function includes the `simstruc.h` header file. If you are accessing legacy code, make sure that any header files needed by that code are also included in your S-function.
- Make sure that your S-function does not include the `simstruc_types.h` or `rtwtypes.h` header files. These Simulink and Simulink Coder header files are automatically included for you. If you are compiling your S-function as a MEX file for simulation, including the `rtwtypes.h` file results in errors.

If the `mex` command compiles your S-function, but your S-function does not simulate or the simulation produces incorrect results, inspect your S-function source code to ensure that:

- You are not overwriting important memory
- You are not using any uninitialized variables

The following table describes additional common S-function constructs that can lead to compilation and simulation errors.

Does your S-function...	Look for...
Use for loops to assign memory?	Instances where your S-function might inadvertently assign values outside of the array bounds.
Use global variables?	Locations in the code where the global variables can be corrupted. If you have multiple instances of your S-function in a model, they can write over the same memory location.
Allocate memory?	Memory your S-function does not deallocate. Always free memory that your S-function allocates, using the <code>malloc</code> and <code>free</code> commands to allocate and deallocate memory, respectively.
Have direct feedthrough?	<p>An incorrect direct feedthrough flag setting in your S-function. An S-function can access its inputs in the <code>mdlOutputs</code> method only if it specifies that the input ports have direct feedthrough. Accessing input signals in <code>mdlOutputs</code> when the input port direct feedthrough flag is set to <code>false</code> leads to indeterminate behavior. To check if you have a direct feedthrough flag incorrectly set, you can turn on the model property <code>TryForcingSFcnDF</code> using the command</p> <pre>set_param(model_name, 'TryForcingSFcnDF', 'on')</pre> <p>This command specifies that all S-functions in the model <i>model_name</i> have a direct feedthrough flag of <code>true</code> for all their input ports. After you turn on this property, if your simulation produces correct answers without causing an algebraic loop, one of your S-functions in the model potentially set an incorrect direct feedthrough flag. Consult the on direct feedthrough in <code>sfuntmpl_doc.c</code> for more information on diagnosing direct feedthrough errors.</p>

Does your S-function...	Look for...
Access input signals correctly?	<p>Instances in the code where your S-function uses incorrect macros to access input signals, for example when accessing a discontinuous signal. Discontinuous signals result when an S-function input port is fed by a Selector block that selects every other element of a vector signal. For discontinuous input signals, use the following commands:</p> <pre> // In mdlInitializeSizes ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous(S, 0, 0);  // In mdlOutputs, access the inputs using InputRealPtrsType uPtrs1 =     ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0); </pre> <p>For contiguous input signals, use the following commands:</p> <pre> // In mdlInitializeSizes ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous(S, 0, 1);  // In mdlOutputs, access the inputs using const real_T *u0 =     (const real_T*) ssGetInputPortSignal(S,0); </pre> <p>/* If ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous is 0, ssGetInputPortSignal returns an invalid pointer.*/</p>

## Debugging Techniques

You can use the following techniques for additional assistance with debugging your S-function.

- Compile the S-function in debug mode using the `-g` option for the `mex` command. This enables additional diagnostics features that are called only when you compile your S-function in debug mode.
- Place `ssPrintf` statements inside your callback methods to ensure that they are running and that they are executing in the order you expect. Also, use `ssPrintf` statements to print return values to the MATLAB command prompt to check if your code is producing the expected results.
- Type feature `memstats` at the MATLAB command prompt to query the memory usage.
- Use the MATLAB File & folder Comparisons tool, or other text differencing application, to look for textual changes in different versions of your S-function. This can help you locate changes that disabled an S-function that previously compiled and ran. See “Compare Files and Folders and Merge Files” for instructions on how to use the File & folder Comparisons tool.
- Use settings on the Configuration Parameters dialog box to check for memory problems.
  - Set the **Solver data inconsistency** diagnostic to warning.
  - Set the **Array bounds exceeded** diagnostic to warning or error (See “Checking Array Bounds” on page 9-46 for more information on how to use this diagnostic).
  - Turn the Signal storage reuse (Simulink Coder) optimization off.
- Separate the S-function's algorithm from its Simulink interface then use the S-Function Builder to generate a new Simulink interface for the algorithm. The S-Function Builder ensures that the interface is implemented in the most consistent method.

## Debug Using Third-Party Software

You can debug and profile the algorithm portion of your S-function using third-party software if you separate the algorithm from the S-function's Simulink interface. You cannot debug and profile the S-function's interface with the Simulink engine because the Simulink interface code does not ship with the product.

You can additionally use third-party software to debug an S-function during simulation, as shown in the following two examples. These examples use the Simulink model `sfcndemo_timestwo` and the C MEX S-function `timestwo.c`.

### Debugging C MEX S-Functions Using the Microsoft Visual C++ .NET Environment

Before beginning the example, save the files `sfcndemo_timestwo` and `timestwo.c` into your working folder.

- 1 Open the Simulink model `sfcndemo_timestwo`.
- 2 Create a version of the MEX file that you can debug by compiling the C file using the `mex` command with the `-g` option.

```
mex -g timestwo.c
```

The `-g` option creates the executable `timestwo.mexw64` with debugging symbols included. At this point, you may want to simulate the `sfcndemo_timestwo` model to ensure it runs properly.

- 3 Without exiting the MATLAB environment, start the Microsoft Development Environment.
- 4 From the Microsoft Development Environment menu bar, select **Tools > Debug Processes**.
- 5 In the **Processes** dialog box that opens, select the `MATLAB.exe` process in the **Available Processes** list and click **Attach**.
- 6 In the **Attach to Process** dialog box that opens, select **Native** in the list of program types and click **OK**. You should now be attached to the MATLAB process.
- 7 Click **Close** on the **Processes** dialog box.
- 8 Clear the MEX functions in MATLAB using the `clear` command.

```
clear mex
```
- 9 From the Microsoft Development Environment **File** menu, select **Open > File**. Select the `timestwo.c` source files from the file browser that opens.
- 10 Set a breakpoint on the desired line of code by right-clicking on the line and selecting **Insert Breakpoint** from the context menu. If you have not previously run the model, the breakpoint may show up with a question mark, indicating that the executable is not loaded. Subsequently running the model loads the `.mexw32` file and removes the question mark from the breakpoint.
- 11 Start the simulation from the `sfcndemo_timestwo` Simulink model. You should be running the S-function in the Microsoft Development Environment and can debug the file within that environment.

### Debugging C MEX S-Functions on The Open Group UNIX Platforms

Before beginning the example, save the files `sfcndemo_timestwo` and `timestwo.c` into your working folder.

Create a version of the MEX file for debugging:



- 1 Open the Simulink model `sfcn_demo_timestwo`.
- 2 Create a version of the MEX file that you can debug by compiling the C file using the `mex` command with the `-g` option:

```
mex -g timestwo.c
```

The `-g` option creates the executable `timestwo.mexa64` with debugging symbols included.

- 3 Simulate the `sfcn_demo_timestwo` model to ensure it runs properly.
- 4 Exit the MATLAB environment.

Debug the MEX file:

- 1 Start the MATLAB environment in debugging mode using this command:

```
matlab -D<nameOfDebugger>
```

The `-D` flag starts the MATLAB environment within the specified debugger. For example, to use the `gdb` debugging tool on the Linux® platform, enter this command.

```
matlab -Dgdb
```

- 2 Once the debugger has loaded, continue loading the MATLAB environment by typing `run` at the debugger prompt (`gdb`).

```
run -nodesktop
```

```
Starting program: matlab
```

```
...
```

---

**Note** The debugger might stop on spurious segmentation violation signals that result from interactions with the underlying Java® Virtual Machine (JVM™). You can ignore these messages and continue, using the `cont` command. If you are not debugging segmentation violation signals and want to suppress these messages, enter the command `handle SIGSEGV nostop noprint pass`.

---

- 3 Open the `sfcn_demo_timestwo` Simulink model.
- 4 Press **Ctrl+C** to open the debugger.
- 5 At the (`gdb`) prompt, set breakpoints in the source code, for example:

```
break timestwo.c:37
```

```
Breakpoint 1 (timestwo.c:37) pending
(gdb)
```

- 6 At the (`gdb`) prompt, enter the `cont` command to continue.

```
cont
```

- 7 Use your debugger routines to debug the S-function. For more information, see the `gdb` documentation that is part of your operating system documentation.

## See Also

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function

## **More About**

- “Check S-Functions Using S-Function Analyzer APIs” on page 7-2

## Convert Level-1 C MEX S-Functions

### In this section...

“Guidelines for Converting Level-1 C MEX S-Functions to Level-2” on page 4-69

“Obsolete Macros” on page 4-71

### Guidelines for Converting Level-1 C MEX S-Functions to Level-2

Level-2 S-functions were introduced with Simulink version 2.2. Level-1 S-functions refer to S-functions that were written to work with Simulink version 2.1 and previous releases. Level-1 S-functions are compatible with Simulink version 2.2 and subsequent releases; you can use them in new models without making any code changes. However, to take advantage of new features in S-functions, Level-1 S-functions must be updated to Level-2 S-functions. Here are some guidelines:

- Start by looking at `simulink/src/sfunctmpl_doc.c`. This template S-function file concisely summarizes Level-2 S-functions.
- At the top of your S-function file, add this define:

```
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2
```

- Update the contents of `mdlInitializeSizes`. In particular, add the following error handling for the number of S-function parameters:

```
ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS); /*Number of expected parameters*/
if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
    /* Return if number of expected != number of actual parameters */
    return;
}
Set up the inputs using:
if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return; /*Number of input ports */
ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, width);      /* Width of input
                                         port one (index 0)*/
ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1); /* Direct feedthrough
                                         or port one */
ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous(S, 0);
Set up the outputs using:
if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, width);     /* Width of output port
                                         one (index 0) */
```

- If your S-function has a nonempty `mdlInitializeConditions`, update it to the following form:

```
#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
}
}
```

Otherwise, delete the function.

- Access the continuous states using `ssGetContStates`. The `ssGetX` macro has been removed.
- Access the discrete states using `ssGetRealDiscStates(S)`. The `ssGetX` macro has been removed.
- For mixed continuous and discrete state S-functions, the state vector no longer consists of the continuous states followed by the discrete states. The states are saved in separate vectors and hence might not be contiguous in memory.
- The `mdlOutputs` prototype has changed from

```
static void mdlOutputs( real_T *y, const real_T *x,
                      const real_T *u, SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
```

to

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
```

Since *y*, *x*, and *u* are not explicitly passed in to Level-2 S-functions, you must use

- `ssGetInputPortSignal` to access inputs
- `ssGetOutputPortSignal` to access the outputs
- `ssGetContStates` or `ssGetRealDiscStates` to access the states
- The `mdlUpdate` function prototype has changed from

```
void mdlUpdate(real_T *x, real_T *u, Simstruct *S, int_T tid)
```

to

```
void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
```

- If your S-function has a nonempty `mdlUpdate`, update it to this form:

```
#define MDL_UPDATE
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
}
```

Otherwise, delete the function.

- If your S-function has a nonempty `mdlDerivatives`, update it to this form:

```
#define MDL_DERIVATIVES
static void mdlDerivatives(SimStruct *S)
{
}
```

Otherwise, delete the function.

- Replace all obsolete `SimStruct` macros. See “Obsolete Macros” on page 4-71 for a complete list of obsolete macros.
- When converting Level-1 S-functions to Level-2 S-functions, you should build your S-functions with full (i.e., highest) warning levels. For example, if you have `gcc` on a UNIX<sup>1</sup> system, use these options with the `mex` utility.

```
mex CC=gcc CFLAGS=-Wall sfcn.c
```

If your system has Lint, use this code.

```
lint -DMATLAB_MEX_FILE -I<matlabroot>/simulink/include
    -Imatlabroot/extern/include sfcn.c
```

On a PC, to use the highest warning levels, you must create a project file inside the integrated development environment (IDE) for the compiler you are using. Within the project file, define `MATLAB_MEX_FILE` and add

```
matlabroot/simulink/include
matlabroot/extern/include
```

<sup>1</sup> UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

to the path (be sure to build with alignment set to 8).

## Obsolete Macros

The following macros are obsolete. Replace each obsolete macro with the macro specified in the following table.

Obsolete Macro	Replace with
<code>ssGetU(S)</code> , <code>ssGetUPtrs(S)</code>	<code>ssGetInputPortSignalPtrs(S, port)</code> , <code>ssGetInputPortSignal(S, port)</code>
<code>ssGetY(S)</code>	<code>ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S, port)</code>
<code>ssGetX(S)</code>	<code>ssGetContStates(S)</code> , <code>ssGetRealDiscStates(S)</code>
<code>ssGetStatus(S)</code>	Normally not used, but <code>ssGetErrorStatus(S)</code> is available.
<code>ssSetStatus(S, msg)</code>	<code>ssSetErrorStatus(S, msg)</code>
<code>ssGetSizes(S)</code>	Specific call for the wanted item (i.e., <code>ssGetNumContStates(S)</code> )
<code>ssGetMinStepSize(S)</code>	No longer supported
<code>ssGetPresentTimeEvent(S, sti)</code>	<code>ssGetTaskTime(S, sti)</code>
<code>ssGetSampleTimeEvent(S, sti)</code>	<code>ssGetSampleTime(S, sti)</code>
<code>ssSetSampleTimeEvent(S, t)</code>	<code>ssSetSampleTime(S, sti, t)</code>
<code>ssGetOffsetTimeEvent(S, sti)</code>	<code>ssGetOffsetTime(S, sti)</code>
<code>ssSetOffsetTimeEvent(S, sti, t)</code>	<code>ssSetOffsetTime(S, sti, t)</code>
<code>ssIsSampleHitEvent(S, sti, tid)</code>	<code>ssIsSampleHit(S, sti, tid)</code>
<code>ssGetNumInputArgs(S)</code>	<code>ssGetNumSFcnParams(S)</code>
<code>ssSetNumInputArgs(S, numInputArgs)</code>	<code>ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, numInputArgs)</code>
<code>ssGetNumArgs(S)</code>	<code>ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)</code>
<code>ssGetArg(S, argNum)</code>	<code>ssGetSFcnParam(S, argNum)</code>
<code>ssGetNumInputs</code>	<code>ssGetNumInputPorts(S)</code> and <code>ssGetInputPortWidth(S, port)</code>
<code>ssSetNumInputs</code>	<code>ssSetNumInputPorts(S, nInputPorts)</code> and <code>ssSetInputPortWidth(S, port, val)</code>
<code>ssGetNumOutputs</code>	<code>ssGetNumOutputPorts(S)</code> and <code>ssGetOutputPortWidth(S, port)</code>
<code>ssSetNumOutputs</code>	<code>ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, nOutputPorts)</code> and <code>ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, port, val)</code>

## See Also

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function

## More About

- “Create a Basic C MEX S-Function” on page 4-2



# Creating C++ S-Functions

---

The procedure for creating C++ S-functions is nearly the same as that for creating C S-functions. The following sections explain the differences.

- “Create C++ Source File” on page 5-2
- “Make C++ Objects Persistent” on page 5-3
- “Build C++ S-Functions” on page 5-4

## Create C++ Source File

To create a C++ S-function from a C S-function, see “C++ References” on page 5-2.

In addition, set up the MEX function to use a C++ compiler (see “Build C MEX Function”). To build the C++ S-function, see “Build C++ S-Functions” on page 5-4.

### C++ References

- [1] Meyers, S., *More Effective C++*, Boston, Addison-Wesley, 1996, Item 34
- [2] Oualline, S., *Practical C++ Programming*, Sebastopol, California, O'Reilly, 1995, Chapter 27
- [3] Stroustrup, B., *The C++ Programming Language*, 3rd Ed., Boston, Addison-Wesley, 1997, Appendix B



## Make C++ Objects Persistent

Your C++ callback methods might need to create persistent C++ objects, that is, objects that continue to exist after the method exits. For example, a callback method might need to access an object created during a previous invocation. Or one callback method might need to access an object created by another callback method. To create persistent C++ objects in your S-function:

- 1 Create a pointer work vector to hold pointers to the persistent object between method invocations:

```
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ...
    ssSetNumPWork(S, 1); // reserve element in the pointers vector
                        // to store a C++ object
    ...
}
```

- 2 Store a pointer to each object that you want to be persistent in the pointer work vector:

```
static void mdlStart(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssGetPWork(S)[0] = (void *) new counter; // store new C++ object in the
                                           // pointers vector
}
```

- 3 Retrieve the pointer in any subsequent method invocation to access the object:

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    counter *c = (counter *) ssGetPWork(S)[0]; // retrieve C++ object from
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0); // the pointers vector and
    y[0] = c->output(); // use member functions of
                       // the object
}
```

- 4 Destroy the objects when the simulation terminates:

```
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    counter *c = (counter *) ssGetPWork(S)[0]; // retrieve and destroy C++
    delete c; // object in the termination
             // function
}
```

## Build C++ S-Functions

Use the `mex` command to build C++ S-functions exactly the way you use it to build C S-functions. For example, to build the C++ version of the `sfun_counter_cpp.cpp` file, enter

```
mex sfun_counter_cpp.cpp
```

at the MATLAB command prompt.

---

**Note** The extension of the source file for a C++ S-function must be `.cpp` to ensure that the compiler treats the contents of the file as C++ code.

---

# Creating Fortran S-Functions

---

- “Create Level-2 Fortran S-Functions” on page 6-2
- “Port Legacy Code” on page 6-9

## Create Level-2 Fortran S-Functions

### In this section...

“About Creating Level-2 Fortran S-Functions” on page 6-2

“Template File” on page 6-2

“C/Fortran Interfacing Tips” on page 6-2

“Constructing the Gateway” on page 6-5

“Example C MEX S-Function Calling Fortran Code” on page 6-7

### About Creating Level-2 Fortran S-Functions

To use the features of a Level-2 S-function with Fortran code, you must write a skeleton S-function in C that has code for interfacing to the Simulink software and also calls your Fortran code.

Using the C MEX S-function as a gateway is quite simple if you are writing the Fortran code from scratch. If instead you have legacy Fortran code that exists as a standalone simulation, there is some work to be done to identify parts of the code that need to be registered with the Simulink software, such as identifying continuous states if you are using variable-step solvers or getting rid of static variables if you want to have multiple copies of the S-function in a Simulink model (see “Port Legacy Code” on page 6-9).

### Template File

The file `sfuntmpl_gate_fortran.c` contains a template for creating a C MEX-file S-function that invokes a Fortran subroutine in its `mdlOutputs` method. It works with a simple Fortran subroutine if you modify the Fortran subroutine name in the code. The template allocates `DWork` vectors to store the data that communicates with the Fortran subroutine. See “How to Use `DWork` Vectors” on page 8-5 for information on setting up `DWork` vectors.

### C/Fortran Interfacing Tips

The following are some tips for creating the C-to-Fortran gateway S-function.

#### MEX Environment

`mex -setup` needs to find the MATLAB, C, and the Fortran compilers, but it can work with only one of these compilers at a time. If you change compilers, you must run `mex -setup` between other `mex` commands.

Test the installation and setup using sample MEX-files from the MATLAB, C, and Fortran MEX examples in the folder `matlabroot/extern/examples/mex` (open), as well as S-function examples.

If using a C compiler on a Microsoft Windows platform, test the `mex` setup using the following commands and the example C source code file, `yprime.c`, in `matlabroot/extern/examples/mex`. Create a working directory for your example and go to that directory in MATLAB using the `cd` command.

Then, use the following code:

```
copyfile(fullfile(matlabroot,'extern','examples','mex'),'mex')
cd mex
mex yprime.c
```

If using a Fortran compiler, test the mex setup using the following commands and the example Fortran source code files, `yprime.f` and `yprimefg.f`, in `matlabroot/extern/examples/mex`. You can use the same directory. Then, use the following code.

```
cd mex
mex yprime.f yprimefg.f
```

For more information, see “Build C MEX Function”.

### Compiler Compatibility

Your C and Fortran compilers need to use the same object format. If you use the compilers explicitly supported by the mex command this is not a problem. When you use the C gateway to Fortran, it is possible to use Fortran compilers not supported by the mex command, but only if the object file format is compatible with the C compiler format. Common object formats include ELF, PE, and Mach-O.

The compiler must also be configurable so that the caller cleans up the stack instead of the callee. Intel® Fortran Compiler has the default stack cleanup as the caller.

### Symbol Decorations

Symbol decorations can cause run-time errors. For example, `g77` decorates subroutine names with a trailing underscore when in its default configuration. You can either recognize this and adjust the C function prototype or alter the Fortran compiler's name decoration policy via command-line switches, if the compiler supports this. See the Fortran compiler manual about altering symbol decoration policies.

If all else fails, use utilities such as `od` (octal dump) to display the symbol names. For example, the command

```
od -s 2 <file>
```

lists character vectors and symbols in binary (`.obj`) files.

These binary utilities can be obtained for the Windows platform as well. Additional utilities can also be obtained free on the Web. `hexdump` is another common program for viewing binary files. As an example, here is the output of

```
od -s 2 sfun_atmos_for.o
```

on a Linux platform.

```
0000115 E"
0000136 E"
0000271 E""
0000467 `E"@
0000530 `E"
0000575 E" E 5@
0001267 CfvC- :C
0001323 :|. -:8~#8 Kw6
0001353 ?333@
0001364 333
```

```
0001414 01.01
0001425 GCC: (GNU) egcs-2.91.66 19990314/
0001522 .symtab
0001532 .strtab
0001542 .shstrtab
0001554 .text
0001562 .rel.text
0001574 .data
0001602 .bss
0001607 .note
0001615 .comment
0003071 sfun_atmos_for.for
0003101 gcc2_compiled.
0003120 rearth.0
0003131 gmr.1
0003137 htab.2
0003146 ttab.3
0003155 ptab.4
0003164 gtab.5
0003173 atmos_
0003207 exp
0003213 pow_d
```

Note that Atmos has been changed to `atmos_`, which the C program must call to be successful.

With Intel Fortran Compiler on Windows machines, the symbol is suppressed, so that Atmos becomes ATMOS (no underscore).

### Fortran Math Library

Fortran math library symbols might not match C math library symbols. For example,  $A^B$  in Fortran calls library function `pow_dd`, which is not in the C math library. In these cases, you must tell `mex` to link in the Fortran math library. For gcc environments, these routines are usually found in `/usr/local/lib/libf2c.a`, `/usr/lib/libf2c.a`, or equivalent.

The `mex` command becomes

```
mex -L/usr/local/lib -lf2c cmex_c_file fortran_object_file
```

---

**Note** On a UNIX system, the `-lf2c` option follows the conventional UNIX library linking syntax, where `-l` is the library option itself and `f2c` is the unique part of the library file's name, `libf2c.a`. Be sure to use the `-L` option for the library search path, because `-I` is only followed while searching for include files.

---

The `f2c` package can be obtained for the Windows and UNIX environments from the Internet. The file `libf2c.a` is usually part of `g77` distributions, or else the file is not needed as the symbols match. In obscure cases, it must be installed separately, but even this is not difficult once the need for it is identified.

On 64-bit Windows machines, using Microsoft Visual C++ and Intel Parallel Studio XE 2020 for Fortran, this example can be compiled using the following two `mex` commands. Enter each command on one line. The `mex -setup C` and `mex -setup Fortran` commands configure the C and Fortran compilers and must be run before executing the second command. In the second command, replace the variable `IFORT_COMPILER20` with the name of the system's environment variable pointing to the Intel Fortran Compiler root folder on your system.

```
mex('-v', '-c', fullfile(matlabroot, 'toolbox', 'simulink', 'simdemos', 'simfeatures', 'srcFortran', 'sfun_atmos_sub.F'))

mex('-v', ['-L', fullfile(getenv('IFORT_COMPILER20'), 'compiler', 'lib', 'intel64_win'), ''],
fullfile(matlabroot, 'toolbox', 'simulink', 'simdemos', 'simfeatures', 'srcFortran', 'sfun_atmos.c'), 'sfun_atmos_sub.obj')
```

## CFortran

Or you can try using CFortran to create an interface. CFortran is a tool for automated interface generation between C and Fortran modules, in either direction. Search the Web for `cfortran` or visit

<http://www-zeus.desy.de/~burow/cfortran/>

for downloading.

## Choosing a Fortran Compiler

On a Windows machine, using Visual C++ with Fortran is best done with Intel Fortran Compiler.

For an up-to-date list of all the supported compilers, see the MathWorks supported and compatible compiler list at:

[https://www.mathworks.com/support/compilers/current\\_release/](https://www.mathworks.com/support/compilers/current_release/)

## Constructing the Gateway

The `mdlInitializeSizes` and `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` methods are coded in C. It is unlikely that you will need to call Fortran routines from these S-function methods. In the simplest case, the Fortran is called only from `mdlOutputs`.

### Simple Case

The Fortran code must at least be callable in one-step-at-a-time fashion. If the code doesn't have any states, it can be called from `mdlOutputs` and no `mdlDerivatives` or `mdlUpdate` method is required.

### Code with States

If the code has states, you must decide whether the Fortran code can support a variable-step solver or not. For fixed-step solver only support, the C gateway consists of a call to the Fortran code from `mdlUpdate`, and outputs are cached in an S-function `DWork` vector so that subsequent calls by the Simulink engine into `mdlOutputs` will work properly and the Fortran code won't be called until the next invocation of `mdlUpdate`. In this case, the states in the code can be stored however you like, typically in the work vector or as discrete states.

If instead the code needs to have continuous time states with support for variable-step solvers, the states must be registered and stored with the engine as doubles. You do this in `mdlInitializeSizes` (registering states), then the states are retrieved and sent to the Fortran code whenever you need to execute it. In addition, the main body of code has to be separable into a call form that can be used by `mdlDerivatives` to get derivatives for the state integration and also by the `mdlOutputs` and `mdlUpdate` methods as appropriate.

### Setup Code

If there is a lengthy setup calculation, it is best to make this part of the code separable from the one-step-at-a-time code and call it from `mdlStart`. This can either be a separate SUBROUTINE called from

mdlStart that communicates with the rest of the code through COMMON blocks or argument I/O, or it can be part of the same piece of Fortran code that is isolated by an IF-THEN-ELSE construct. This construct can be triggered by one of the input arguments that tells the code if it is to perform either the setup calculations or the one-step calculations.

### **SUBROUTINE Versus PROGRAM**

To be able to call Fortran from the Simulink software directly without having to launch processes, etc., you must convert a Fortran PROGRAM into a SUBROUTINE. This consists of three steps. The first is trivial; the second and third can take a bit of examination.

- 1 Change the line PROGRAM to SUBROUTINE subName.

Now you can call it from C using C function syntax.

- 2 Identify variables that need to be inputs and outputs and put them in the SUBROUTINE argument list or in a COMMON block.

It is customary to strip out all hard-coded cases and output dumps. In the Simulink environment, you want to convert inputs and outputs into block I/O.

- 3 If you are converting a standalone simulation to work inside the Simulink environment, identify the main loop of time integration and remove the loop and, if you want the Simulink engine to integrate continuous states, remove any time integration code. Leave time integrations in the code if you intend to make a discrete time (sampled) S-function.

### **Arguments to a SUBROUTINE**

Most Fortran compilers generate SUBROUTINE code that passes arguments by reference. This means that the C code calling the Fortran code must use only pointers in the argument list.

```
PROGRAM ...
```

becomes

```
SUBROUTINE somename( U, X, Y )
```

A SUBROUTINE never has a return value. You manage I/O by using some of the arguments for input, the rest for output.

### **Arguments to a FUNCTION**

A FUNCTION has a scalar return value passed by value, so a calling C program should expect this. The argument list is passed by reference (i.e., pointers) as in the SUBROUTINE.

If the result of a calculation is an array, then you should use a subroutine, as a FUNCTION cannot return an array.

### **Interfacing to COMMON Blocks**

While there are several ways for Fortran COMMON blocks to be visible to C code, it is often recommended to use an input/output argument list to a SUBROUTINE or FUNCTION. If the Fortran code has already been written and uses COMMON blocks, it is a simple matter to write a small SUBROUTINE that has an input/output argument list and copies data into and out of the COMMON block.



The procedure for copying in and out of the COMMON block begins with a write of the inputs to the COMMON block before calling the existing SUBROUTINE. The SUBROUTINE is called, then the output values are read out of the COMMON block and copied into the output variables just before returning.

## Example C MEX S-Function Calling Fortran Code

The S-function example `sfcn_demo_atmos` contains an example of a C MEX S-function calling a Fortran subroutine. The Fortran subroutine `Atmos` is in the file `sfun_atmos_sub.F`. This subroutine calculates the standard atmosphere up to 86 kilometers. The subroutine has four arguments.

```
SUBROUTINE Atmos(alt, sigma, delta, theta)
```

The gateway C MEX S-function, `sfun_atmos.c`, declares the Fortran subroutine.

```
/*
 * Windows uses upper case for Fortran external symbols
 */
#ifdef _WIN32
#define atmos_ ATMOS
#endif

extern void atmos_(float *alt,
                  float *sigma,
                  float *delta,
                  float *theta);
```

The `mdlOutputs` method calls the Fortran subroutine using pass-by-reference for the arguments.

```
/* call the Fortran routine using pass-by-reference */
atmos_(&falt, &fsigma, &fdelta, &ftheta);
```

To see this example working in the sample model `sfcn_demo_atmos`, enter the following command at the MATLAB command prompt.

```
sfcn_demo_atmos
```

## Building Gateway C MEX S-Functions on a Windows System

On 64-bit Windows systems using Microsoft Visual C++ and Intel Fortran Compiler, you need to use separate commands to compile the Fortran file and then link it to the C gateway file. Each command is on one line.

- 1 Create a working directory for your example and go to your directory using the `cd` command in MATLAB.
- 2 Run `mex -setup Fortran` to select a Fortran compiler.
- 3 Compile the Fortran file using the following command. Enter the command on one line.

```
mex('-v', '-c', fullfile(matlabroot, 'toolbox', 'simulink', 'simdemos', 'simfeatures', 'srcFortran', 'sfun_atmos_sub.F'))
```

- 4 Run `mex -setup C` to select a C compiler.
- 5 Link the compiled Fortran subroutine to the gateway C MEX S-function using the following command. The variable `IFORT_COMPILER20` is the name of the system's environment variable pointing to the Intel Parallel Studio XE 2020 root folder and may vary on your system.

```
mex('-v', ['-L', fullfile(getenv('IFORT_COMPILER20'), 'compiler', 'lib', 'intel64_win'), ''],
    fullfile(matlabroot, 'toolbox', 'simulink', 'simdemos', 'simfeatures', 'srcFortran', 'sfun_atmos.c'), 'sfun_atmos_sub.obj')
```

**Building Gateway C MEX S-Functions on a Linux System**

Build the gateway on a Linux system using the command

```
mex sfun_atmos.c sfun_atmos_sub.o
```

On some Linux systems where the C and Fortran compilers were installed separately (or are not aware of each other), you might need to reference the library `libf2c.a`. To do this, use the `-lf2c` flag.

If the `libf2c.a` library is not on the library path, you need to add the path to the `mex` process explicitly with the `-L` command. For example:

```
mex -L/usr/local/lib/ -lf2c sfun_atmos.c sfun_atmos_sub.o
```

## Port Legacy Code

### In this section...

“Find the States” on page 6-9

“Sample Times” on page 6-9

“Store Data” on page 6-9

“Use Flints if Needed” on page 6-10

“Considerations for Real Time” on page 6-10

### Find the States

If a variable-step solver is being used, it is critical that all continuous states are identified in the code and put into the C S-function state vector for integration instead of being integrated by the Fortran code. Likewise, all derivative calculations must be made available separately to be called from the `mdlDerivatives` method in the C S-function. Without these steps, any Fortran code with continuous states will not be compatible with variable-step solvers if the S-function is registered as a continuous block with continuous states.

Telltale signs of implicit advancement are incremented variables such as  $M=M+1$  or  $X=X+0.05$ . If the code has many of these constructs and you determine that it is impractical to recode the source so as not to “ratchet forward,” you might need to try another approach using fixed-step solvers.

If it is impractical to find all the implicit states and to separate out the derivative calculations for the Simulink engine, another approach can be used, but you are limited to using fixed-step solvers. The technique here is to call the Fortran code from the `mdlUpdate` method so the Fortran code is only executed once per major simulation integration step. Any block outputs must be cached in a work vector so that `mdlOutputs` can be called as often as needed and output the values from the work vector instead of calling the Fortran routine again (causing it to inadvertently advance time). See `sfuntmpl_gate_fortran.c` for an example that uses `DWork` vectors. See “How to Use `DWork` Vectors” on page 8-5 for details on allocating data-typed work vectors.

### Sample Times

If the Fortran code has an implicit step size in its algorithm, coefficients, etc., ensure that you register the proper discrete sample time in the C S-function `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` method and only change the block's output values from the `mdlUpdate` method.

### Store Data

If you plan to have multiple copies of this S-function used in one Simulink model, you need to allocate storage for each copy of the S-function in the model. The recommended approach is to use `DWork` vectors (see “`DWork` Vector Basics” on page 8-2).

If you plan to have only one copy of the S-function in the model, `DWork` vectors still provide the most advanced method for storing data. However, another alternative is to allocate a block of memory using the `malloc` command and store the pointer to that memory in a `PWork` vector (see “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15). In this case, you must remember to deallocate the memory using the `free` command in the S-function `mdlTerminate` method.

## Use Flints if Needed

Use flints (floating-point ints) to keep track of time. Flints (for IEEE-754 floating-point numerics) have the useful property of not accumulating roundoff error when adding and subtracting flints. Using flint variables in `DOUBLE PRECISION` storage (with integer values) avoids roundoff error accumulation that would accumulate when floating-point numbers are added together thousands of times.

```
DOUBLE PRECISION F
  :
  :
F = F + 1.0
TIME = 0.003 * F
```

This technique avoids a common pitfall in simulations.

## Considerations for Real Time

Since very few Fortran applications are used in a real-time environment, it is common to come across simulation code that is incompatible with a real-time environment. Common failures include unbounded (or large) iterations and sporadic but time-intensive side calculations. You must deal with these directly if you expect to run in real time.

Conversely, it is still perfectly good practice to have iterative or sporadic calculations if the generated code is not being used for a real-time application.

# Run S-Function Analyzer

---

- “Check S-Functions Using S-Function Analyzer APIs” on page 7-2
- “Troubleshoot S-Function Checks” on page 7-12

## Check S-Functions Using S-Function Analyzer APIs

Use the S-function analyzer APIs to run quality checks on C-MEX S-functions in a model or library. These checks identify potential problems and improvements and suggest solutions. In this tutorial, you see how to:

- Find the S-functions in a model
- Specify the build information for S-functions
- Specify the options and run the S-function analyzer
- See and interpret the results

### Prerequisites

To complete the tutorial, you need the following products:

- MATLAB
- Simulink
- Polyspace® (optional)
- C compiler - For most platforms, a default C compiler is supplied with the MATLAB installation. For a list of supported compilers, see “Change Default Compiler”. You can also change the default compiler using `mex -setup` command.

### Setup the Working Environment to Check S-Function Using S-Function Analyzer

This example opens up a directory containing the files required for this topic.

Create a local working folder, for example `C:\sfa`. Open this example to access the following files.

- 1 `ex_slxSfunctionCheckExample.slx`
- 2 `external.c`
- 3 `external.h`
- 4 `sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState.c`
- 5 `sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState_wrapper.c`
- 6 `sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous.c`
- 7 `sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous_wrapper.c`
- 8 `sfcnUseExternalSrc.c`
- 9 `slxBadSFcn.c`
- 10 `slxBadSFcn_wrapper.c`

## Run the S-Function Checks

Open a new script from the MATLAB Editor, and save it as `ex_slxSfunctionCheckScript.m`. To see the example model, double-click `ex_slxSfunctionCheckExample.slx` in **Current Folder** or type `ex_slxSfunctionCheckExample` at the MATLAB command line.

### Specify the Model

```
model = 'ex_slxSfunctionCheckExample'
```

### Find S-Functions in the Model (Optional)

Use `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.findSfunctions` method to see all the S-functions to be analyzed in the model. This method does not find S-functions in a referenced model.

```
sfunctions = Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.findSfunctions(model)
```

### Specify Build Information (Optional)

To specify the build information, such as S-function source code, external libraries, and header files, you can use `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo`. In this tutorial, because we have four S-functions in the model, there are four different `BuildInfo` objects. For more information, see `Simulink.sfunction.Analyzer` and `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo`.

```
bdInfo1= Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo('sfcnUseExternalSrc.c',...
        'ExtraSrcFileList',{'external.c'},...
        'SrcPaths',{pwd},'IncPaths',{pwd});
bdInfo2= Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo('sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState.c',...
        'ExtraSrcFileList',{'sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState_wra...
        'SrcPaths',{pwd});
bdInfo3= Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo('sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous.c',...
        'ExtraSrcFileList',{'sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous_wra...
        'SrcPaths',{pwd});
bdInfo4= Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo('slxBadSFcn.c',...
        'ExtraSrcFileList',{'slxBadSFcn_wrapper.c'},...
        'SrcPaths',{pwd});
```

### Specify Options (Optional)

You can configure the options for executing the S-function analyzer using `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options` class. You can enable Polyspace Code Prover™ check and parameter robustness check, set the maximum model simulation time, and set the report path. If you do not use the class to specify any of the options, the default options are applied to the analysis. See `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options` for more details.

---

**Note** Running Polyspace Code Prover and parameter robustness checks take some time.

---

Performing Polyspace Code Prover checks requires a Polyspace license. For more information on using Polyspace checks in the S-function analyzer, see “Enable Polyspace Checks” on page 7-9. For this tutorial, parameter robustness checks are turned on.

```
opts = Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options();
opts.EnableRobustness = 1;
```

## Run Checks and See Results

Run the S-function analyzer checks using `Simulink.sfunction.Analyzer.run`. Then use the `Simulink.sfunction.Analyzer.generateReport` to see the issues in your model or code.

```
sfunAnalyzer = Simulink.sfunction.Analyzer(model, 'BuildInfo', {bdInfo1, bdInfo2, bdInfo3, bdInfo4}, 'Platform', 'win64');
analysisResult=sfunAnalyzer.run();
sfunAnalyzer.generateReport();
```

When applied, the `generateReport` method produces a struct and an HTML report of the result of S-function analyzer checks.

```
analysisResult =
    struct with fields:
        TimeGenerated: '13-Jul-2017 13:22:37'
        Platform: 'win64'
        Release: '(R2017b)'
        SimulinkVersion: '9.0'
        ExemptedBlocks: {}
        MexConfiguration: [1x1 mex.CompilerConfiguration]
        Data: [4x4 struct]
```

### S-Function Check Report - [ex\\_slexSfunctionCheckExample](#)

Time Generated: 13-Jul-2017 16:04:17  
Release: (R2017b)  
MEX Compiler: mingw64

Platform: win64  
Simulink Version: 9.0

#### Check Summary

S-Function name	Environment Checks <sup>?</sup>	Source Code Checks <sup>?</sup>	S-Function MEX-file Checks <sup>?</sup>	Robustness Checks <sup>?</sup>
<a href="#">sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState</a>	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✘ Fail <a href="#">1</a>	✔ Pass
<a href="#">sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous</a>	✔ Pass	⚠ Warning <a href="#">1</a>	✘ Fail <a href="#">1</a>	✔ Pass
<a href="#">sfcnUseExternalSrc</a>	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass
<a href="#">slexBadSFcn</a>	✔ Pass	⚠ Warning <a href="#">1</a>	✘ Fail <a href="#">2</a>	✔ Pass

## Explore and Fix Problems

The example model has two warnings in Source Code Checks and four issues on S-function MEX-file checks. In general, warnings are not as significant as fails, but they are good sources to obtain further information about your S-functions.



**S-Function MEX-file Checks**

Description	Result	Detail
MinorStepModifyDiscreteStates?	Fail	S-function 'C:\sfa\sprj\_sfcncheck\sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState\sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState.mexw64' in block ' <a href="#">ex_slexSfunctionCheckExample/S-Function4</a> ' has modified its discrete state at minor step in mdlOutputs method at time '0.50383708566631'.

This issue has the description code MinorStepModifyDiscreteStates. This error description indicates that block's discrete states is modified at a minor step in mdlOutputs. To fix this issue, discrete states should only be modified at a major step guarded by ssIsMajorTimeStep.

Original Code	Modified Code
<pre>MinorStepDiscState_Outputs_wrapper(u0, y0, xC)     if (ssGetT(S)&gt;0.5) {         xD[0] = xD[0]+1;         xD[1] = xD[0]+xD[1]*2.0;     }</pre>	<pre>(ssGetT(S)&gt;0.5) {     if (ssIsMajorTimeStep(S)) {         xD[0] = xD[0]+1;         xD[1] = xD[0]+xD[1]*2.0;     } }</pre>

**S-Function:sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous**

**Source Code Checks**

Description	Result	Detail
MEX Compile Check?	Warning	<a href="#">C:\sfa\sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous.c</a> :208:19: warning: unused variable 'u0' [-Wunused-variable] const real_T *u0 = (const real_T*) ssGetInputPortSignal(S,0);

The MEX Compile Check description code indicates that there is an unused variable in the line indicated on the report. This warning is eliminated by deleting the line 208 and rerunning the code.

Original Code	Modified Code
<pre>static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid) {     const real_T *u0 = (const real_T*) ssGetInputPortSignal(S,0);     real_T *y0 = (real_T *)ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);     real_T *xC = ssGetContStates(S);      *y0 = *xC; }</pre>	<pre>static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid) {     (const real_T*) ssGetInputPortSignal(S,0);     real_T *y0 = (real_T *)ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);     real_T *xC = ssGetContStates(S);      *y0 = *xC; }</pre>

S-Function MEX-file Checks

Description	Result	Detail
MdlUpdateModifyContinuousStates?	Fail	S-function 'C:\sfa\srj\_sfcncheck\sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous\sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous.mexw64' in block ' <a href="#">ex_slexSfunctionCheckExample/S-Function1</a> ' has modified its continuous states in its mdlUpdate method. Continuous states should only be changed in a major time step and the S-function should request a solver reset using 'ssSetSolverNeedsReset' macro. Changing states without resetting the solver can lead to unexpected results.

The description code MdlUpdateModifyContinuousStates indicates that in the S-function source code (in this case, in the source code of block S-Function1), the continuous states are modified in its mdlUpdate method. You can only change the states of a block at a major time step using ssSetSolverNeedsReset macro.

Original Code	Modified Code
<pre>#define MDL_UPDATE static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int tid) {     real_T *xC = ssGetContStates(S);     *xC = *xC + 1.0; }</pre>	<pre>#define MDL_UPDATE static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int tid) {     real_T *xC = ssGetContStates(S);     // Modify continuous states     if (ssIsMajorTimeStep(S)) {         *xC = *xC + 1.0;         ssSetSolverNeedsReset(S);     } }</pre>

S-Function:slexBadSFcn

Source Code Checks

Description	Result	Detail
MEX Compile Check?	Warning	<p>C:\sfa\slexBadSFcn.c:109:28: warning: unused variable 'outputDimsInfo' [-Wunused-variable] DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(outputDimsInfo);</p> <p>C:\sfa\slexBadSFcn.c:108:28: warning: unused variable 'inputDimsInfo' [-Wunused-variable] DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(inputDimsInfo);</p>

The description code MEX Compile Check indicates that variables outputDimsInfo and inputDimsInfo are not used in the source code. You can fix this by commenting or deleting the lines that contain these variables.

Original Code	Modified Code
<pre>static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S) {     DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(inputDimsInfo); // DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(inputDimsInfo);     DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(outputDimsInfo); // DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(outputDimsInfo);     ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS);</pre>	<pre>static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S) {     ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS);</pre>

## S-Function MEX-file Checks

Description	Result	Detail
CombinedMdlOutputsMdlUpdateWithDiscreteState?	Fail	S-function 'C:\sfa\slprj\_sfcncheck\slexBadSFcn\slexBadSFcn.mexw64' in block ' <a href="#">ex_slexSfunctionCheckExample/S-Function3</a> ' has discrete states, but its mdlOutputs and mdlUpdate methods are combined. This may cause unexpected behaviors when the S-function is placed within an algebraic loop.

The description code `CombinedMdlOutputsMdlUpdateWithDiscreteState` indicates that the S-function has discrete states, and you need to use `MdlUpdate` and `MdlOutputs` methods in your code separately. As a solution for this description code, define a separate `mdlUpdate` to change states in your S-function.

```
#define MDL_UPDATE
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    /* update the discrete states here! */
    real_T *xD = ssGetDiscStates(S);
}
```

DeclareCanBeConditionalExecWithState?	Fail	S-function 'C:\sfa\slprj\_sfcncheck\slexBadSFcn\slexBadSFcn.mexw64' in block ' <a href="#">ex_slexSfunctionCheckExample/S-Function3</a> ' has state-like data or multiple sample times, but the S-function sets <code>SS_OPTION_CAN_BE_CALLED_CONDITIONALLY</code> option.
---------------------------------------	------	--

The description code `DeclareCanBeConditionalExecWithState` indicates that you have state-like data or if you are using multiple sample times in your model, you cannot use `SS_OPTION_CAN_BE_CALLED_CONDITIONALLY` option in your S-function source code.

To fix the issue in this particular example, delete the `ssSetOptions` function.

Original Code	Modified Code
<pre>static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S) {     DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(inputDimsInfo);     DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(outputDimsInfo);     ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS);     if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParams(S))         return; /* Parameter mismatch will be reported by Parameter */ }  ssSetNumContStates(S, NUM_CONT_STATES); ssSetNumDiscStates(S, NUM_DISC_STATES);  if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, NUM_INPUTS))     return; ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, INPUT_0_WIDTH); ssSetInputPortDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE); ssSetInputPortComplexSignal(S, 0, INPUT_0_COMPLEX); ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, INPUT_0_FEEDTHROUGH); ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous(S, 0, 1); /* This port is required contiguous */  if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, NUM_OUTPUTS))     return; ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, OUTPUT_0_WIDTH); ssSetOutputPortDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE); ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal(S, 0, OUTPUT_0_COMPLEX); ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1); ssSetNumRWork(S, 0); ssSetNumIWork(S, 0); ssSetNumPWork(S, 0); ssSetNumModes(S, 0); ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);  }  ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_CAN_BE_CALLED_CONDITIONALLY); }</pre>	<pre>static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S) {     DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(inputDimsInfo);     DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO(outputDimsInfo);     ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS);     if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParams(S))         return; /* Parameter mismatch will be reported by Parameter */ }  ssSetNumContStates(S, NUM_CONT_STATES); ssSetNumDiscStates(S, NUM_DISC_STATES);  if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, NUM_INPUTS)) return; ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, INPUT_0_WIDTH); ssSetInputPortDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE); ssSetInputPortComplexSignal(S, 0, INPUT_0_COMPLEX); ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, INPUT_0_FEEDTHROUGH); ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous(S, 0, 1); /* This port is required contiguous */  if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, NUM_OUTPUTS)) return; ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, OUTPUT_0_WIDTH); ssSetOutputPortDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE); ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal(S, 0, OUTPUT_0_COMPLEX); ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1); ssSetNumRWork(S, 0); ssSetNumIWork(S, 0); ssSetNumPWork(S, 0); ssSetNumModes(S, 0); ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);  }  ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_CAN_BE_CALLED_CONDITIONALLY); }</pre>

When you fix all issues in your model, the report shows green check marks for each group of checks.

### Check Summary

S-Function name	Environment Checks <sup>?</sup>	Source Code Checks <sup>?</sup>	S-Function MEX-file Checks <sup>?</sup>	Robustness Checks <sup>?</sup>
<a href="#">sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState</a>	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass
<a href="#">sfcnUpdateModifyContinuous</a>	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass
<a href="#">sfcnUseExternalSrc</a>	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass
<a href="#">slexBadSFcn</a>	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass	✔ Pass

## Enable Undocumented API Checks

You can check for the use of undocumented APIs in your S-function source code to avoid any incompatibilities in the future releases. To enable this check, in the `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options` object, set `EnableUsePublishedOnly` to 1. Alternatively, when building your MEX files, use `-DUSE_PUBLISHED_ONLY` option. For example, try building `sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState.c` with this option using:

```
mex sfcnModifyMinorStepDiscState.c -DUSE_PUBLISHED_ONLY
```

## Enable Polyspace Checks

S-function analyzer gives you the option to run Polyspace Code Prover checks on your code. To enable the check, in the `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options` object, set `EnablePolyspace` to 1. Polyspace Code Prover divides checks into red, green, orange, and gray checks. For more information on types of checks, see “Code Prover Result and Source Code Colors” (Polyspace Code Prover).

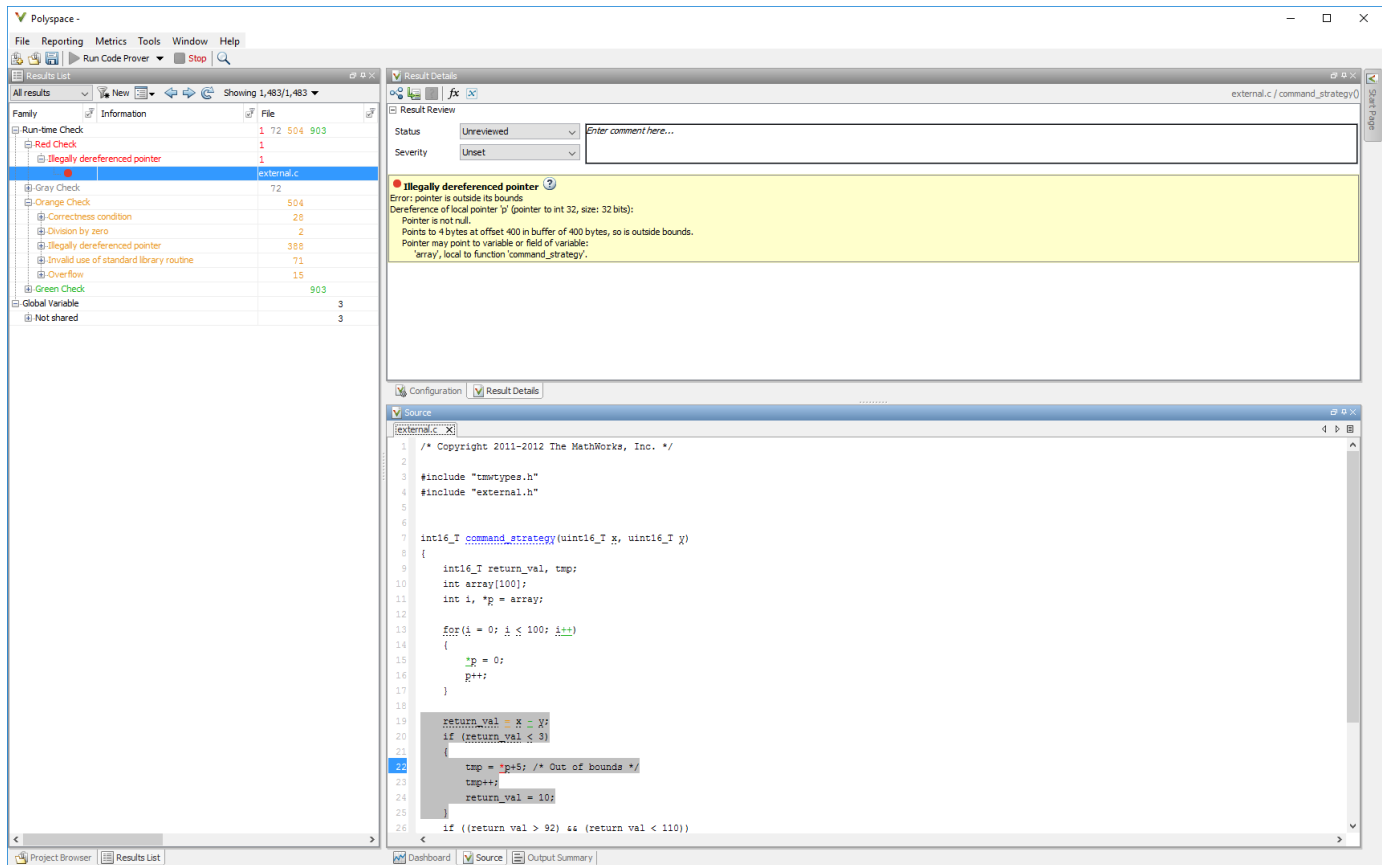
In the S-function analyzer, the most important error code is red. If the S-function source code fails execution in all paths, Polyspace Code Prover gives a red check error. For more information, see “Interpret Code Prover Results in Polyspace Desktop User Interface” (Polyspace Code Prover). Here is an example on how to troubleshoot the red check error.

### S-Function:sfcnUseExternalSrc

#### Source Code Checks

Description	Result	Detail					
		File	Proven	Green	Red	Gray	Orange
Polyspace Code Prover Check?	Fail	external.c	85.7%	5	1	0	1
		sfcnUseExternalSrc.c	62.8%	52	0	2	32
		<a href="C:\sfa\slprj\sfcncheck\sfcnUseExternalSrc\polyspace_result">C:\sfa\slprj\sfcncheck\sfcnUseExternalSrc\polyspace_result</a>					

The red Polyspace Code Prover check indicates that there is a problem in your S-function source code. To investigate the issue using Polyspace, click the hyperlink in the report. This link automatically opens a **Polyspace Project** window. In the Results List pane, expand **Red Check** and select the error. The source file opens in the **Source** window. From this window, you can fix and save your code the same way as you do in the MATLAB Editor.



The Polyspace Code Prover error code indicates a problem with a pointer. Pointer `*p` is out of bounds because it is used in an earlier loop. Correct the error by replacing this pointer with a variable of your choice, or deleting `*p` from this line of code.

Original Code	Modified Code
<pre> if (return_val &lt; 3) {     tmp = *p+5; /* Out of bounds */     tmp++;     return_val = 10; } </pre>	<pre> if (return_val &lt; 3) {     tmp = 5;     tmp++;     return_val = 10; } </pre>

## See Also

[Simulink.sfunction.Analyzer](#) | [Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo](#) | [Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options](#) | [findSfunctions](#)

## See Also

## More About

- “Troubleshoot S-Function Checks” on page 7-12

## **See Also**

### **Related Examples**

- “Run Quality Checks on S-Functions”

## Troubleshoot S-Function Checks

To help you identify and troubleshoot issues with your S-function model and source code, S-function checks use S-function analyzer APIs to help you detect potential S-function issues.

### Environment Checks

Environment checks inspect your environment for S-function analyzer APIs. This check includes the MEX compiler setup check.

#### MEX Setup Check

This check indicated the presence of the MEX compiler in the current machine. A default C compiler is included in your MATLAB installation. To see the supported list of compilers, see “Change Default Compiler”. You can change the default compiler by typing `mex -setup` at the command line.

### Source Code Checks

These checks inspect the source code for S-functions. These checks include the MEX compile check and Polyspace Code Prover check.

#### MEX Compile Check

The MEX compile check uses MEX compilers to identify compiler warnings and errors in the S-function source code.

#### Polyspace Code Prover Check

If you have a Polyspace license, this check uses Polyspace Code Prover to conduct code analysis. See “Source Code Verification with Polyspace Code Prover” (Polyspace Code Prover) for more information.

### S-Function MEX File Checks

This set of checks inspects the semantics of S-function MEX-file.

#### MdlOutputsModifyContinuousStates

This check indicates that the continuous states of the S-function are modified in the `mdlOutputs` method. Continuous states can only be modified at a major time step and requires the `ssSetSolverNeedsReset` macro to reset the S-function solver. Changing the S-function states without resetting the solver can lead to unexpected results.



### **MdlUpdateModifyContinuousStates**

This check indicates whether the continuous states of the S-function are modified in the `mdlUpdate` method. Continuous states can only be modified at a major time step and requires the `ssSetSolverNeedsReset` macro to reset the S-function solver. Changing the S-function states without resetting the solver can lead to unexpected results.

### **MinorStepModifyDiscreteStates**

This check indicates whether the discrete states of the S-function are modified in its `mdlOutputs` method at a minor step. Discrete states of an S-function can only be modified at a major step, guarded by `ssIsMajorTimeStep`.

### **MinorStepModifyModes**

This check investigates whether the mode vector of the S-function is modified in the `mdlOutputs` at a minor step. Mode step of the S-function can only be modified at a major time step, guarded by `ssIsMajorTimeStep` function.

### **GlobalStaticAsInvisibleState**

This check indicates whether the S-function is using static or global variables to represent internal states. To avoid unexpected behavior that results from having the S-function in multiple S-function blocks, declare the S-function states explicitly using `ssSetNumDiscreteStates` or using data store memory function APIs.

### **ContinuousStateWithoutContinuousSampleTime**

This check inspects whether the S-function continuous sample time is explicitly declared when it has continuous states. You can use `ssSetSampleTime` to specify continuous sample time when S-function has continuous states.

### **CombinedMdlOutputsMdlUpdateWithDiscreteState**

This check inspects whether the S-function `mdlUpdate` and `mdlOutputs` methods are combined when the S-function has discrete states. When the S-function has discrete states, define `mdlUpdate` and `mdlOutputs` methods separately and modify discrete states only in the `mdlUpdate` method.

### **DeclareCanBeConditionalExecWithState**

This check inspects whether the S-function sets the `SS_OPTION_CAN_BE_CALLED_CONDITIONALLY` option when it has state-like data or multiple sample times. This option could cause the Simulink engine to move the S-functions into a conditionally executed mode, such as a conditionally executed subsystem. Remove this option when you have state-like or multiple sample times.

### **TestHarnessCreationError**

This error code indicates that the S-function analyzer encounters an error when creating test harness for the input S-functions in a Simulink library. Possible reasons could be a missing .mex file or mask parameter definitions.

### **OperatingPointUnknownWithPWork**

This error indicates that the S-function has registered PWork and sets the operating point compliance as `OPERATING_POINT_COMPLIANCE_UNKNOWN`. This is not supported. To support Simulink saving and restoring operating points for this S-function, use `USE_CUSTOM_OPERATING_POINT` and provide `mdlGetOperatingPoint` and `mdlSetOperatingPoint` methods.

### **ModelCompileError**

The S-function analyzer encounters error when compiling the input model. You can try to recompile the model and check the diagnostic viewer for more information.

## **Input Parameter Robustness Check**

This check inspects the robustness of S-functions by specifying incompatible number and type of parameters with certain random values. This check could cause MATLAB to crash. To fix this issue, follow the reproduction steps when you relaunch S-function checks and check the S-function parameter data types and values.

### **See Also**

`Simulink.sfunction.Analyzer` | `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.BuildInfo` | `Simulink.sfunction.analyzer.Options` | `findSfunctions`

### **More About**

- “Check S-Functions Using S-Function Analyzer APIs” on page 7-2

### **See Also**

### **Related Examples**

- “Run Quality Checks on S-Functions”

# Using Work Vectors

---

- “DWork Vector Basics” on page 8-2
- “Types of DWork Vectors” on page 8-4
- “How to Use DWork Vectors” on page 8-5
- “DWork Vector Examples” on page 8-9
- “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15
- “Memory Allocation” on page 8-21

## DWork Vector Basics

### In this section...

“What is a DWork Vector?” on page 8-2

“DWork Vectors and the Simulink Engine” on page 8-3

“DWork Vectors and the Simulink Coder Product” on page 8-3

### What is a DWork Vector?

DWork vectors are blocks of memory that an S-function asks the Simulink engine to allocate to each instance of the S-function in a model. If multiple instances of your S-function can occur in a model, your S-function must use DWork vectors instead of global or static memory to store instance-specific values of S-function variables. Otherwise, your S-function runs the risk of one instance overwriting data needed by another instance, causing a simulation to fail or produce incorrect results. The ability to keep track of multiple instances of an S-function is called *reentrancy*.

You can create an S-function that is reentrant by using DWork vectors that the engine manages for each particular instance of the S-function.

DWork vectors have several advantages:

- Provide instance-specific storage for block variables
- Support floating-point, integer, pointer, and general data types
- Eliminate static and global variables
- Interact directly with the Simulink engine to perform memory allocation, initialization, and deallocation
- Facilitate inlining the S-function during code generation
- Provide more control over how data appears in the generated code

---

**Note** DWork vectors are the most generalized and versatile type of work vector and the following focus on their use. The Simulink product provides additional elementary types of work vectors that support floating-point, integer, pointer, and mode data. You can find a discussion of these work vectors in “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15.

---

DWork vectors provide the most flexibility for setting data types, names, etc., of the data in the simulation and during code generation. The following list describes all the properties that you can set on a DWork vector:

- Data type
- Size
- Numeric type, either real or complex
- Name
- Usage type (see “Types of DWork Vectors” on page 8-4)
- Simulink Coder identifier
- Simulink Coder storage class

- Simulink Coder C type qualifier

See “How to Use DWork Vectors” on page 8-5 for instructions on how to set these properties. The three Simulink Coder properties pertain only to code generation and have no effect during simulation.

## DWork Vectors and the Simulink Engine

A key advantage of DWork vectors is their connection to the Simulink engine. Over the course of the simulation, the engine relieves the S-function of all memory management tasks related to DWork vectors.

To see how this connection is useful, consider an S-function that uses a global variable to store data. If more than one copy of the S-function exists in a model, each instance of the S-function must carefully allocate, manipulate, and deallocate each piece of memory it uses.

In an S-function that uses DWork vectors, the engine, not the S-function, manages the memory for the DWork vector. At the start of a simulation, the engine allocates the memory required for each instance of the S-function based on the size and the data type of the DWork vector contents. At the end of the simulation, the engine automatically deallocates the memory.

---

**Note** You have no control over how the engine allocates memory for DWork vectors during simulation. When using the Simulink Coder software, you can use storage classes to customize the memory allocation during code generation. See the `ssSetDWorkRTWStorageClass` reference page for more information on using storage classes.

---

The engine also performs special tasks based on the type of DWork vector used in the S-function. For example, it includes DWork vectors that store discrete state information in the model-wide state vector and makes them available during state logging.

## DWork Vectors and the Simulink Coder Product

DWork vectors allow you to customize how data appears in the generated code. When code is generated, the Simulink Coder code generator includes the DWork vector in the data structure for the model. The DWork vector controls the field name used in the structure. DWork vectors also control the storage class and C type qualifier used in the generated code. See `sfun_rtdwork.c` for an example.

## Types of DWork Vectors

All DWork vectors are S-function memory that the Simulink engine manages. The Simulink software supports four types of DWork vectors:

- **General DWork vectors** contain information of any data type.
- **DState vectors** contain discrete state information. Information stored in a DState vector appears as a state in the linearized model and is available during state logging.
- **Scratch vectors** contain values that do not need to persist from one time step to the next.
- **Mode vectors** contain mode information, usually stored as Boolean or integer data.

S-functions register the DWork vector type using the `ssSetDWorkUsageType` macro. This macro accepts one of the four usage types described in the following table.

DWork	Usage Type	Functionality
General	<code>SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DWORK</code>	Store instance specific persistent data. General DWork vectors can also be used to store discrete state and mode data, however the Simulink engine will not treat this information specially. You might choose to use a general DWork vector to store state information if you want to avoid data logging.
DState	<code>SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DSTATE</code>	Store discrete state information. Using the DState vector instead of <code>ssSetNumDiscStates</code> to store discrete states provides more flexibility for naming and data typing the states. The engine marks blocks with discrete states as special during sample time propagation. In addition, the engine makes the data stored in the DState vector available during data logging.
Mode	<code>SS_DWORK_USED_AS_MODE</code>	Indicate to the Simulink engine that the S-function contains modes. The engine handles blocks with modes specially when solving algebraic loops. In addition, the engine updates an S-function with modes only at major time steps. DWork mode vectors are more efficient than standard mode work vectors (see “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15) because they can store mode information as Boolean data. In addition, while an S-function has only one mode work vectors, it can have multiple DWork vectors configured to store modes.
Scratch	<code>SS_DWORK_USED_AS_SCRATCH</code>	Store memory that is not persistent, for example, a large variable that you do not want to mark on the stack. Scratch vectors are scoped to a particular S-function method (for example, <code>mdlOutputs</code> ) and exist across a single time step. Scratch memory can be shared across S-function blocks. The Simulink engine attempts to minimize the amount of memory used by scratch variables and reuses scratch memory whenever possible.

## How to Use DWork Vectors

### In this section...

“Using DWork Vectors in C MEX S-Functions” on page 8-5

“DWork Vector C MEX Macros” on page 8-7

“Using DWork Vectors With Legacy Code” on page 8-8

### Using DWork Vectors in C MEX S-Functions

The following steps show how to initialize and use DWork vectors in a C MEX S-function. For a full list of `SimStruct` macros pertaining to DWork vectors, see “DWork Vector C MEX Macros” on page 8-7.

- 1 In `mdlInitializeSizes`, specify the number of DWork vectors using the `ssSetNumDWork` macro. For example, to specify that the S-function contains two DWork vectors, use the command

```
ssSetNumDWork(S, 2);
```

Although the `mdlInitializeSizes` method tells the Simulink engine how many DWork vectors the S-function will use, the engine does not allocate memory for the DWork vectors, at this time.

An S-function can defer specifying the number of DWork vectors until all information about the S-function inputs is available by passing the value `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` to the `ssSetNumDWork` macro. If an S-function defers specifying the number of DWork vectors in `mdlInitializeSizes`, it must provide a `mdlSetWorkWidths` method to set up the DWork vectors.

- 2 If the S-function does not provide an `mdlSetWorkWidths` method, the `mdlInitializeSizes` method sets any applicable attributes for each DWork vector. For example, the following lines initialize the widths and data types of the DWork vectors initialized in the previous step.

```
ssSetDWorkWidth(S, 0, 2);
ssSetDWorkWidth(S, 1, 1);
```

```
ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);
ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 1, SS_BOOLEAN);
```

The following table lists attributes you can set for a DWork vector and shows an example of the macro that sets it. See `ssSetDWorkRTWStorageClass` for a list of supported storage classes.

Attribute	Macro
Data type	<code>ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);</code>
Size	<code>ssSetDWorkWidth(S, 0, 2);</code>
Name	<code>ssSetDWorkName(S, 0, "sfcnState");</code>
Usage type	<code>ssSetDWorkUsageType(S, 0, SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DSTATE);</code>
Numeric type, either real or complex	<code>ssSetDWorkComplexSignal(S, 0, COMPLEX_NO);</code>
Simulink Coder identifier	<code>ssSetDWorkRTWIdentifier(S, 0, "Gain");</code>
Simulink Coder storage class	<code>ssSetDWorkRTWStorageClass(S, 0, 2);</code>

Attribute	Macro
Simulink Coder C type qualifier	<code>ssSetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier(S, 0, "volatile");</code>

- 3 In `mdlStart`, initialize the values of any DWork vectors that should be set only at the beginning of the simulation. Use the `ssGetDWork` macro to retrieve a pointer to each DWork vector and initialize the values. For example, the following `mdlStart` method initializes the first DWork vector.

```
static void mdlStart(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S,0);

    /* Initialize the first DWork vector */
    x[0] = 0;
    x[1] = 2;
}
```

The Simulink engine allocates memory for the DWork vector before calling the `mdlStart` method. Because the `mdlStart` method is called only once at the beginning of the simulation, do not use it for data or states that need to be reinitialized, for example, when reenabling a disabled subsystem containing the S-function.

- 4 In `mdlInitializeConditions`, initialize the values of any DWork vectors that need to be reinitialized at certain points in the simulation. The engine executes `mdlInitializeConditions` at the beginning of the simulation and any time an enabled subsystem containing the S-function is reenabled. See the `mdlStart` example in the previous step for the commands used to initialize DWork vector values.
- 5 In `mdlOutputs`, `mdlUpdate`, etc., use the `ssGetDWork` macro to retrieve a pointer to the DWork vector and use or update the DWork vector values. For example, for a DWork vector storing two discrete states, the following `mdlOutputs` and `mdlUpdate` methods calculate the output and update the discrete state values.

The S-function previously defined `U(element)` as `(*uPtrs[element])`, `A`, `B`, `C`, and `D` as the state-space matrices for a discrete state-space system.

```
/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *      y = Cx + Du
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    if( ssGetDWorkUsageType(S, 0) == SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DSTATE) {
        real_T      *y      = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
        real_T      *x      = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S, 0);
        InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

        UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

        /* y=Cx+Du */
        y[0]=C[0][0]*x[0]+C[0][1]*x[1]+D[0][0]*U(0)+D[0][1]*U(1);
        y[1]=C[1][0]*x[0]+C[1][1]*x[1]+D[1][0]*U(0)+D[1][1]*U(1);
    }
}
```

```
#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
 * Abstract:
 *      xdot = Ax + Bu
 */
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T      tempX[2] = {0.0, 0.0};
```



```

real_T          *x          = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S, 0);
InputRealPtrsType uPtrs    = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

/* xdot=Ax+Bu */
tempX[0]=A[0][0]*x[0]+A[0][1]*x[1]+B[0][0]*U(0)+B[0][1]*U(1);
tempX[1]=A[1][0]*x[0]+A[1][1]*x[1]+B[1][0]*U(0)+B[1][1]*U(1);

x[0]=tempX[0];
x[1]=tempX[1];
}

```

You do not have to include any code in the `mdlTerminate` method to deallocate the memory used to store the DWork vector. Similarly, if you are generating inlined code for the S-function, you do not have to write an `mdlRTW` method to access the DWork vector in the TLC file. The Simulink software handles these aspects of the DWork vector for you.

## DWork Vector C MEX Macros

The following table lists the C MEX macros pertaining to DWork vectors.

Macro	Description
<code>ssSetNumDWork</code>	Specify the number of DWork vectors.
<code>ssGetNumDWork</code>	Query the number of DWork vectors.
<code>ssGetDWork</code>	Get a pointer to a specific DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkComplexSignal</code>	Determine if a specific DWork vector is real or complex.
<code>ssGetDWorkDataType</code>	Get the data type of a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkName</code>	Get the name of a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkRTWIdentifier</code>	Get the identifier used to declare a DWork vector in the generated code.
<code>ssGetDWorkRTWIdentifierMustResolveToSignalObject</code>	Indicate if a DWork vector must resolve to a Simulink.Signal object in the MATLAB workspace.
<code>ssGetDWorkRTWStorageClass</code>	Get the storage class of a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier</code>	Get the C type qualifier used to declare a DWork vector in the generated code.
<code>ssGetDWorkUsageType</code>	Determine how a DWork vector is used in the S-function.
<code>ssGetDWorkUsedAsDState</code>	Determine if a DWork vector stores discrete states.
<code>ssGetDWorkWidth</code>	Get the size of a DWork vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkComplexSignal</code>	Specify if the elements of a DWork vector are real or complex.
<code>ssSetDWorkDataType</code>	Specify the data type of a DWork vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkName</code>	Specify the name of a DWork vector.

Macro	Description
<code>ssSetDWorkRTWIdentifier</code>	Specify the identifier used to declare a DWork vector in the generated code.
<code>ssSetDWorkRTWIdentifierMustResolveToSignalObject</code>	Specify if a DWork vector must resolve to a <code>Simulink.Signal</code> object.
<code>ssSetDWorkRTWStorageClass</code>	Specify the storage class for a DWork vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier</code>	Specify the C type qualifier used to declare a DWork vector in the generated code.
<code>ssSetDWorkUsageType</code>	Specify how a DWork vector is used in the S-function.
<code>ssSetDWorkUsedAsDState</code>	Specify that a DWork vector stores discrete state values.
<code>ssSetDWorkWidth</code>	Specify the width of a DWork vector.

## Using DWork Vectors With Legacy Code

You can use DWork vectors to communicate with legacy code. If you have existing code that allocates data structures in memory, store a pointer to those data structures in a DWork vector. Your S-function can then communicate with the legacy code via the pointer. Alternatively, for simplicity in setting up your S-function, you can use a pointer work vector to store the pointer. See “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15 for a description of pointer work vectors.

You can also use DWork vectors to store the state of legacy code. The template file `sfuntmpl_gate_fortran.c` shows how to use DWork vectors to interact with legacy Fortran code. The Legacy Code Tool uses DWork vectors to maintain the states of legacy C or C++ code incorporated through the tool. See “Integrate C Functions Using Legacy Code Tool” on page 4-33 for more information on the Legacy Code Tool.

## DWork Vector Examples

### In this section...

“General DWork Vector” on page 8-9  
 “DWork Scratch Vector” on page 8-10  
 “DState Work Vector” on page 8-11  
 “DWork Mode Vector” on page 8-13

### General DWork Vector

The S-function `sfun_rtwdwork.c` shows how to configure a DWork vector for use with the Simulink Coder product. The Simulink model `sfcn_demo_sfun_rtwdwork` uses this S-function to implement a simple accumulator.

The following portion of the `mdlInitializeSizes` method initializes the DWork vector and all code generation properties associated with it.

```

ssSetNumDWork(S, 1);
ssSetDWorkWidth(S, 0, 1);
ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);

/* Identifier; free any old setting and update */
id = ssGetDWorkRTWIdentifier(S, 0);
if (id != NULL) {
    free(id);
}
id = malloc(80);
mxGetString(ID_PARAM(S), id, 80);
ssSetDWorkRTWIdentifier(S, 0, id);

/* Type Qualifier; free any old setting and update */
tq = ssGetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier(S, 0);
if (tq != NULL) {
    free(tq);
}
tq = malloc(80);
mxGetString(TQ_PARAM(S), tq, 80);
ssSetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier(S, 0, tq);

/* Storage class */
sc = ((int_T) *((real_T*) mxGetPr(SC_PARAM(S)))) - 1;
ssSetDWorkRTWStorageClass(S, 0, sc);

```

The S-function initializes the DWork vector in `mdlInitializeConditions`.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize both continuous states to zero
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S,0);

    /* Initialize the dwork to 0 */
    x[0] = 0.0;
}

```

The `mdlOutputs` method assigns the DWork vector value to the S-function output.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:

```

```

*      y = x
*/
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S,0);

    /* Return the current state as the output */
    y[0] = x[0];
}

```

The `mdlUpdate` method increments the `DWork` value by the input.

```

#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
* Abstract:
* This function is called once for every major integration
* time step. Discrete states are typically updated here, but
* this function is useful for performing any tasks that should
* only take place once per integration step.
*/
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S,0);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /*
    * Increment the state by the input
    * U is defined as U(element) (*uPtrs[element])
    */
    x[0] += U(0);
}

```

## DWork Scratch Vector

The following example uses a scratch `DWork` vector to store a static variable value. The `mdlInitializeSizes` method configures the width and data type of the `DWork` vector. The `ssSetDWorkUsageType` macro then specifies the `DWork` vector is a scratch vector.

```

ssSetNumDWork(S, 1);

ssSetDWorkWidth(S, 0, 1);
ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);
ssSetDWorkUsageType(S,0, SS_DWORK_USED_AS_SCRATCH);

```

The remainder of the S-function uses the scratch `DWork` vector exactly as it would any other type of `DWork` vector. The `InitializeConditions` method sets the initial value and the `mdlOutputs` method uses the value stored in the `DWork` vector.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions ===== */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S,0);
    /* Initialize the dwork to 0 */
    x[0] = 0.0;
}
/* Function: mdlOutputs ===== */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    real_T *x1 = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S,1);

    x[0] = 2000;
    y[0] = x[0] * 2;
}

```

If you have Simulink Coder, the Simulink Coder software handles scratch DWork differently from other DWork vectors when generating code for inlined S-function. To inline the S-function, create the following Target Language Compiler (TLC) file to describe the `mdlOutputs` method.

```
%implements sfun_dscratch "C"

%% Function: Outputs =====
%%
/* dscratch Block: %<Name> */
%<LibBlockDWork(DWork[0], "", "", 0)> = 2000.0;
%<LibBlockOutputSignal(0,"","",0)> = %<LibBlockDWork(DWork[0],"", "", 0)> * 2;
```

When the Simulink Coder software generates code for the model, it inlines the S-function and declares the second DWork vector as a local scratch vector. For example, the model outputs function contains the following lines:

```
/* local scratch DWork variables */
real_T SFunction_DWORK1;
SFunction_DWORK1 = 2000.0;
```

If the S-function used a general DWork vector instead of a scratch DWork vector, generating code with the same TLC file would have resulted in the DWork vector being included in the data structure, as follows:

```
sfcndemo_dscratch_DWork.SFunction_DWORK1 = 2000.0;
```

## DState Work Vector

This example rewrites the S-function example `dsfunc.c` to use a DState vector instead of an explicit discrete state vector. The `mdlInitializeSizes` macro initializes the number of discrete states as zero and, instead, initializes one DWork vector.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` method then configures the DWork vector as a DState vector using a call to `ssSetDWorkUsedAsDState`. This is equivalent to calling the `ssSetDWorkUsageType` macro with the value `SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DSTATE`. The `mdlInitializeSizes` method sets the width and data type of the DState vector and gives the state a name using `ssSetDWorkName`.

---

**Note** DWork vectors configured as DState vectors must be assigned a name for the Simulink engine to register the vector as discrete states. The function `Simulink.BlockDiagram.getInitialStates(mdl)` returns the assigned name in the `label` field for the initial states.

---

```
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0); /* Number of expected parameters */
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine */
    }

    ssSetNumContStates(S, 0);
    ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 0);

    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

    if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);

    ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
```

```

    ssSetNumRWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumIWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumModes(S, 0);
    ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);

    ssSetNumDWork(S, 1);
    ssSetDWorkUsedAsDState(S, 0, SS_DWORK_USED_AS_DSTATE);
    ssSetDWorkWidth(S, 0, 2);
    ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);
    ssSetDWorkName(S, 0, "SfunStates");

    ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
}

```

The `mdlInitializeConditions` method initializes the `DState` vector values using the pointer returned by `ssGetDWork`.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize both discrete states to one.
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x0 = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S, 0);
    int_T lp;

    for (lp=0;lp<2;lp++) {
        *x0++=1.0;
    }
}

```

The `mdlOutputs` method then uses the values stored in the `DState` vector to compute the output of the discrete state-space equation.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   y = Cx + Du
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S, 0);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /* y=Cx+Du */
    y[0]=C[0][0]*x[0]+C[0][1]*x[1]+D[0][0]*u[0]+D[0][1]*u[1];
    y[1]=C[1][0]*x[0]+C[1][1]*x[1]+D[1][0]*u[0]+D[1][1]*u[1];
}

```

Finally, the `mdlUpdate` method updates the `DState` vector with new values for the discrete states.

```

#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   xdot = Ax + Bu
 */
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T tempX[2] = {0.0, 0.0};
    real_T *x = (real_T*) ssGetDWork(S, 0);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /* xdot=Ax+Bu */
    tempX[0]=A[0][0]*x[0]+A[0][1]*x[1]+B[0][0]*u[0]+B[0][1]*u[1];
    tempX[1]=A[1][0]*x[0]+A[1][1]*x[1]+B[1][0]*u[0]+B[1][1]*u[1];
}

```

```

    x[0]=tempX[0];
    x[1]=tempX[1];
}

```

## DWork Mode Vector

This example rewrites the S-function `sfun_zc.c` to use a DWork mode vector instead of an explicit mode work vector (see “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15 for more information on mode work vectors). This S-function implements an absolute value block.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` method sets the number of DWork vectors and zero-crossing vectors (see “Zero Crossings” on page 9-31) to `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED`. The `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` setting allows the Simulink engine to defer specifying the work vector sizes until it knows the dimensions of the input, allowing the S-function to support an input with an arbitrary width.

```

static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0);
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine */
    }

    ssSetNumContStates( S, 0);
    ssSetNumDiscStates( S, 0);

    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

    if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S,1)) return;
    ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);

    ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
    ssSetNumRWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumIWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumDWork(S, 1);
    ssSetNumModes(S, 0);

    /* Initializes the zero-crossing and DWork vectors */
    ssSetDWorkWidth(S,0,DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
    ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);

    /* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl_doc.c */
    ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
}

```

The Simulink engine initializes the number of zero-crossing vectors and DWork vectors to the number of elements in the signal coming into the first S-function input port. The engine then calls the `mdlSetWorkWidths` method, which uses `ssGetNumDWork` to determine how many DWork vectors were initialized and then sets the properties for each DWork vector.

```

#define MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S) {
    int_T numdw = ssGetNumDWork(S);
    int_T i;

    for (i = 0; i < numdw; i++) {
        ssSetDWorkUsageType(S, i, SS_DWORK_USED_AS_MODE);
        ssSetDWorkDataType(S, i, SS_BOOLEAN);
        ssSetDWorkComplexSignal(S, i, COMPLEX_NO);
    }
}

```

The `mdlOutputs` method uses the value stored in the `DWork` mode vector to determine if the output signal should be equal to the input signal or the absolute value of the input signal.

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    int_T i;
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    int_T width = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);
    boolean_T *mode = ssGetDWork(S,0);

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    if (ssIsMajorTimeStep(S)) {
        for (i = 0; i < width; i++) {
            mode[i] = (boolean_T)(*uPtrs[i] >= 0.0);
        }
    }

    for (i = 0; i < width; i++) {
        y[i] = mode[i]? (*uPtrs[i]): -(*uPtrs[i]);
    }
}
```



## Elementary Work Vectors

In this section...
“Description of Elementary Work Vector” on page 8-15
“Relationship to DWork Vectors” on page 8-15
“Using Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-16
“Additional Work Vector Macros” on page 8-17
“Elementary Work Vector Examples” on page 8-17

### Description of Elementary Work Vector

In addition to DWork vectors, the Simulink software provides a simplified set of work vectors. In some S-functions, these elementary work vectors can provide an easier solution than using DWork vectors:

- **IWork vectors** store integer data.
- **Mode vectors** model zero crossings or other features that require a single mode vector.
- **PWork vectors** store pointers to data structures, such as those that interface the S-function to legacy code, another software application, or a hardware application.
- **RWork vectors** store floating-point (real) data.

### Relationship to DWork Vectors

The following table compares each type of work vector to a DWork vector.

Work Vector Type	Comparison to DWork Vector	How to create equivalent DWork vector
IWork	IWork vectors cannot be customized in the generated code. Also, you are allowed only one IWork vector.	<code>ssSetNumDWork(S,1);</code> <code>ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_INT8);</code>
Mode	Mode vectors require more memory than DWork vectors since the mode vector is always stored with an integer data type. Also, you are allowed only one Mode vector.	<code>ssSetNumDWork(S,1);</code> <code>ssSetDWorkUsageType(S, 0,</code> <code>    SS_DWORK_USED_AS_MODE);</code> <code>ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_INT8);</code>
PWork	Unlike DWork vectors, PWork vectors cannot be named in the generated code. Also, you are allowed only one PWork vector.	<code>ssSetNumDWork(S,1);</code> <code>ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_POINTER);</code>  The DWork vector then stores a pointer.
RWork	RWork vectors cannot be customized in the generated code. Also, you are allowed only one RWork vector.	<code>ssSetNumDWork(S,1);</code> <code>ssSetDWorkDataType(S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);</code>

## Using Elementary Work Vectors

The process for using elementary work vectors is similar to that for DWork vectors (see “Using DWork Vectors in C MEX S-Functions” on page 8-5.) The elementary work vectors have fewer properties, so the initialization process is simpler. However, if you need to generate code for the S-function, the S-function becomes more involved than when using DWork vectors.

The following steps show how to set up and use elementary work vectors. See “Additional Work Vector Macros” on page 8-17 for a list of macros related to each step in the following process.

- 1 In `mdlInitializeSizes`, specify the size of the work vectors using the `ssSetNumXWork` macro, for example:

```
ssSetNumPWork(S, 2);
```

This macro indicates how many elements the work vector contains, however, the Simulink engine does not allocate memory, at this time.

An S-function can defer specifying the length of the work vectors until all information about the S-function inputs is available by passing the value `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` to the `ssSetNumXWork` macro. If an S-function defers specifying the length of the work vectors in `mdlInitializeSizes`, it must provide a `mdlSetWorkWidths` method to set up the work vectors.

---

**Note** If an S-function uses `mdlSetWorkWidths`, all work vectors used in the S-function must be set to `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` in `mdlInitializeSizes`, even if the exact value is known before `mdlInitializeSizes` is called. The sizes to be used by the S-function are than specified in `mdlSetWorkWidths`.

For an example, see `sfun_dynsize.c`.

---

- 2 In `mdlStart`, assign values to the work vectors that are initialized only at the start of the simulation. Use the `ssGetXWork` macro to retrieve a pointer to each work vector and use the pointer to initialize the work vector values. Alternatively, use the `ssGetXWorkValues` to assign values to particular elements of the work vector.

The Simulink engine calls the `mdlStart` method once at the beginning of the simulation. Before calling this method, the engine allocates memory for the work vectors. Do not use the `mdlStart` method for data that needs to be reinitialized over the course of the simulation, for example, data that needs to be reinitialized when an enabled subsystem containing the S-function is enabled.

- 3 In `mdlInitializeConditions`, initialize the values of any work vectors that might need to be reinitialized at certain points in the simulation. The engine executes `mdlInitializeConditions` at the beginning of the simulation and any time an enabled subsystem containing the S-function is reenabled.
- 4 In `mdlOutputs`, `mdlUpdate`, etc., use the `ssGetXWork` macro to retrieve a pointer to the work vector and use the pointer to access or update the work vector values.
- 5 Write an `mdlRTW` method to allow the Target Language Compiler (TLC) to access the work vector. This step is not necessary if the S-function uses DWork vectors. For information on writing parameter data in an `mdlRTW` method, see `ssWriteRTWParamSettings`. For more information on generating code using an `mdlRTW` method, see “Write Fully Inlined S-Functions with `mdlRTW` Routine” (Simulink Coder).

## Additional Work Vector Macros

Macro	Description
ssSetNumRWork	Specify the width of the real work vector.
ssGetNumRWork	Query the width of the real work vector.
ssSetNumIWork	Specify the width of the integer work vector.
ssGetNumIWork	Query the width of the integer work vector.
ssSetNumPWork	Specify the width of the pointer work vector.
ssGetNumPWork	Query the width of the pointer work vector.
ssSetNumModes	Specify the width of the mode work vector.
ssGetNumModes	Query the width of the mode work vector.
ssGetIWork	Get a pointer to the integer work vector.
ssGetIWorkValue	Get an element of the integer work vector.
ssGetModeVector	Get a pointer to the mode work vector.
ssGetModeVectorValue	Get an element of the mode work vector.
ssGetPWork	Get a pointer to the pointer work vector.
ssGetPworkValue	Get one element from the pointer work vector.
ssGetRWork	Get a pointer to the floating-point work vector.
ssGetRWorkValue	Get an element of the floating-point work vector.
ssSetIWorkValue	Set the value of one element of the integer work vector.
ssSetModeVectorValue	Set the value of one element of the mode work vector.
ssSetPWorkValue	Set the value of one element of the pointer work vector.
ssSetRWorkValue	Set the value of one element of the floating-point work vector.

## Elementary Work Vector Examples

The following sections provide examples of the four types of elementary work vectors.

### Pointer Work Vector

This example opens a file and stores the FILE pointer in the pointer work vector.

The following statement, included in the `mdlInitializeSizes` function, indicates that the pointer work vector is to contain one element.

```
ssSetNumPWork(S, 1) /* pointer-work vector */
```

The following code uses the pointer work vector to store a FILE pointer, returned from the standard I/O function `fopen`.

```
#define MDL_START /* Change to #undef to remove function. */
#if defined(MDL_START)
static void mdlStart(real_T *x0, SimStruct *S)
{
    FILE *fPtr;
    void **PWork = ssGetPWork(S);
    fPtr = fopen("file.data", "r");
}
```

```

    PWork[0] = fPtr;
}
#endif /* MDL_START */

```

The following code retrieves the FILE pointer from the pointer work vector and passes it to `fclose` in order to close the file.

```

static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    if (ssGetPWork(S) != NULL) {
        FILE *fPtr;
        fPtr = (FILE *) ssGetPWorkValue(S,0);
        if (fPtr != NULL) {
            fclose(fPtr);
        }
        ssSetPWorkValue(S,0,NULL);
    }
}

```

---

**Note** Although the Simulink engine handles deallocating the PWork vector, the `mdlTerminate` method must always free the memory stored in the PWork vector.

---

## Real and Integer Work Vectors

The S-function `stvc.tf.c` uses RWork and IWork vectors to model a time-varying continuous transfer function. For a description of this S-function, see the example “Discontinuities in Continuous States” on page 9-83.

## Mode Vector

The following example implements a switch block using a mode work vector. The `mdlInitializeSizes` method configures two input ports with direct feedthrough and one output port. The mode vector element indicates if the signal from the first or second input port is propagated to the output. The S-function uses one S-function parameter and a corresponding run-time parameter to store the mode value and allow the switch to be toggled during simulation.

```

static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* Initialize one S-function parameter to toggle the mode value */
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 1);
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        /* Return if number of expected != number of actual parameters */
        return;
    }

    {
        int iParam = 0;
        int nParam = ssGetNumSFcnParams(S);

        for ( iParam = 0; iParam < nParam; iParam++ )
        {
            ssSetSFcnParamTunable( S, iParam, SS_PRM_TUNABLE );
        }
    }

    /* Initialize two input ports with direct feedthrough */
    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 2)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 1);
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 1, 1);
    ssSetInputPortDataType( S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);
    ssSetInputPortDataType( S, 1, SS_DOUBLE);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough( S, 0, 1);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough( S, 1, 1);

    /* Initialize one output port */
}

```

```

if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 1);
ssSetOutputPortDataType( S, 0, SS_DOUBLE);

/* Initialize one element in the mode vector */
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
ssSetNumModes(S,1);

ssSetOptions(S,
             SS_OPTION_WORKS_WITH_CODE_REUSE |
             SS_OPTION_USE_TLC_WITH_ACCELERATOR |
             SS_OPTION_DISALLOW_CONSTANT_SAMPLE_TIME |
             SS_OPTION_NONVOLATILE);
}

```

The `mdlInitializeConditions` method initializes the mode vector value using the current value of the S-function dialog parameter.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize the mode vector value.
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T *mv = ssGetModeVector(S);
    real_T param = mxGetScalar(ssGetSFcnParam(S,0));
    mv[0] = (int_T)param;
}

```

The `mdlProcessParameters` and `mdlSetWorkWidths` methods initialize and update the run-time parameter. As the simulation runs, changes to the S-function dialog parameter are mapped to the run-time parameter.

```

/* Function: mdlSetWorkWidths =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Sets the number of runtime parameters.
 */
#define MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S) {
    ssSetNumRunTimeParams(S,1);
    ssRegDlgParamAsRunTimeParam(S,0,0,"P1",SS_INT16);
}

/* Function: mdlProcessParameters =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Update run-time parameters.
 */
#define MDL_PROCESS_PARAMETERS
static void mdlProcessParameters(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssUpdateDlgParamAsRunTimeParam(S,0);
}

```

The `mdlOutputs` method updates the mode vector value with the new run-time parameter value at every major time step. It then uses the mode vector value to determine which input signal to pass through to the output.

```

static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    InputRealPtrsType u2Ptrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,1);
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortSignal(S,0);
    int_T *mode = ssGetModeVector(S);
    real_T param = mxGetScalar(ssGetSFcnParam(S,0));

    if (ssIsMajorTimeStep(S)) {
        mode[0] = (int_T)param;
    }
}

```

```
    if (!mode[0]) {  
        /* first input */  
        y[0] = (*uPtrs[0]);  
    }  
    if (mode[0]) {  
        /* second input */  
        y[0] = (*u2Ptrs[0]);  
    }  
}
```

## Memory Allocation

When you create an S-function, you might need to allocate memory for each instance of your S-function. The standard MATLAB API memory allocation routines `mxCalloc` and `mxFree` should not be used with C MEX S-functions, because these routines are designed to be used with MEX files that are called from the MATLAB environment and not the Simulink environment. The correct approach for allocating memory is to use the `stdlib.h` library routines `calloc` and `free`. In `mdlStart`, allocate and initialize the memory

```
UD *ptr = (UD *)calloc(1, sizeof(UD));
```

where `UD`, in this example, is a data structure defined at the beginning of the S-function. Then, place the pointer to it either in the pointer work vector

```
ssSetPWorkValue(S, 0, ptr);
```

or attach it as user data.

```
ssSetUserData(S, ptr);
```

In `mdlTerminate`, free the allocated memory. For example, if the pointer was stored in the user data

```
UD *ptr = ssGetUserData(S);  
free(ptr);
```

### See Also

[ssSetPWorkValue](#) | [ssSetUserData](#) | [ssGetUserData](#)





# Implementing Block Features for C/C++ S-Functions

---

- “Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions” on page 9-2
- “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5
- “Input and Output Ports” on page 9-12
- “Configure Custom Data Types” on page 9-18
- “Specify S-Function Sample Times” on page 9-20
- “Zero Crossings” on page 9-31
- “S-Function Compliance with the ModelOperatingPoint” on page 9-34
- “MATLAB Data in C S-Functions” on page 9-36
- “Implement Function-Call Subsystems with S-Functions” on page 9-39
- “Use C/C++ S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode” on page 9-43
- “Handle Errors in S-Functions” on page 9-44
- “Guidelines for Writing Thread-Safe S-Functions” on page 9-47
- “C MEX S-Function Examples” on page 9-51

## Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions

### In this section...

“About Dialog Parameters” on page 9-2

“Tunable Parameters” on page 9-3

### About Dialog Parameters

You can pass parameters to an S-function at the start of and during the simulation, using the **S-function parameters** field of the Block Parameters dialog box. Such parameters are called *dialog box parameters* to distinguish them from run-time parameters created by the S-function to facilitate code generation (see “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5).

**Note** You cannot use the Model Explorer, the S-function Block Parameters dialog box, or a mask to tune the parameters of a source S-function, i.e., an S-function that has outputs but no inputs, while a simulation is running. For more information, see “Tune and Experiment with Block Parameter Values”.

### Using C S-Function Dialog Parameters

The Simulink engine stores the values of the dialog box parameters in the S-function `SimStruct` structure. Use the S-function callback methods and `SimStruct` macros to access and check the parameters and use them to compute the S-function output. To use dialog parameters in your C S-function, perform the following steps when you create the S-function:

- 1 Determine the order in which the parameters are to be specified in the block's dialog box.
- 2 In the `mdlInitializeSizes` function, use the `ssSetNumSFcnParams` macro to tell the Simulink engine how many parameters the S-function accepts. Specify `S` as the first argument and the number of dialog box parameters as the second argument. If your S-function implements the `mdlCheckParameters` method, the `mdlInitializeSizes` routine should call `mdlCheckParameters` to check the validity of the initial values of the parameters. For example, the `mdlInitializeSizes` function in `sfun_runtime1.c` begins with the following code.

```
ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS); /* Number of expected parameters */
#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) == ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        mdlCheckParameters(S);
        if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) {
            return;
        }
    } else {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }
#endif
```

- 3 Access the dialog box parameters in the S-function using the `ssGetSFcnParam` macro.

Specify `S` as the first argument and the relative position of the parameter in the list entered on the dialog box (0 is the first position) as the second argument. The `ssGetSFcnParam` macro returns a pointer to the `mxAarray` containing the parameter. You can use `ssGetDTypeIdFromMxAarray` to get the data type of the parameter. Alternatively, you can use `ssGetSFcnParamDataType` to get the data type of the parameter by specifying the index of the parameter.

For example, in `sfun_runtime1.c`, the following `#define` statements at the beginning of the S-function specify the order of three dialog box parameters and access their values on the block's dialog.

```
#define SIGNS_IDX 0
#define SIGNS_PARAM(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,SIGNS_IDX) /* First parameter */

#define GAIN_IDX 1
#define GAIN_PARAM(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,GAIN_IDX) /* Second parameter */

#define OUT_IDX 2
#define OUT_PARAM(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,OUT_IDX) /* Third parameter */
```

When running a simulation, you must specify the parameters in the **S-Function parameters** field of the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box in the same order that you defined them in step 1. You can enter any valid MATLAB expression as the value of a parameter, including literal values, names of workspace variables, function invocations, or arithmetic expressions. The Simulink engine evaluates the expression and passes its value to the S-function.

As another example, the following code is part of a device driver S-function. Four input parameters are used: `BASE_ADDRESS_PRM`, `GAIN_RANGE_PRM`, `PROG_GAIN_PRM`, and `NUM_OF_CHANNELS_PRM`. The code uses `#define` statements at the top of the S-function to associate particular input arguments with the parameter names.

```
/* Input Parameters */
#define BASE_ADDRESS_PRM(S)      ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0)
#define GAIN_RANGE_PRM(S)       ssGetSFcnParam(S, 1)
#define PROG_GAIN_PRM(S)        ssGetSFcnParam(S, 2)
#define NUM_OF_CHANNELS_PRM(S)  ssGetSFcnParam(S, 3)
```

When running the simulation, enter four variable names or values in the **S-function parameters** field of the S-Function Block Parameters dialog box. The first corresponds to the first expected parameter, `BASE_ADDRESS_PRM(S)`. The second corresponds to the next expected parameter, and so on.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function contains this statement.

```
ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 4);
```

## Tunable Parameters

Dialog parameters can be either tunable or nontunable. A tunable parameter is a parameter that a user can change while the simulation is running.

---

**Note** Dialog box parameters are tunable by default. Nevertheless, it is good programming practice to set the tunability of every parameter, even those that are tunable. If you enable the simulation diagnostic **S-function upgrades needed**, the Simulink engine issues the diagnostic whenever it encounters an S-function that fails to specify the tunability of all its parameters.

---

The `mdlCheckParameters` method enables you to validate changes to tunable parameters during a simulation. The engine invokes the `mdlCheckParameters` method whenever you change the values of parameters during the simulation loop. This method should check the S-function dialog box parameters to ensure that the changes are valid.

The optional `mdlProcessParameters` callback method allows an S-function to process changes to tunable parameters. The engine invokes this method only if valid parameter changes have occurred in

the previous time step. A typical use of this method is to perform computations that depend only on the values of parameters and hence need to be computed only when parameter values change. The method can cache the results of the parameter computations in work vectors or, preferably, as run-time parameters (see “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5).

### Using Tunable Parameters in a C S-Function

In a C S-function, use the macro `ssSetSFcnParamTunable` in `mdlInitializeSizes` to specify the tunability of each S-function dialog box parameter. The code below is taken from the `mdlInitializeSizes` function in the example `sfun_runtime1.c`. The code first sets the number of S-function dialog box parameters to three before invoking `mdlCheckParameters`. If the parameter check passes, the tunability of the three S-function dialog box parameters is specified.

```
ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 3); /* Three dialog box parameters*/

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) == ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        mdlCheckParameters(S);
        if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) {
            return;
        }
    } else {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }
#endif

ssSetSFcnParamTunable(S,GAIN_IDX,true); /* Tunable */
ssSetSFcnParamTunable(S,SIGNS_IDX,false); /* Not tunable */
ssSetSFcnParamTunable(S,OUT_IDX,false); /* Not tunable */
```

---

**Note** The S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` routine invokes the `mdlCheckParameters` method to ensure that the initial values of the parameters are valid.

---

### Tuning Parameters in External Mode

When you tune parameters during simulation, the Simulink engine invokes the S-function `mdlCheckParameters` method to validate the changes and then the S-functions' `mdlProcessParameters` method to give the S-function a chance to process the parameters in some way. The engine also invokes these methods when running in external mode, but it passes the unprocessed changes to the S-function target. Thus, if it is essential that your S-function process parameter changes, you need to create a Target Language Compiler (TLC) file that inlines the S-function, including its parameter processing code, during the code generation process. For information on inlining S-functions, see “Inlining S-Functions” in the Simulink Coder Target Language Compiler documentation.

### See Also

`ssGetSFcnParamDataType`

### More About

- “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 10-4
- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters

### In this section...

“About Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5  
 “Creating Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-6  
 “Updating Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-9  
 “Tuning Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-10  
 “Accessing Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-10

### About Run-Time Parameters

You can create internal representations of external S-function dialog box parameters called *run-time parameters*. Every run-time parameter corresponds to one or more dialog box parameters and can have the same value and data type as its corresponding external parameters or a different value or data type. If a run-time parameter differs in value or data type from its external counterpart, the dialog parameter is said to have been transformed to create the run-time parameter. The value of a run-time parameter that corresponds to multiple dialog parameters is typically a function of the values of the dialog parameters. The Simulink engine allocates and frees storage for run-time parameters and provides functions for updating and accessing them, thus eliminating the need for S-functions to perform these tasks. Run-time parameters facilitate the following kinds of S-function operations:

- Computed parameters

Often the output of a block is a function of the values of several dialog parameters. For example, suppose a block has two parameters, the volume and density of some object, and the output of the block is a function of the input signal and the mass of the object. In this case, the mass can be viewed as a third internal parameter computed from the two external parameters, volume and density. An S-function can create a run-time parameter corresponding to the computed weight, thereby eliminating the need to provide special case handling for weight in the output computation. See “Creating Run-Time Parameters from Multiple S-Function Parameters” on page 9-7 for more information.

- Data type conversions

Often a block needs to change the data type of a dialog parameter to facilitate internal processing. For example, suppose that the output of the block is a function of the input and a dialog parameter and the input and dialog parameter are of different data types. In this case, the S-function can create a run-time parameter that has the same value as the dialog parameter but has the data type of the input signal, and use the run-time parameter in the computation of the output.

- Code generation

During code generation, the Simulink Coder product writes all run-time parameters automatically to the `model.rtw` file, eliminating the need for the S-function to perform this task via an `mdlRTW` method.

The `sfcn_demo_runtime` Simulink model contains four example S-functions that create run-time parameters.

## Creating Run-Time Parameters

In a C S-function, you can create run-time parameters in a number of ways. The following sections describe different methods for creating run-time parameters in a C S-function.

### Creating Run-Time Parameters All at Once

Use the `SimStruct` function `ssRegAllTunableParamsAsRunTimeParams` in `mdlSetWorkWidths` to create run-time parameters corresponding to all tunable parameters. This function requires that you pass it an array of names, one for each run-time parameter. The Simulink Coder product uses these names as the names of the parameters during code generation. The S-function `sfun_runtime1.c` shows how to create run-time parameters all at once.

This approach to creating run-time parameters assumes that there is a one-to-one correspondence between an S-function run-time parameters and its tunable dialog parameters. This might not be the case. For example, an S-function might want to use a computed parameter whose value is a function of several dialog parameters. In such cases, the S-function might need to create the run-time parameters individually.

### Creating Run-Time Parameters Individually

To create run-time parameters individually, the S-function `mdlSetWorkWidths` method should

- 1 Specify the number of run-time parameters it intends to use, using `ssSetNumRunTimeParams`.
- 2 Use `ssRegDlgParamAsRunTimeParam` to register a run-time parameter that corresponds to a single dialog parameter, even if there is a data type transformation, or `ssSetRunTimeParamInfo` to set the attributes of a run-time parameter that corresponds to more than one dialog parameter.

The following example uses `ssRegDlgParamAsRunTimeParam` and is taken from the S-function `sfun_runtime3.c`. This example creates a run-time parameter directly from the dialog parameter and with the same data type as the first input port's signal.

```
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* Get data type of input to use for run-time parameter */
    DTypeId      dtId      = ssGetInputPortDataType(S, 0);

    /* Define name of run-time parameter */
    const char_T *rtParamName = "Gain";

    ssSetNumRunTimeParams(S, 1); /* One run-time parameter */
    if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) return;
    ssRegDlgParamAsRunTimeParam(S, GAIN_IDX, 0, rtParamName, dtId);
}
#endif /* MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS */
```

The next example uses `ssSetRunTimeParamInfo` and is taken from the S-function `sfun_runtime2.c`.

```
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssParamRec p; /* Initialize an ssParamRec structure */
    int        dlgP = GAIN_IDX; /* Index of S-function parameter */

    /* Configure run-time parameter information */
    p.name           = "Gain";
    p.nDimensions    = 2;
    p.dimensions     = (int_T *) mxGetDimensions(GAIN_PARAM(S));
    p.dataTypeId     = SS_DOUBLE;
    p.complexSignal  = COMPLEX_NO;
```

```

    p.data          = (void *)mxGetPr(GAIN_PARAM(S));
    p.dataAttributes = NULL;
    p.nDlgParamIndices = 1;
    p.dlgParamIndices = &dlgP;
    p.transformed     = false;
    p.outputAsMatrix  = false;

    /* Set number of run-time parameters */
    if (!ssSetNumRunTimeParams(S, 1)) return;

    /* Set run-time parameter information */
    if (!ssSetRunTimeParamInfo(S, 0, &p)) return;
}

```

The S-function `sfun_runtime2.c` defines the parameters `GAIN_IDX` and `GAIN_PARAM` as follows, prior to using these parameters in `mdlSetWorkWidths`.

```

#define GAIN_IDX 1
#define GAIN_PARAM(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,GAIN_IDX)

```

### Creating Run-Time Parameters from Multiple S-Function Parameters

Use the `ssSetRunTimeParamInfo` function in `mdlSetWorkWidths` to create run-time parameters as a function of multiple S-function parameters. For example, consider an S-function with two S-function parameters, density and volume. The S-function inputs a force ( $F$ ) and outputs an acceleration ( $a$ ). The `mdlOutputs` method calculates the force using the equation  $F=m*a$ , where the mass ( $m$ ) is the product of the density and volume.

The S-function `sfun_runtime4.c` implements this example using a single run-time parameter to store the mass. The S-function begins by defining the run-time parameter data type, as well as variables associated with volume and density.

```

#define RUN_TIME_DATA_TYPE SS_DOUBLE
#if RUN_TIME_DATA_TYPE == SS_DOUBLE
typedef real_T RunTimeDataType;
#endif

#define VOL_IDX 0
#define VOL_PARAM(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,VOL_IDX)

#define DEN_IDX 1
#define DEN_PARAM(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,DEN_IDX)

```

The `mdlSetWorkWidths` method then initializes the run-time parameter, as follows.

```

static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssParamRec p; /* Initialize an ssParamRec structure */
    int         dlg[2]; /* Stores dialog indices */
    real_T vol      = *mxGetPr(VOL_PARAM(S));
    real_T den      = *mxGetPr(DEN_PARAM(S));
    RunTimeDataType *mass;

    /* Initialize dimensions for the run-time parameter as a
     * local variable. The Simulink engine makes a copy of this
     * information to store in the run-time parameter. */
    int_T massDims[2] = {1,1};

    /* Allocate memory for the run-time parameter data. The S-function
     * owns this memory location. The Simulink engine does not copy the data.*/
    if ((mass=(RunTimeDataType*)malloc(1)) == NULL) {
        ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Memory allocation error");
        return;
    }

    /* Store the pointer to the memory location in the S-function
     * userdata. Since the S-function owns this data, it needs to

```

```

    * free the memory during mdlTerminate */
    ssSetUserData(S, (void*)mass);

    /* Call a local function to initialize the run-time
    * parameter data. The Simulink engine checks that the data is not
    * empty so an initial value must be stored. */
    calcMass(mass, vol, den);

    /* Specify mass as a function of two S-function dialog parameters */
    dlg[0] = VOL_IDX;
    dlg[1] = DEN_IDX;

    /* Configure run-time parameter information. */
    p.name           = "Mass";
    p.nDimensions    = 2;
    p.dimensions     = massDims;
    p.dataTypeId     = RUN_TIME_DATA_TYPE;
    p.complexSignal  = COMPLEX_NO;
    p.data           = mass;
    p.dataAttributes = NULL;
    p.nDlgParamIndices = 2;
    p.dlgParamIndices = &dlg
    p.transformed    = RTPARAM_TRANSFORMED;
    p.outputAsMatrix = false;

    /* Set number of run-time parameters */
    if (!ssSetNumRunTimeParams(S, 1)) return;

    /* Set run-time parameter information */
    if (!ssSetRunTimeParamInfo(S,0,&p)) return;
}

```

The local function `calcMass` updates the run-time parameter value in `mdlSetWorkWidths` and in `mdlProcessParameters`, when the values of density or volume are tuned.

```

/* Function: calcMass =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Local function to calculate the mass as a function of volume
 *   and density.
 */
static void calcMass(RuntimeDataType *mass, real_T vol, real_T den)
{
    *mass = vol * den;
}

```

The `mdlOutputs` method uses the stored mass to calculate the force.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Output acceleration calculated as input force divided by mass.
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *y1          = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    RuntimeDataType *mass =
        (RuntimeDataType *)((ssGetRunTimeParamInfo(S,0))->data);

    /*
    * Output acceleration = force / mass
    */
    y1[0] = (*uPtrs[0]) / *mass;
}

```

Lastly, the `mdlTerminate` method frees the memory allocated for the run-time parameter in `mdlSetWorkWidths`.

```

/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:

```



```

*      Free the user data.
*/
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* Free memory used to store the run-time parameter data*/
    RunTimeDataType *mass = ssGetUserData(S);
    if (mass != NULL) {
        free(mass);
    }
}

```

To run the example, open the Simulink model:

sfcndemo\_runtime

## Updating Run-Time Parameters

Whenever you change the values of S-function dialog parameters during simulation, the Simulink engine invokes the S-function `mdlCheckParameters` method to validate the changes. If the changes are valid, the engine invokes the S-function `mdlProcessParameters` method at the beginning of the next time step. This method should update the S-function run-time parameters to reflect the changes in the dialog parameters.

In a C S-function, update the run-time parameters using the method appropriate for how the run-time parameters were created, as described in the following sections.

### Updating All Parameters at Once

In a C MEX S-function, if there is a one-to-one correspondence between the S-function tunable dialog parameters and the run-time parameters, i.e., the run-time parameters were registered using `ssRegAllTunableParamsAsRunTimeParams`, the S-function can use the `SimStruct` function `ssUpdateAllTunableParamsAsRunTimeParams` to accomplish this task. This function updates each run-time parameter to have the same value as the corresponding dialog parameter. See `sfun_runtime1.c` for an example.

### Updating Parameters Individually

If there is not a one-to-one correspondence between the S-function dialog and run-time parameters or the run-time parameters are transformed versions of the dialog parameters, the `mdlProcessParameters` method must update each parameter individually. Choose the method used to update the run-time parameter based on how it was registered.

If you register a run-time parameter using `ssSetRunTimeParamInfo`, the `mdlProcessParameters` method uses `ssUpdateRunTimeParamData` to update the run-time parameter, as shown in `sfun_runtime2.c`. This function updates the data field in the parameter's attributes record, `ssParamRec`, with a new value. You cannot directly modify the `ssParamRec`, even though you can obtain a pointer to the `ssParamRec` using `ssGetRunTimeParamInfo`.

If you register a run-time parameter using `ssRegDlgParamAsRunTimeParam`, the `mdlProcessParameters` method uses `ssUpdateDlgParamAsRunTimeParam` to update the run-time parameter, as is shown in `sfun_runtime3.c`.

### Updating Parameters as Functions of Multiple S-Function Parameters

If you register a run-time parameter as a function of multiple S-function parameters, the `mdlProcessParameters` method uses `ssUpdateRunTimeParamData` to update the run-time parameter.

The S-function `sfun_runtime4.c` provides an example. In this example, the `mdlProcessParameters` method calculates a new value for the run-time parameter and passes the value to the pointer of the run-time parameter's memory location, which was allocated during the call to `mdlSetWorkWidths`. The `mdlProcessParameters` method then passes the updated run-time parameter's pointer to `ssUpdateRunTimeParamData`.

## Tuning Run-Time Parameters

Tuning a dialog parameter tunes the corresponding run-time parameter during simulation and in code generated only if the dialog parameter meets the following conditions:

- The S-function marks the dialog parameter as tunable, using `ssSetSFcnParamTunable`.
- The dialog parameter is a MATLAB array of values with a data type supported by the Simulink product.

Note that you cannot tune a run-time parameter whose value is a cell array or structure.

## Accessing Run-Time Parameters

You can easily access run-time parameters from the S-function code. In order to access run-time parameter data, choose one of the following methods based on the data type.

- If the data is of type double:

```
real_T *dataPtr = (real_T *) ssGetRunTimeParamInfo(S, #) ->data;
```

- If the parameter is complex, the real and imaginary parts of the data are interleaved. For example, if a user enters the following:

```
K = [1+2i, 3+4i; 5+6i, 7+8i]
```

the matrix that is generated is

```
K =  
    1+2i    3+4i  
    5+6i    7+8i
```

The memory for this matrix is laid out as

```
[1, 2, 5, 6, 3, 4, 7, 8]
```

To access a complex run-time parameter from the S-function code:

```
for (i = 0; i < width; i++)  
{  
    real_T realData = dataPtr[(2*i)];  
    real_T imagData = dataPtr[(2*i)+1];  
}
```

---

**Note** Matrix elements are written out in column-major format. Real and imaginary values are interleaved.

---

## See Also

`ssGetSFcnParamDataType`

## **More About**

- “Input and Output Ports” on page 9-12
- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Input and Output Ports

### In this section...

“Creating Input Ports for C S-Functions” on page 9-12  
 “Creating Output Ports for C S-Functions” on page 9-14  
 “Scalar Expansion of Inputs” on page 9-15  
 “Masked Multiport S-Functions” on page 9-16

### Creating Input Ports for C S-Functions

To create and configure input ports, the `mdlInitializeSizes` method should first specify the number of S-function input ports, using `ssSetNumInputPorts`. Then, for each input port, the method should specify

- The dimensions of the input port (see “Initializing Input Port Dimensions” on page 9-13)

If you want your S-function to inherit its dimensionality from the port to which it is connected, you should specify that the port is dynamically sized in `mdlInitializeSizes` (see “Sizing an Input Port Dynamically” on page 9-13).

- Whether the input port allows scalar expansion of inputs (see “Scalar Expansion of Inputs” on page 9-15)
- Whether the input port has direct feedthrough, using `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough`

A port has direct feedthrough if the input is used in either the `mdlOutputs` or `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` functions. The direct feedthrough flag for each input port can be set to either `1=yes` or `0=no`. It should be set to 1 if the input, `u`, is used in the `mdlOutputs` or `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` routine. Setting the direct feedthrough flag to 0 tells the Simulink engine that `u` is not used in either of these S-function routines. Violating this leads to unpredictable results.

- The data type of the input port, if not the default `double`

Use `ssSetInputPortDataType` to set the input port's data type. If you want the data type of the port to depend on the data type of the port to which it is connected, specify the data type as `DYNAMICALLY_TYPED`. In this case, you must provide implementations of the `mdlSetInputPortDataType` and `mdlSetDefaultPortDataTypes` methods to enable the data type to be set correctly during signal propagation.

- The numeric type of the input port, if the port accepts complex-valued signals

Use `ssSetInputPortComplexSignal` to set the input port's numeric type. If you want the numeric type of the port to depend on the numeric type of the port to which it is connected, specify the numeric type as `COMPLEX_INHERITED`. In this case, you must provide implementations of the `mdlSetInputPortComplexSignal` and `mdlSetDefaultPortComplexSignals` methods to enable the numeric type to be set correctly during signal propagation.

You can configure additional input port properties using other S-function macros. See “Input and Output Ports” on page 12-6 in the “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” section for more information.

---

**Note** The `mdlInitializeSizes` method must specify the number of ports before setting any properties. If it attempts to set a property of a port that doesn't exist, it is accessing invalid memory and a segmentation violation occurs.

---

### Initializing Input Port Dimensions

You can set input port dimensions using one of the following macros:

- If the input signal must be one-dimensional and the input port width is  $w$ , use  
`ssSetInputPortWidth(S, inputPortIdx, w)`
- If the input signal must be a matrix of dimension  $m$ -by- $n$ , use  
`ssSetInputPortMatrixDimensions(S, inputPortIdx, m, n)`
- Otherwise, if the input signal can have either one or two dimensions, use  
`ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S, inputPortIdx, dimsInfo)`

You can use this function to fully or partially initialize the port dimensions (see next section).

### Sizing an Input Port Dynamically

If your S-function does not require that its input signals have specific dimensions, you can set the dimensionality of the input ports to match the dimensionality of the signals connected to them.

To dynamically dimension an input port:

- Specify some or all of the dimensions of the input port as dynamically sized in `mdlInitializeSizes`.

If the input port can accept a signal of any dimensionality, use

```
ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S, inputPortIdx, DYNAMIC_DIMENSION)
```

to set the dimensionality of the input port.

If the input port can accept only vector (1-D) signals but the signals can be of any size, use

```
ssSetInputPortWidth(S, inputPortIdx, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED)
```

to specify the dimensionality of the input port.

If the input port can accept only matrix signals but can accept any row or column size, use

```
ssSetInputPortMatrixDimensions(S, inputPortIdx,  
    DYNAMICALLY_SIZED, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED)
```

- Provide an `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` method that sets the dimensions of the input port to the size of the signal connected to it.

The Simulink engine invokes this method during signal propagation when it has determined the dimensionality of the signal connected to the input port.

- Provide an `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` method that sets the dimensions of the block's ports to a default value. See `sfun_dynsize.c` for an example that implements this macro.

The engine invokes this method during signal propagation when it cannot determine the dimensionality of the signal connected to some or all of the block's input ports. This can happen,

for example, if an input port is unconnected. If the S-function does not provide this method, the signal propagation routine sets the dimension of the block's ports to 1-D scalar.

### Example: Defining Multiple S-Function Input Ports

The following code in `mdlInitializeSizes` configures an S-function with two input ports. See “Input and Output Ports” on page 12-6 in the “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” section for more information on the macros used in this example.

```
if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 2)) return;

for (i = 0; i < 2; i++) {
    /* Input has direct feedthrough */
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, i, 1);

    /* Input is a real signal */
    ssSetInputPortComplexSignal(S, i, COMPLEX_NO);

    /* Input is a dynamically sized 2-D matrix */
    ssSetInputPortMatrixDimensions(S, i,
        DYNAMICALLY_SIZED, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);

    /* Input inherits its sample time */
    ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, i, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME);

    /* Input signal must be contiguous */
    ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous(S, i, 1);

    /* The input port cannot share memory */
    ssSetInputPortOverWritable(S, i, 0);
}
```

During signal propagation, the Simulink engine calls this S-function's `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` macro to initialize the input port dimensions. In this example, `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` sets the input dimensions to the candidate dimensions passed to the macro by the engine.

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO
static void mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S,
    int_T port,
    const DimsInfo_T *dimsInfo)
{
    if(!ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S, port, dimsInfo)) return;
}
#endif
```

For an example that configures an S-function with multiple input and output ports, open the Simulink model `sfcdemo_sfun_multiport` and inspect the S-function `sfun_multiport.c`.

## Creating Output Ports for C S-Functions

To create and configure output ports, the `mdlInitializeSizes` method should first specify the number of S-function output ports, using `ssSetNumOutputPorts`. Then, for each output port, the method should specify

- Dimensions of the output port

You can set output port dimensions using one of the following macros:

- `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`
- `ssSetOutputPortMatrixDimensions`
- `ssSetOutputPortVectorDimension`
- `ssSetOutputPortWidth`

If you want the port's dimensions to depend on block connectivity, set the dimensions to `DYNAMIC_DIMENSIONS` when using `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` or to `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` for all other macros. The S-function must then provide `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` and `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` methods to ensure that output port dimensions are set to the correct values in code generation.

- Data type of the output port

Use `ssSetOutputPortDataType` to set the output port's data type. If you want the data type of the port to depend on block connectivity, specify the data type as `DYNAMICALLY_TYPED`. In this case, you must provide implementations of the `mdlSetOutputPortDataType` and `mdlSetDefaultPortDataTypes` methods to enable the data type to be set correctly during signal propagation.

- The numeric type of the output port, if the port outputs complex-valued signals

Use `ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal` to set the output port's numeric type. If you want the numeric type of the port to depend on the numeric type of the port to which it is connected, specify the numeric type as `COMPLEX_INHERITED`. In this case, you must provide implementations of the `mdlSetOutputPortComplexSignal` and `mdlSetDefaultPortComplexSignals` methods to enable the numeric type to be set correctly during signal propagation.

See “Creating Input Ports for C S-Functions” on page 9-12 for an example showing how to initialize an S-function input port. You use the same procedure to initialize the S-function output ports, but with the corresponding output port macro.

## Scalar Expansion of Inputs

Scalar expansion of inputs refers conceptually to the process of expanding scalar input signals to the same dimensions as wide input signals connected to other S-function input ports. This is done by setting each element of the expanded signal to the value of the scalar input.

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function uses the default scalar expansion rules if the input and output ports are specified as dynamically sized (see “Scalar Expansion of Inputs and Parameters” in *Using Simulink*).

With scalar expansion on, the S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` method should specify that the input and output ports are dynamically sized. The Simulink engine uses a default method to set the dimensions of the input and output ports. If the block has more than two inputs, the input signals can be scalar or wide signals, where the wide signals all have the same number of elements. In this case, the engine sets the dimensions of the output ports to the width of the wide input signals and expands any scalar inputs to this width. If the wide inputs are driven by 1-D and 2-D vectors, the output is a 2-D vector signal, and the scalar inputs are expanded to a 2-D vector signal.

If scalar expansion is not on, the engine assumes that all ports (input and output ports) must have the same dimensions, and it sets all port dimensions to the same dimensions specified by one of the driving blocks.

---

**Note** The engine ignores the scalar expansion option if the S-function specifies or controls the dimensions of its input and output ports either by initializing the dimensions in `mdlInitializeSizes`, using `mdlSetInputPortWidth` and `mdlSetOutputPortWidth`, or using `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo`, `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`, and `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo`.

---

The best way to understand how to use scalar expansion is to consider the example `sfcn_demo_sfun_multiport`. This model contains three S-function blocks, each with multiple input ports. The S-function `sfun_multiport.c` used in these blocks sets the `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_INPUT_SCALAR_EXPANSION` option in its `mdlInitializeSizes` method, allowing scalar expansion of the inputs. The S-function specifies that its inputs and outputs are dynamically sized. Therefore, during signal propagation, the engine sets the width of the input ports to the width of the signal connected to the port, and the width of the output ports to the width of any wide input signal. The `mdlOutputs` method performs an element-by-element sum on the input signals, expanding any scalar inputs, as needed.

```
/* Calculate an element-by-element sum of the input signals.
   yWidth is the width of the output signal. */

for (el = 0; el < yWidth; el++) {

    int_T port;
    real_T sum = 0.0;
    for (port = 0; port < nInputPorts; port++) {
        /* Get the input signal value */
        InputRealPtrsType uPtrs =
            ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S, port);

        if (el < ssGetInputPortWidth(S, port)) {
            /* Input is a wide signal. Use specific element */
            sum = sum + ((real_T)signs[port] * (*uPtrs[el]));
        } else {
            /* Use the scalar value to expand the signal */
            sum = sum + ((real_T)signs[port] * (*uPtrs[0]));
        }
    }
}
```

## Masked Multiport S-Functions

If you are developing masked multiport S-function blocks whose number of ports varies based on some parameter, and want to place them in a Simulink library, you must specify that the mask modifies the appearance of the block. To do this, execute the command

```
set_param(blockname, 'MaskSelfModifiable', 'on')
```

at the MATLAB command prompt before saving the library, where *blockname* is the full path to the block. Failure to specify that the mask modifies the appearance of the block means that an instance of



the block in a model reverts to the number of ports in the library whenever you load the model or update the library link.

## Configure Custom Data Types

### In this section...

“Custom Data Types in C S-Functions” on page 9-18

“Using Simulink Recognizable Data Types in C S-Functions” on page 9-18

“Using Opaque Data Types in C S-Functions” on page 9-18

### Custom Data Types in C S-Functions

C S-Functions can communicate using user-defined data types. There are two broad categories for these data types:

- Simulink recognizable custom data types — These are custom data types from a `Simulink.AliasType`, `Simulink.Bus`, `Simulink.NumericType`, or an Enumerated data type that can also interact with other Simulink blocks.
- Opaque data types — These are data types for use only with S-Function blocks programmed to understand them. You might define opaque data types in cases in which other Simulink blocks do not need to use the data types.

### Using Simulink Recognizable Data Types in C S-Functions

To register a custom data type recognizable by Simulink, the S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` routine must register the data type, using `ssRegisterTypeFromNamedObject`.

For example, the following code placed at the beginning of `mdlInitializeSizes` defines a custom data type from a `Simulink.AliasType` object named `u8` in the MATLAB workspace. The example then assigns the custom data type to the first output port.

```
int id1;
ssRegisterTypeFromNamedObject(S, "u8", &id1);
ssSetOutputPortDataType(S, 0, id1);
```

In addition, you can use the identifier `id1` to assign this data type to S-function parameters, `DWork` vectors, and input ports.

### Using Opaque Data Types in C S-Functions

For cases in which S-Functions need to communicate using a data type that cannot be understood by Simulink, the S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` routine must:

- 1 Register the data type, using `ssRegisterDataType`.
- 2 Specify the amount of memory in bytes required to store an instance of the data type, using `ssSetDataTypeSize`.
- 3 Specify the value that represents zero for the data type, using `ssSetDataTypeZero`.

Define the user-defined data type in an external header file to include in the level 2 C S-Function.

```
/* Define the structure of the user-defined data type */
typedef struct{
```

```
    int8_T a;  
    uint16_T b;  
}myStruct;
```

Place the following code at the beginning of `mdlInitializeSizes` to set the size and zero representation of the custom data type `myStruct`.

```
/* Define variables */  
int_T status;  
DTypeId id;  
  
myStruct tmp;  
  
/* Register the user-defined data types */  
id = ssRegisterDataType(S, "myStruct");  
if(id == INVALID_DTYPE_ID) return;  
  
/* Set the size of the user-defined data type */  
status = ssSetDataTypeSize(S, id, sizeof(tmp));  
if(status == 0) return;  
  
/* Set the zero representation */  
tmp.a = 0;  
tmp.b = 1;  
status = ssSetDataTypeZero(S, id, &tmp);
```

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, you cannot use the software to generate code for S-functions that contain macros to define custom data types. You must use an inline S-function that accesses Target Language Compiler functions to generate code with custom data types. For more information, see “Inlining S-Functions” (Simulink Coder).

---

## See Also

[ssSetNumInputPorts](#) | [ssSetNumOutputPorts](#) | [ssGetNumInputPorts](#) | [ssGetNumOutputPorts](#)

## More About

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Specify S-Function Sample Times

### In this section...

“About Sample Times” on page 9-20

“Block-Based Sample Times” on page 9-21

“Specifying Port-Based Sample Times” on page 9-23

“Hybrid Block-Based and Port-Based Sample Times” on page 9-27

“Multirate S-Function Blocks” on page 9-27

“Multirate S-Functions and Sample Time Hit Calculations” on page 9-28

“Synchronizing Multirate S-Function Blocks” on page 9-29

“Specifying Model Reference Sample Time Inheritance” on page 9-29

### About Sample Times

You can specify the sample-time behavior of your S-functions in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`. Your S-function can inherit its rates from the blocks that drive it or define its own rates.

You can specify your S-function rates (i.e., sample times) as

- Block-based sample times
- Port-based sample times
- Hybrid block-based and port-based sample times

With block-based sample times, the S-function specifies a set of operating rates for the block as a whole during the initialization phase of the simulation. With port-based sample times, the S-function specifies a sample time for each input and output port individually during initialization. During the simulation phase, with block-based sample times, the S-function processes all inputs and outputs each time a sample hit occurs for the block. By contrast, with port-based sample times, the block processes a particular port only when a sample hit occurs for that port.

For example, consider two sample rates, 0.5 and 0.25 seconds, respectively:

- In the block-based method, selecting 0.5 and 0.25 directs the block to execute inputs and outputs at 0.25 second increments.
- In the port-based method, setting the input port to 0.5 and the output port to 0.25 causes the block to process inputs at 2 Hz and outputs at 4 Hz.

You should use port-based sample times if your application requires unequal sample rates for input and output execution or if you do not want the overhead associated with running input and output ports at the highest sample rate of your block.

In some applications, an S-Function block might need to operate internally at one or more sample rates while inputting or outputting signals at other rates. The hybrid block- and port-based method of specifying sample rates allows you to create such blocks.

In typical applications, you specify only one block-based sample time. Advanced S-functions might require the specification of port-based or multiple block sample times.

## Block-Based Sample Times

C MEX S-functions specify block-based sample time information in

- `mdlInitializeSizes`
- `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`

The next two sections discuss how to specify block-based sample times for C MEX S-functions. A third section presents a simple example that shows how to specify sample times in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`. For a detailed example, see `mixedm.c`.

### Specifying the Number of Sample Times in `mdlInitializeSizes`

To configure your S-function for block-based sample times, use

```
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, numSampleTimes);
```

where `numSampleTimes > 0`. This tells the Simulink engine that your S-function has block-based sample times. The engine calls `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`, which in turn sets the sample times.

### Setting Sample Times and Specifying Function Calls in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`

`mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies two pieces of execution information:

- Sample and offset times — In `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`, you must specify the sampling period and offset for each sample time using `ssSetSampleTime` and `ssSetOffsetTime`. If applicable, you can calculate the appropriate sampling period and offset prior to setting them, for example, by computing the best sample time for the block based on the S-function dialog parameters obtained using `ssGetSFcnParam`.
- Function calls — In `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`, use `ssSetCallSystemOutput` to specify the output elements that are performing function calls. See `seesfun_fcncall.c` for an example and “Implement Function-Call Subsystems with S-Functions” on page 9-39 for an explanation of this S-function.

You specify the sample times as pairs [*sample\_time*, *offset\_time*], using these macros

```
ssSetSampleTime(S, sampleTimePairIndex, sample_time)
ssSetOffsetTime(S, offsetTimePairIndex, offset_time)
```

where *sampleTimePairIndex* and *offsetTimePairIndex* starts at 0.

The valid sample time pairs are (uppercase values are macros defined in `simstruc.h`):

```
[CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0 ]
[CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]
[discrete_sample_period, offset ]
[VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME , 0.0 ]
```

Alternatively, you can specify that the sample time is inherited from the driving block, in which case the S-function can have only one sample time pair,

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0 ]
```

or

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]
```

**Note** If your S-function inherits its sample time, you should specify whether it is safe to use the S-function in a referenced model, i.e., a model referenced by another model. See “Specifying Model Reference Sample Time Inheritance” on page 9-29 for more information.

---

The following guidelines might help in specifying sample times:

- A continuous function that changes during minor integration steps should register the `[CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]` sample time.
- A continuous function that does not change during minor integration steps should register the `[CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]` sample time.
- A discrete function that changes at a specified rate should register the discrete sample time pair `[discrete_sample_period, offset]`

where

`discrete_sample_period > 0.0`

and

`0.0 <= offset < discrete_sample_period`

- A discrete function that changes at a variable rate should register the variable-step discrete `[VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]` sample time. In C MEX S-functions, the `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` function is called to get the time of the next sample hit for the variable-step discrete task. The `VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME` can be used with variable-step solvers only.

If your function has no intrinsic sample time, you must indicate that it is inherited according to the following guidelines:

- A function that changes as its input changes, even during minor integration steps, should register the `[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]` sample time.
- A function that changes as its input changes, but doesn't change during minor integration steps (meaning, is held during minor steps), should register the `[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]` sample time.

To check for a sample hit during execution (in `mdlOutputs` or `mdlUpdate`), use the `ssIsSampleHit` or `ssIsContinuousTask` macro. For example, use the following code fragment to check for a continuous sample hit:

```
if (ssIsContinuousTask(S,tid)) {  
}
```

To determine whether the third (discrete) task has a hit, use the following code fragment:

```
if (ssIsSampleHit(S,2,tid) {  
}
```

The Simulink engine always assigns an index of 0 to the continuous sample rate, if it exists, however you get incorrect results if you use `ssIsSampleHit(S,0,tid)`.

### **Example: mdlInitializeSampleTimes**

This example specifies that there are two discrete sample times with periods of 0.01 and 0.5 seconds.

```
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, 0.01);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 1, 0.5);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 1, 0.0);
} /* End of mdlInitializeSampleTimes. */
```

## Specifying Port-Based Sample Times

You cannot use port-based sample times with S-functions that have neither input ports nor output ports. If an S-function uses port-based sample times and has no ports, the S-function produces errors when the Simulink model is updated or run. If the number of input or output ports on an S-function is variable, extra protection should be added into the S-function to ensure the total number of ports does not go to zero.

To use port-based sample times in your C MEX S-function, you must specify the number of sample times as port-based in the S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` method:

```
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, PORT_BASED_SAMPLE_TIMES)
```

You must also specify the sample time of each input and output port in the S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` method, using the following macros

```
ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, idx, period)
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, idx, offset)
ssSetOutputPortSampleTime(S, idx, period)
ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime(S, idx, offset)
```

The call to `ssSetNumSampleTimes` can be placed before or after the port-based sample times are actually specified in `mdlInitializeSizes`. However, if `ssSetNumSampleTimes` does not configure the S-function to use port-based sample times, any sample times set on the ports will be ignored.

For any given port, you can specify

- A specific sample time and period

For example, the following code sets the sample time of the S-function first input port to 0.1 and the offset time to 0.

```
ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, 0, 0.1);
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, 0);
```

- Inherited sample time (-1), i.e., the port inherits its sample time from the port to which it is connected (see “Specifying Inherited Sample Time for a Port” on page 9-24)
- Constant sample time (Inf), i.e., the signal coming from the port is constant (see “Specifying Constant Sample Time (Inf) for a Port” on page 9-24)

---

**Note** To be usable in a triggered subsystem, all your S-function ports must have either inherited (-1) or constant sample time (Inf). For more information, see “Configuring Port-Based Sample Times for Use in Triggered Subsystems” on page 9-25.

---

### Specifying Inherited Sample Time for a Port

To specify that a port's sample time is inherited in a C MEX S-function, the `mdlInitializeSizes` method should set its period to `-1` and its offset to `0`. For example, the following code specifies inherited sample time for a C MEX S-function first input port:

```
ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, 0, -1);  
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, 0);
```

When you specify port-based sample times, the Simulink engine calls `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` and `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime` to determine the rates of inherited signals.

Once all rates have been determined, the engine calls `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`. Even though there is no need to initialize port-based sample times at this point, the engine invokes this method to give your S-function an opportunity to configure function-call connections. Your S-function must thus provide an implementation for this method regardless of whether it uses port-based sample times or function-call connections. Although you can provide an empty implementation, you might want to use it to check the appropriateness of the sample times that the block inherited during sample time propagation. Use `ssGetInputPortSampleTime` and `ssGetOutputPortSampleTime` in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` to obtain the values of the inherited sample times. For example, the following code in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` checks if the S-function first input inherited a continuous sample time.

```
if (!ssGetInputPortSampleTime(S,0)) {  
    ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Cannot inherit a continuous sample time.")  
};
```

---

**Note** If you specify that your S-function ports inherit their sample time, you should also specify whether it is safe to use the S-function in a referenced model, i.e., a model referenced by another model. See “Specifying Model Reference Sample Time Inheritance” on page 9-29 for more information.

---

If you write TLC code to generate inlined code from an S-function, and if the TLC code contains an `Outputs` function, you must modify the TLC code if these conditions are true:

- The output port has a constant value. It uses or inherits a sample time of `Inf`.
- The S-function is a multirate S-function or uses port-based sample times.

In this case, the TLC code must generate code for the constant-valued output port by using the function `OutputsForTID` instead of the function `Outputs`. For more information, see “Specifying Constant Sample Time (Inf) for a Port” on page 9-24.

To prevent ports from inheriting a sample time of `Inf`, set the option `SS_OPTION_DISALLOW_CONSTANT_SAMPLE_TIME` in the S-function code. In this case, you can use the TLC function `Outputs` to generate code for constant-valued output ports.

### Specifying Constant Sample Time (Inf) for a Port

If your S-function uses port-based sample times, it can set a sample time of `Inf` on any of its ports. A port-based sample time of `Inf` means that the signal entering or leaving the port stays constant.

To make a port output a constant value, the S-function must:



- Use `ssSetOptions` in its `mdlInitializeSizes` method to add support for a sample time of `Inf`:

```
ssSetOptions(S,SS_OPTION_ALLOW_CONSTANT_PORT_SAMPLE_TIME);
```

---

**Note** This option causes the S-function's ports to support a sample time of `Inf`, including ports that inherit their sample times from other blocks. If any S-function ports that inherit sample time cannot have a sample time of `Inf`, an error occurs. Set sample times for these ports using the `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` and `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime` methods.

---

- Set the port's sample time to `Inf` and its offset to `0`, e.g.,
 

```
ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S,0,mxGetInf());
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S,0,0);
```
- Check in `mdlOutputs` whether the method's `tid` argument equals `CONSTANT_TID` and if so, set the value of the port's output if it is an output port.

To see an example of how to create ports which output a constant value, see `sfun_port_constant.c`, the source file for the `sfcndemo_port_constant` example.

If you write TLC code to generate inlined code from an S-function, and if the TLC code contains an `Outputs` function, modify the TLC code if all these conditions are true:

- The output port has a constant value. It uses or inherits a sample time of `Inf`.
- The S-function is a multirate S-function or uses port-based sample times.

In this case, the TLC code must generate code for the constant-valued output port by using the function `OutputsForTID` instead of the function `Outputs`. The function `OutputsForTID` generates output code for the constant-valued component of the S-function. If you configure a model to generate multitasking code, `OutputsForTID` also generates output code for the periodic components of the S-function.

For example, view the TLC file `sfun_port_constant.tlc` for the C S-function `sfun_port_constant.c` in the model `sfcndemo_port_constant`. In the model, the input of the block S-Function2 has a constant value throughout the simulation. In the S-function code, the first output port inherits the sample time of the input port, so the output port also has a constant value. The S-function code directly specifies a constant value for the second output port.

In the TLC code, if the port has a constant value, the function `Outputs` does not generate code for the first output port. The function does not generate code for the second output port under any circumstances because the port always has a constant value.

For this S-function, `OutputsForTID` generates code for output ports that have a constant value. The code generator invokes the function `OutputsForTID`, and sets the argument `tid` to the task identifier that corresponds to constant values. Only if the task identifier of an output port corresponds to constant values does `OutputsForTID` then generate code for the port.

### Configuring Port-Based Sample Times for Use in Triggered Subsystems

To use a C MEX S-function in a triggered subsystem, your port-based sample time S-function must perform the following tasks.

- Use `ssSetOptions` in the `mdlInitializeSizes` method to indicate the S-function can run in a triggered subsystem:

```
ssSetOptions(S,
SS_OPTION_ALLOW_PORT_SAMPLE_TIME_IN_TRIGSS);
```

- Set all of its ports to have either inherited (-1) or constant sample time (Inf) in its `mdlInitializeSizes` method.
- Handle inheritance of a triggered sample time in `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` and `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime` methods as follows.

Since the S-function ports inherit their sample times, the Simulink engine invokes either `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` or `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime` during sample time propagation. The macro `ssSampleAndOffsetAreTriggered` can be used in these methods to determine if the S-function resides in a triggered subsystem. If the S-function does reside in a triggered subsystem, whichever method is called must set the sample time and offset of the port for which it is called to `INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME` (-1).

Setting a port's sample time and offset both to `INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME` indicates that the sample time of the port is triggered, i.e., it produces an output or accepts an input only when the subsystem in which it resides is triggered. The method must then also set the sample times and offsets of all of the other S-function input and output ports to have either triggered or constant sample time (Inf), whichever is appropriate, e.g.,

```
static void mdlSetInputPortSampleTime(SimStruct *S,
                                     int_T portIdx,
                                     real_T sampleTime,
                                     real_T offsetTime)
{
    /* If the S-function resides in a triggered subsystem,
    the sample time and offset passed to this method
    are both equal to INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME. Therefore,
    if triggered, the following lines set the sample time
    and offset of the input port to INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME.*/

    ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, portIdx, sampleTime);
    ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, portIdx, offsetTime);

    /* If triggered, set the output port to inherited, as well */

    if (ssSampleAndOffsetAreTriggered(sampleTime, offsetTime)) {
        ssSetOutputPortSampleTime(S, 0, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME);
        ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME);

        /* Note, if there are additional input and output ports
        on this S-function, they should be set to either
        inherited or constant at this point, as well. */
    }
}
```

There is no way for an S-function residing in a triggered subsystem to predict whether the Simulink engine will call `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` or `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime` to set its port sample times. For this reason, both methods must be able to set the sample times of all ports correctly so the engine has to call only one of the methods a single time.

- In `mdlUpdate` and `mdlOutputs`, use `ssGetPortBasedSampleTimeBlockIsTriggered` to check whether the S-function resides in a triggered subsystem and if so, use appropriate algorithms for computing its states and outputs.

See `sfun_port_triggered.c`, the source file for the `sfcn_demo_port_triggered` example model, for an example of how to create an S-function that can be used in a triggered subsystem.

## Hybrid Block-Based and Port-Based Sample Times

The hybrid method of assigning sample times combines the block-based and port-based methods. You first specify, in `mdlInitializeSizes`, the total number of rates at which your block operates, including both block and input and output rates, using `ssSetNumSampleTimes`.

You then set the `SS_OPTION_PORT_SAMPLE_TIMES_ASSIGNED` option, using `ssSetOptions`, to tell the simulation engine that you are going to use the port-based method to specify the rates of the input and output ports individually. Next, as in the block-based method, you specify the periods and offsets of all of the block's rates, both internal and external, using

```
ssSetSampleTime
ssSetOffsetTime
```

Finally, as in the port-based method, you specify the rates for each port, using

```
ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, idx, period)
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, idx, offset)
ssSetOutputPortSampleTime(S, idx, period)
ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime(S, idx, offset)
```

Note that each of the assigned port rates must be the same as one of the previously declared block rates. For an example S-function, see `mixedm.c`.

---

**Note** If you use the `SS_OPTION_PORT_SAMPLE_TIMES_ASSIGNED` option, your S-function cannot inherit sample times. Instead, you must specify the rate at which each input and output port runs.

---

## Multirate S-Function Blocks

In a multirate S-Function block, you can encapsulate the code that defines each behavior in the `mdlOutputs` and `mdlUpdate` functions with a statement that determines whether a sample hit has occurred. In a C MEX S-function, the `ssIsSampleHit` macro determines whether the current time is a sample hit for a specified sample time. The macro has this syntax:

```
ssIsSampleHit(S, st_index, tid)
```

where `S` is the `SimStruct`, `st_index` identifies a specific sample time index, and `tid` is the task ID (`tid` is an argument to the `mdlOutputs` and `mdlUpdate` functions).

For example, these statements in a C MEX S-function specify three sample times: one for continuous behavior and two for discrete behavior.

```
ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);
ssSetSampleTime(S, 1, 0.75);
ssSetSampleTime(S, 2, 1.0);
```

In the `mdlUpdate` function, the following statement encapsulates the code that defines the behavior for the sample time of 0.75 second.

```
if (ssIsSampleHit(S, 1, tid)) {
}
```

The second argument, `1`, corresponds to the second sample time, 0.75 second.

Use the following lines to encapsulate the code that defines the behavior for the continuous sample hit:

```
if (ssIsContinuousTask(S,tid)) {  
}
```

### Example of Defining a Sample Time for a Continuous Block

This example defines a sample time for a block that is continuous.

```
/* Initialize the sample time and offset. */  
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)  
{  
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);  
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);  
}
```

You must add this statement to the `mdlInitializeSizes` function.

```
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
```

### Example of Defining a Sample Time for a Hybrid Block

This example defines sample times for a hybrid S-Function block.

```
/* Initialize the sample time and offset. */  
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)  
{  
    /* Continuous state sample time and offset. */  
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);  
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);  
  
    /* Discrete state sample time and offset. */  
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 1, 0.1);  
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 1, 0.025);  
}
```

In the second sample time, the offset causes the Simulink engine to call the `mdlUpdate` function at these times: 0.025 second, 0.125 second, 0.225 second, and so on, in increments of 0.1 second.

The following statement, which indicates how many sample times are defined, also appears in the `mdlInitializeSizes` function.

```
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 2);
```

## Multirate S-Functions and Sample Time Hit Calculations

For fixed-step solvers, Simulink uses integer arithmetic, rather than floating-point arithmetic, to calculate the sample time hits. Consequently, task times are integer multiples of their corresponding sample time periods.

This calculation method becomes important if you consider performing Boolean logic based upon task times in multirate S-functions. For example, consider an S-function that has two sample times. The fact that `(ssIsSampleHit(S, idx1) == true && ssIsSampleHit(S,idx2) == true)`, does not guarantee that `ssGetTaskTime(S, idx1) == ssGetTaskTime(S, idx2)`.

## Synchronizing Multirate S-Function Blocks

If tasks running at different rates need to share data, you must ensure that data generated by one task is valid when accessed by another task running at a different rate. You can use the `ssIsSpecialSampleHit` macro in the `mdlUpdate` or `mdlOutputs` routine of a multirate S-function to ensure that the shared data is valid. This macro returns `true` if a sample hit has occurred at one rate and a sample hit has also occurred at another rate in the same time step. It thus permits a higher rate task to provide data needed by a slower rate task at a rate the slower task can accommodate. When using the `ssIsSpecialSampleHit` macro, the slower sample time must be an integer multiple of the faster sample time.

Suppose, for example, that your model has an input port operating at one rate (with a sample time index of 0) and an output port operating at a slower rate (with a sample time index of 1). Further, suppose that you want the output port to output the value currently on the input. The following example illustrates usage of this macro.

```
if (ssIsSampleHit(S, 0, tid) {
    if (ssIsSpecialSampleHit(S, 0, 1, tid) {
        /* Transfer input to output memory. */
        ...
    }
}

if (ssIsSampleHit(S, 1, tid) {
    /* Emit output. */
    ...
}
```

In this example, the first block runs when a sample hit occurs at the input rate. If the hit also occurs at the output rate, the block transfers the input to the output memory. The second block runs when a sample hit occurs at the output rate. It transfers the output in its memory area to the block's output.

Note that higher-rate tasks always run before slower-rate tasks. Thus, the input task in the preceding example always runs before the output task, ensuring that valid data is always present at the output port.

## Specifying Model Reference Sample Time Inheritance

If your C MEX S-function inherits its sample times from the blocks that drive it, your S-function should specify whether referenced models containing your S-function can inherit sample times from their parent model. If the S-function output does not depend on its inherited sample time, use the `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeInheritanceRule` macro to set the S-function sample time inheritance rule to `USE_DEFAULT_FOR_DISCRETE_INHERITANCE`. Otherwise, set the rule to `DISALLOW_SAMPLE_TIME_INHERITANCE` to disallow sample-time inheritance for referenced models that include S-functions whose outputs depend on their inherited sample time and thereby avoid inadvertent simulation errors.

---

**Note** If your S-function does not set this flag, the Simulink engine assumes that it does not preclude a referenced model containing it from inheriting a sample time. However, the engine optionally warns you that the referenced model contains S-functions that do not specify a sample-time inheritance rule (see “Blocks Whose Outputs Depend on Inherited Sample Time”).

---

If you are uncertain whether an existing S-function output depends on its inherited sample time, check whether it invokes any of the following C macros:

- `ssGetSampleTime`
- `ssGetInputPortSampleTime`
- `ssGetOutputPortSampleTime`
- `ssGetInputPortOffsetTime`
- `ssGetOutputPortOffsetTime`
- `ssGetInputPortSampleTimeIndex`
- `ssGetOutputPortSampleTimeIndex`

or TLC functions:

- `LibBlockSampleTime`
- `CompiledModel.SampleTime`
- `LibBlockInputSignalSampleTime`
- `LibBlockInputSignalOffsetTime`
- `LibBlockOutputSignalSampleTime`
- `LibBlockOutputSignalOffsetTime`

If your S-function does not invoke any of these macros or functions, its output does not depend on its inherited sample time and hence it is safe to use in referenced models that inherit their sample time.

### **Sample-Time Inheritance Rule Example**

As an example of an S-function that precludes a referenced model from inheriting its sample time, consider an S-function that has the following `mdlOutputs` method:

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid) {
    const real_T *u = (const real_T*)
        ssGetInputPortSignal(S,0);
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortSignal(S,0);
    y[0] = ssGetSampleTime(S,tid) * u[0];
}
```

The output of this S-function is its inherited sample time, hence its output depends on its inherited sample time, and hence it is unsafe to use in a referenced model. For this reason, this S-function should specify its model reference inheritance rule as follows:

```
ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeInheritanceRule
(S, DISALLOW_SAMPLE_TIME_INHERITANCE);
```

### **See Also**

`ssSetSampleTime` | `ssGetSampleTime` | `ssSetInputPortSampleTime`

### **More About**

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Zero Crossings

S-functions model zero crossings using the mode work vector (or a DWork vector configured as a mode vector) and the continuous zero-crossing vector. Whether the S-function uses mode or DWork vectors, the concept and implementation are the same. For an example using DWork vectors to model zero crossings, see “DWork Mode Vector” on page 8-13 in the “Using Work Vectors” section. The remainder of this section uses mode vectors to model zero crossings.

Elements of the mode vector are integer values. You specify the number of mode vector elements in `mdlInitializeSizes`, using `ssSetNumModes(S, num)`. You can then access the mode vector using `ssGetModeVector`. The mode vector values determine how the `mdlOutputs` routine operates when the solvers are homing in on zero crossings. The Simulink solvers track the zero crossings or state events (i.e., discontinuities in the first derivatives) of some signal, usually a function of an input to your S-function, by looking at the continuous zero crossings. Register the number of continuous zero crossings in `mdlInitializeSizes`, using `ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, num)`, then include an `mdlZeroCrossings` routine to calculate the continuous zero crossings. The S-function `sfun_zc_sat.c` contains a zero-crossing example. The remainder of this section describes the portions of this S-function that pertain to zero-crossing detection. For a full description of this example, see “Zero-Crossing Detection” on page 9-73.

First, `mdlInitializeSizes` specifies the sizes for the mode and continuous zero-crossing vectors using the following lines of code.

```
ssSetNumModes(S, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
```

Since the number of modes and continuous zero crossings is dynamically sized, `mdlSetWorkWidths` must initialize the actual size of these vectors. In this example, shown below, there is one mode vector for each output element and two continuous zero crossings for each mode. In general, the number of continuous zero crossings needed for each mode depends on the number of events that need to be detected. In this case, each output (mode) needs to detect when it hits the upper or the lower bound, hence two continuous zero crossings per mode.

```
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
{
    int nModes;
    int nNonsampledZCs;

    nModes      = numOutput;
    nNonsampledZCs = 2 * numOutput;

    ssSetNumModes(S, nModes);
    ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, nNonsampledZCs);
}
```

Next, `mdlOutputs` determines which mode the simulation is running in at the beginning of each major time step. The method stores this information in the mode vector so it is available when calculating outputs at both major and minor time steps.

```
/* Get the mode vector */
int_T *mode = ssGetModeVector(S);

/* Specify three possible mode values.*/
enum { UpperLimitEquation, NonLimitEquation, LowerLimitEquation };

/* Update the mode vector at the beginning of a major time step */
if ( ssIsMajorTimeStep(S) ) {
```

```

for ( iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++ ) {
    if ( *uPtrs[uIdx] > *upperLimit ) {
        /* Upper limit is reached. */
        mode[iOutput] = UpperLimitEquation;
    } else if ( *uPtrs[uIdx] < *lowerLimit ) {
        /* Lower limit is reached. */
        mode[iOutput] = LowerLimitEquation;
    } else {
        /* Output is not limited. */
        mode[iOutput] = NonLimitEquation;
    }

    /* Adjust indices to give scalar expansion. */
    uIdx      += uInc;
    upperLimit += upperLimitInc;
    lowerLimit += lowerLimitInc;
}
/* Reset index to input and limits. */
uIdx      = 0;
upperLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
lowerLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );

} /* end IsMajorTimeStep */

```

Output calculations in `mdlOutputs` are done based on the values stored in the mode vector.

```

for ( iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++ ) {
    if ( mode[iOutput] == UpperLimitEquation ) {
        /* Output upper limit. */
        *y++ = *upperLimit;
    } else if ( mode[iOutput] == LowerLimitEquation ) {
        /* Output lower limit. */
        *y++ = *lowerLimit;
    } else {
        /* Output is equal to input */
        *y++ = *uPtrs[uIdx];
    }
}

```

After outputs are calculated, the Simulink engine calls `mdlZeroCrossings` to determine if a zero crossing has occurred. A zero crossing is detected if any element of the continuous zero-crossing vector switches from negative to positive, or positive to negative. If this occurs, the simulation modifies the step size and recalculates the outputs to try to locate the exact zero crossing. For this example, the values for the continuous zero-crossing vectors are calculated as shown below.

```

static void mdlZeroCrossings(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T      iOutput;
    int_T      numOutput = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);
    real_T     *zcSignals = ssGetNonsampledZCs(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs      = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /* Set index and increment for the input signal, upper limit, and lower
    * limit parameters so that each gives scalar expansion if needed. */
    int_T uIdx      = 0;
    int_T uInc      = ( ssGetInputPortWidth(S,0) > 1 );
    const real_T *upperLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
    int_T upperLimitInc = ( mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT ) > 1 );
    const real_T *lowerLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );
    int_T lowerLimitInc = ( mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT ) > 1 );

    /* Check if the input has crossed an upper or lower limit */
    for ( iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++ ) {
        zcSignals[2*iOutput] = *uPtrs[uIdx] - *upperLimit;
    }
}

```



```
zcSignals[2*iOutput+1] = *uPtrs[uIdx] - *lowerLimit;

/* Adjust indices to give scalar expansion if needed */
uIdx      += uInc;
upperLimit += upperLimitInc;
lowerLimit += lowerLimitInc;
    }
}
```

## See Also

ssGetNumNonsampledZCs

## More About

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## S-Function Compliance with the ModelOperatingPoint

### ModelOperatingPoint Compliance Specification for C MEX S-Functions

As with the MATLAB S-function, your C MEX S-function code must inform Simulink of the S-function compliance with the ModelOperatingPoint feature. You can accomplish this task by using the S-function API, `ssSetOperatingPointCompliance`.

In most cases, specifying the compliance to be default is sufficient to save and restore the necessary state data. To specify the default compliance, add this line:

```
ssSetOperatingPointCompliance(S, USE_DEFAULT_OPERATING_POINT);
```

The options are as follows:

Setting	Result
OPERATING_POINT_COMPLIANCE_UNKNOWN	This is the default setting for all S-functions. For S-functions that do not use PWorks, Simulink saves and restores the default simulation operating point (see USE_DEFAULT_OPERATING_POINT) and issues a warning to inform the user of this assumption. On the other hand, Simulink reports an error during the save and restore if it encounters an S-function that uses PWorks.
USE_DEFAULT_OPERATING_POINT	This setting instructs Simulink to treat the S-function like a built-in block when saving and restoring the ModelOperatingPoint object. This setting saves continuous states, non-scratch Dworks, and zero crossing signal information
USE_EMPTY_OPERATING_POINT	This setting informs Simulink that the S-function does not have any simulation state. With this setting, no state information is saved for this block. This setting is primarily useful for "sink" blocks (i.e., blocks with no output ports) that use PWorks or DWorks to store handles to files or figure windows.  <b>Note</b> This setting is not allowed if the S-function registers any discrete or continuous states or zero crossing signals.
DISALLOW_OPERATING_POINT	This setting informs Simulink that the S-function does not allow the saving or restoring of its operating point. Simulink reports an error if you try to save or restore the ModelOperatingPoint object of the model that contains this S-function. You can use this setting if the S-function communicates with a 3rd party library and state serialization is not possible.
USE_CUSTOM_OPERATING_POINT	This setting informs Simulink that the S-function has <code>mdlGetOperatingPoint</code> and <code>mdlSetOperatingPoint</code> methods.

For S-functions that use PWork vectors or static variables to hold data that Simulink updates during simulation, the S-function must use the custom `mdlGetOperatingPoint` and `mdlSetOperatingPoint` methods. The following statements demonstrate the proper format.

```
mxArray* mdlGetOperatingPoint(SimStruct* S)
void mdlSetOperatingPoint(SimStruct* S, const mxArray* inSS)
```

For an example of how to implement these methods, see “Custom Code and Hand Coded Blocks Using the S-function API”.

### **See Also**

`ssSetOperatingPointCompliance` | `ssSetOperatingPointVisibility` |  
`mdlGetOperatingPoint` | `mdlSetOperatingPoint` | `GetOperatingPoint` |  
`SetOperatingPoint`

### **More About**

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2
- “Use Model Operating Point for Faster Simulation Workflow”
- “Operating Point Behavior”

## MATLAB Data in C S-Functions

MATLAB data is represented as `mxArrays` in C/C++ language. The `mxArray` structure typically contains type, dimension, data, data type, sparsity, and the field and field numbers of the MATLAB array. In S-functions, “Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions” on page 9-2 values evaluated in MATLAB are transferred into Simulink as an `mxArray`. See “C Matrix API” for a list of functions.

S-functions read MATLAB data mainly for the following purposes:

- Access block dialog parameters using `mxArrays`
- Pass arguments to or from a MATLAB Function using `mexCallMATLAB`

### mxArray Manipulation

You can manipulate `mxArrays` in S-functions using the standard MATLAB API functions. In general, if your S-function is declared exception free by passing the `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE` option to `ssSetOptions` (see Exception Free Code on page 9-45 in “Handle Errors in S-Functions” on page 9-44), it should avoid MATLAB API functions that throw exceptions (i.e., long jump), such as `mxCreateDoubleMatrix`. Otherwise, the S-function can use any of the listed functions.

---

**Note** S-function parameters are read-only within the S-function algorithm. You can modify parameter values via the S-function block dialog or mask.

---

If you have Simulink Coder, it supports a subset of the `mxArray` manipulation functions when generating noninlined code for an S-function. For a list of supported functions, see “Write Noninlined S-Function” (Simulink Coder).

Calls to the macro `ssGetSFcnParam` return a pointer to an `mxArray`, which can be used with the `mxArray` manipulation functions. If your S-function contains S-function parameters, use the `mxArray` manipulation functions in the `mdlCheckParameters` method to check the S-function parameter values. See the S-function `sfun_runtime3.c` for an example

In this S-function, the following lines check that the first S-function parameter is a character array with a length greater than or equal to two.

```
if (!mxIsChar(ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0)) ||
    (nu=mxGetNumberOfElements(ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0)) < 2) {
    ssSetErrorStatus(S,"1st parameter to S-function must be a "
        "string of at least 2 '+' and '-' characters");
    return;
}
```

### mxArrays Using 32-bit APIs

To write C/C++ programs that work with MATLAB `mxArray` data structure, use C matrix APIs. C matrix APIs support 32-bit and 64-bit indexing. By default, your S-functions are built using 32-bit APIs. Check “Upgrade MEX Files to Use 64-Bit API” to see how to upgrade your existing MEX files.

To check the use of 32-bit APIs, you can run the S-function upgrade advisor. In the **Modeling** tab, select **Model Advisor > Upgrade Advisor**.

If you build your code with `-largeArrayDims` and your code populates the `ssParamRec` structure's dimension field with `mxArray` dimensions, starting R2018a, you can no longer cast the return value

of `mxGetDimensions` to an `int_T` pointer because `mxGetDimensions` now returns a `size_T` pointer on 64-bit platforms. As a workaround, create a temporary copy of type `int_T` and assign it to the `dims` field of `ssParamRec` structure.

Replace:	With:
<pre> ssParamRec p; p.dims = (int_T *) mxGetDimensions(ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0)); // Set up other fields of p if (!ssSetRunTimeParamInfo(S, 0, &amp;p)) {     free(dims);     return; } free(dims); // free memory allocated for dimensions </pre>	<pre> ssParamRec p; const mxArray* mxPrm = ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0); const mwSize* mxDims = mxGetDimensions(mxPrm); const mwSize mxNumDims = mxGetNumberOfDimensions(mxPrm); mwSize idx; int_T * dims = malloc(sizeof(int)*mxNumDims); for (idx=0; idx &lt; mxNumDims; idx++)     dims[idx] = mxDims[idx]; }  p.dims = dims; // Set up other fields of p  if (!ssSetRunTimeParamInfo(S, 0, &amp;p)) {     free(dims);     return; } free(dims); // free memory allocated for dimensions </pre>

## mxArrays Using Interleaved Complex Representation

Until MATLAB version 9.4 (R2018a), `mxArrays` used separate complex representation where the real and imaginary parts of a complex number were stored separately. Starting version 9.4 (R2018a), MATLAB uses interleaved representation to store complex data, where the real and imaginary parts of a complex numbers are stored together. For S-functions to manipulate `mxArrays`, there is no longer need to convert data from separate to interleaved complex. See “MATLAB Support for Interleaved Complex API in MEX Functions” for more information on how to update your code.

---

**Note** To store complex data for input and output signals or DWorks on page 8-2, Simulink uses interleaved representation.

---

To automatically check your S-functions on potential interleaved complex data issues, in the **Modeling** tab, select **Model Advisor > Upgrade Advisor**. In the Upgrade Advisor window, select **Check model for S-function upgrade issues**.

The following code sample copies a parameter value from an `mxArray` to the output of the S-function. In this example, the dimensions, data type, and the complexity of the parameter and the output argument are ensured to be the same. For example, if the parameter is complex, the output signal is complex. If the parameter is real, the output signal is real. For the example below, the data type of both the parameter and the output is a double (`real_T`). Before R2018a, you could use `mxGetPr` and `mxGetPi` to copy the real and imaginary parts of a complex data separately. With interleaved complex representation, you can use `memcpy`, which is a single copy instruction.

Replace:	With:
<pre> real_T      *y      = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0); boolean_T   yIsComplex = ssGetOutputPortComplexSignal(S,yIsComplex); int_T       yWidth  = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);  const real_T *pr     = mxGetPr(ssGetSFcnParam(S,0)); const real_T *pi     = mxGetPi(ssGetSFcnParam(S,0));  int          i;  for (i = 0; i &lt; yWidth; i++) {     int_T idx = (yIsComplex) ? 2*i : i;     y[idx] = pr[idx];      if(yIsComplex){         y[idx+1] = pi[idx];     } } </pre>	<pre> real_T      *y      = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0); boolean_T   yIsComplex = ssGetOutputPortComplexSignal(S,yIsComplex); int_T       yWidth  = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);  const real_T *pr     = mxGetPr(ssGetSFcnParam(S,0)); const real_T *pi     = mxGetPi(ssGetSFcnParam(S,0));  int          i;  if (yIsComplex) {     pc = mxGetComplexDoubles(ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0));     memcpy(y, pc, yWidth*sizeof(mxComplexDouble)); } else {     pr = mxGetDoubles(ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0));     memcpy(y, pr, yWidth*sizeof(mxDouble)); } </pre>

<sup>a</sup> sizeof(mxComplexDouble)=2\*sizeof(mxDouble)=2\*sizeof(real\_T)

## See Also

S-Function | S-Function Builder

## More About

- “MATLAB Support for 64-Bit Indexing”
- “MATLAB Support for Interleaved Complex API in MEX Functions”
- “Upgrade MEX Files to Use Interleaved Complex API”

## Implement Function-Call Subsystems with S-Functions

You can create a triggered subsystem whose execution is determined by logic internal to a C MEX S-function instead of by the value of a signal. A subsystem so configured is called a *function-call subsystem*. To implement a function-call subsystem:

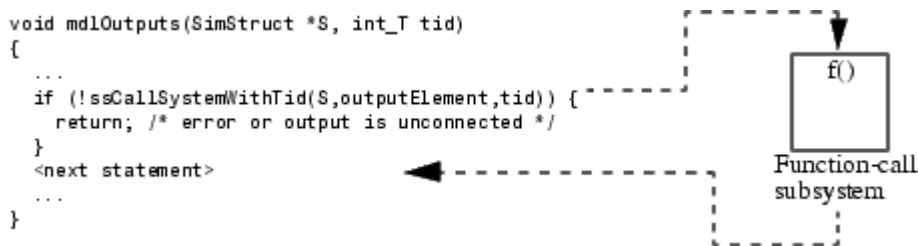
- In the Trigger block, select **function-call** as the **Trigger type** parameter.
- In the S-function, use the `ssEnableSystemWithTid` and `ssDisableSystemWithTid` to enable or disable the triggered subsystem and the `ssCallSystemWithTid` macro to call the triggered subsystem.
- In the model, connect the S-Function block output directly to the trigger port.

---

**Note** Function-call connections can only be performed on the first output port.

---

Function-call subsystems are not executed directly by the Simulink engine; rather, the S-function determines when to execute the subsystem. When the subsystem completes execution, control returns to the S-function. This figure illustrates the interaction between a function-call subsystem and an S-function.



In this figure, `ssCallSystemWithTid` executes the function-call subsystem that is connected to the first output port element. `ssCallSystemWithTid` returns 0 if an error occurs while executing the function-call subsystem or if the output is unconnected. After the function-call subsystem executes, control is returned to your S-function.

Function-call subsystems can only be connected to S-functions that have been properly configured to accept them.

To configure an S-function to call a function-call subsystem:

- In `mdlInitializeSizes`, set the data type of the S-function first output port to function-call by specifying

```
ssSetOutputPortDataType(S, 0, SS_FCN_CALL);
```

- Specify the elements that are to execute the function-call subsystem in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`. For example:

```
ssSetCallSystemOutput(S,0); /* call on first element */
ssSetCallSystemOutput(S,1); /* call on second element */
```

- Specify in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` whether you want the S-function to be able to enable or disable the function-call subsystem. Only S-functions that explicitly enable and disable the function-call subsystem can reset the states and outputs of the subsystem, as determined by the function-call subsystem's Trigger and Outport blocks. For example, the code

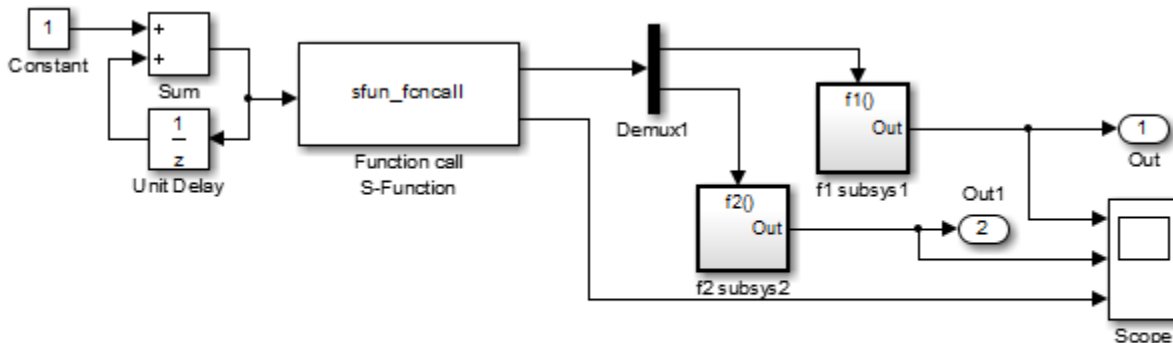
```
ssSetExplicitFCSSCtrl(S, 1);
```

in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies that the S-function can enable and disable the function-call subsystem. In this case, the S-function must invoke `ssEnableSystemWithTid` before executing the subsystem using `ssCallSystemWithTid`.

- Execute the subsystem in the appropriate `mdlOutputs` or `mdlUpdate` S-function routine. For example:

```
static void mdlOutputs(...)
{
    if (((int)*uPtrs[0]) % 2 == 1) {
        if (!ssCallSystemWithTid(S,0,tid)) {
            /* Error occurred, which will be reported by */
            /*the Simulink engine*/
            return;
        }
    } else {
        if (!ssCallSystemWithTid(S,1,tid)) {
            /* Error occurred, which will be reported by */
            /*the Simulink engine*/
            return;
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

See `sfun_fcncall.c` for an example that executes a function-call subsystem on the first and second elements of the first S-function output. The following Simulink model (`sfcndemo_sfun_fcncall`) uses this S-function.

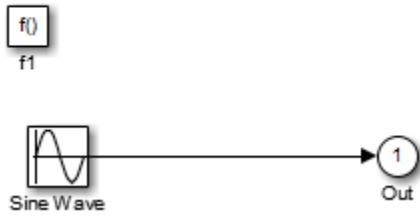


`matlabroot\toolbox\simulink\simdemos\simfeatures\src\sfun_fcncall.c`

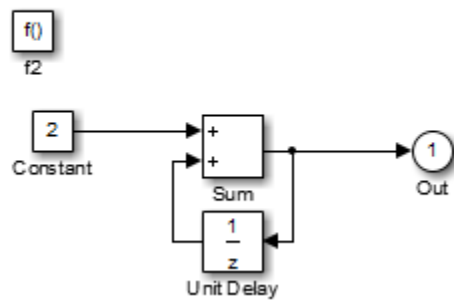
The first function-call subsystem provides a sine wave output. The second function-call subsystem is a simple feedback loop containing a Unit Delay block.



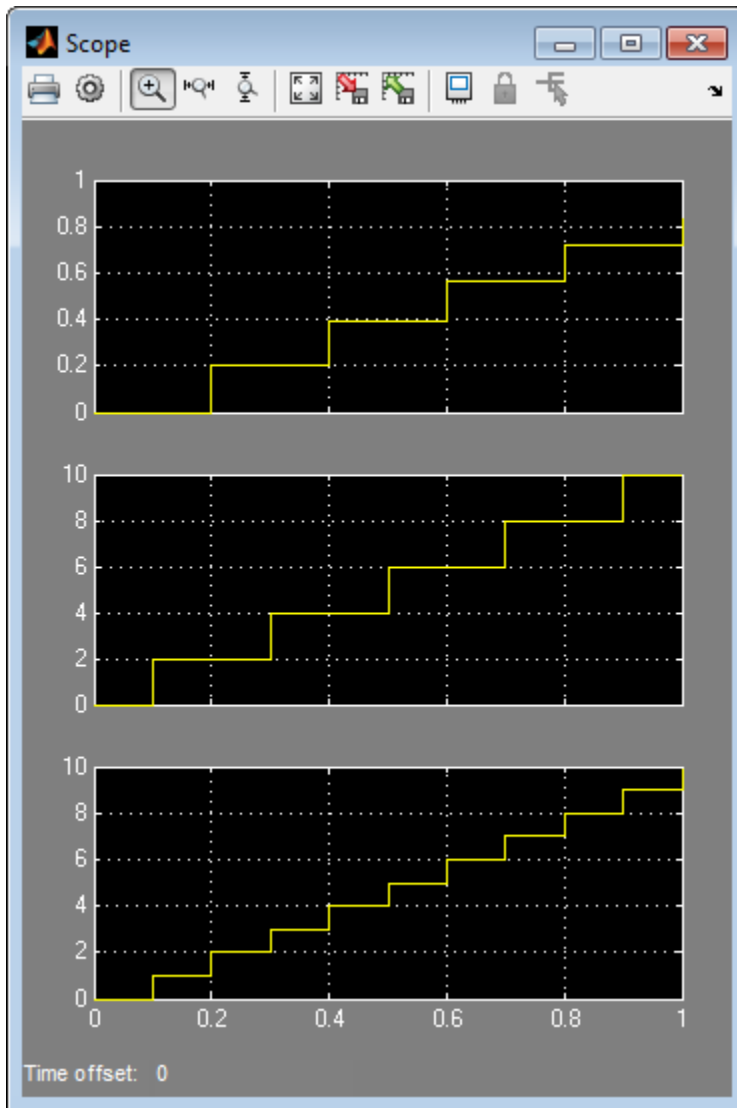
sfcndemo\_sfunsfun\_fcncall ▶ f1 subsystem1



sfcndemo\_sfunsfun\_fcncall ▶ f2 subsystem2



When the Pulse Generator emits its upper value, the function-call subsystem connected to the first element of the first S-function output port is triggered. Similarly, when the Pulse Generator emits its lower value, the function-call subsystem connected to the second element is triggered. The simulation output is shown on the following Scope.



Function-call subsystems are a powerful modeling construct. You can configure Stateflow blocks to execute function-call subsystems, thereby extending the capabilities of the blocks. For more information, see the Stateflow documentation.

### See Also

[ssEnableSystemWithTid](#) | [ssDisableSystemWithTid](#) | [ssCallSystemWithTid](#)

### More About

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Use C/C++ S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode

A sim viewing device encapsulates processing and viewing of signals received from the target system in external mode. During simulation in external mode, the target system uploads the appropriate input values to the sim viewing device in the Simulink model. The sim viewing device then conditions the input signals as needed and renders the signals on the screen. A sim viewing device runs only on the host, generating no code in the target system and, therefore, allowing extra processing of displayed signals without burdening the generated code. You can use your S-function as a sim viewing device in external mode if it satisfies the following conditions.

- The S-function has no output ports.
- The S-function contains no states.
- The generated code does not require the conditioned signals produced by the S-function.

To specify a C MEX S-function as a sim viewing device, set the `SS_OPTION_SIM_VIEWING_DEVICE` option in the `mdlInitializeSizes` function. For example

```
ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_SIM_VIEWING_DEVICE);
```

When simulating a model in Rapid Accelerator mode with signal logging enabled, no data is logged for antenna elements or To Workspace blocks that are inside of a sim viewing device.

External mode compatible S-functions are selected, and the trigger is armed, by using the External Signal & Triggering dialog box. For more information see “External Mode Simulation with TCP/IP or Serial Communication” (Simulink Coder).

### See Also

`mdlInitializeSizes`

### More About

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Handle Errors in S-Functions

### In this section...

“About Handling Errors” on page 9-44

“Exception Free Code” on page 9-45

“ssSetErrorStatus Termination Criteria” on page 9-45

“Checking Array Bounds” on page 9-46

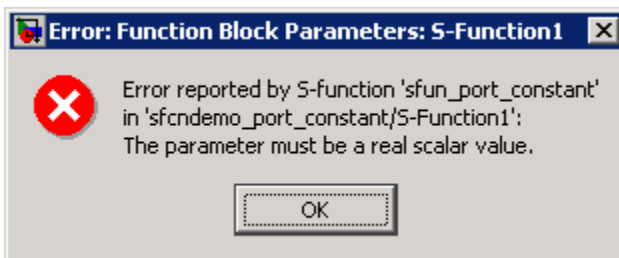
### About Handling Errors

When working with S-functions, it is important to handle unexpected events such as invalid parameter values correctly.

If your C MEX S-function has parameters whose contents you need to validate, use the following technique to report errors.

```
ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Error encountered due to ...");
return;
```

In most cases, the Simulink engine displays errors in the Diagnostic Viewer. If the error is encountered in `mdlCheckParameters` as the S-function parameters are being entered into the block dialog, the engine opens the error dialog shown below. In either case, the engine displays the error message along with the name of the S-function and the associated S-function block that invoked the error.



The second argument to `ssSetErrorStatus` must be persistent memory. It cannot be a local variable in your function. For example, the following causes unpredictable errors.

```
mdlOutputs()
{
    char msg[256]; /* ILLEGAL: should be "static char */
                  /*msg[256];"*/
    sprintf(msg,"Error due to %s", string);
    ssSetErrorStatus(S,msg);
    return;
}
```

Because `ssSetErrorStatus` does not generate exceptions, using it to report errors in your S-function is preferable to using `mexErrMsgTxt`. The `mexErrMsgTxt` function uses exception handling to terminate S-function execution. To support exception handling in S-functions, the Simulink engine must set up exception handlers prior to each S-function invocation. This introduces overhead into simulation.

## Exception Free Code

You can avoid simulation overhead by ensuring that your C MEX S-function contains entirely *exception free code*. Exception free code refers to code that never long-jumps. Your S-function is not exception free if it contains any routine that, when called, has the potential of long-jumping. For example, `mxErMsgTxt` throws an exception (i.e., long-jumps) when called, thus ending execution of your S-function. Using `mxCalloc` can cause unpredictable results in the event of a memory allocation error, because `mxCalloc` long-jumps. If memory allocation is needed, use the `stdlib.h` `calloc` routine directly and perform your own error handling.

If you do not call `mxErMsgTxt` or other API routines that cause exceptions, use the `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE` S-function option. You do this by issuing the following command in the `mdlInitializeSizes` function.

```
ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
```

Setting this option increases the performance of your S-function by allowing the Simulink engine to bypass the exception-handling setup that is usually performed prior to each S-function invocation. You must take extreme care to verify that your code is exception free when using `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE`. If your S-function generates an exception when this option is set, unpredictable results occur.

All `mex*` routines have the potential of long-jumping. Several `mex*` routines also have the potential of long-jumping. To avoid any difficulties, use only the API routines that retrieve a pointer or determine the size of parameters. For example, the following API routines never throw an exception: `mxGetPr`, `mxGetData`, `mxGetNumberOfDimensions`, `mxGetM`, `mxGetN`, and `mxGetNumberOfElements`.

Code in *run-time routines* can also throw exceptions. Run-time routines refer to certain S-function routines that the engine calls during the simulation loop (see “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52). The run-time routines include

- `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit`
- `mdlOutputs`
- `mdlUpdate`
- `mdlDerivatives`

If all run-time routines within your S-function are exception free, you can use this option:

```
ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_RUNTIME_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
```

The other routines in your S-function do not have to be exception free.

## ssSetErrorStatus Termination Criteria

If one of your C MEX S-function callback methods invokes `ssSetErrorStatus` during a simulation, the Simulink engine posts the error and terminates the simulation as soon as the callback method returns. If your S-function `SS_OPTION_CALL_TERMINATE_ON_EXIT` option is enabled (see `ssSetOptions`), The engine invokes your S-function `mdlTerminate` method as part of the termination process. Otherwise, the engine invokes your S-function `mdlTerminate` method only if at least one block `mdlStart` method has executed without error during the simulation.

`ssSetErrorStatus` is not thread-safe. The function can overwrite existing errors or report inaccurate errors. In parallel executions, use `ssSetLocalErrorStatus` to ensure thread-safe execution.

## Checking Array Bounds

If your C MEX S-function causes otherwise inexplicable errors, the reason might be that the S-function is writing beyond its assigned areas in memory. You can verify this possibility by enabling the array bounds checking feature. This feature detects any attempt by an S-Function block to write beyond the areas assigned to it for the following types of block data:

- Work vectors (R, I, P, D, and mode)
- States (continuous and discrete)
- Outputs

To enable array bounds checking, select **warning** or **error** from the **Array bounds exceeded** options list on the **Configuration Parameters** dialog box. Alternatively, enter the following command at the MATLAB command prompt.

```
set_param(modelName, 'ArrayBoundsChecking', ValueStr)
```

where *modelName* is the name of the Simulink model and *ValueStr* is either 'none', 'warning', or 'error'.

## See Also

`mdlInitializeSizes` | `ssSetErrorStatus`

## More About

- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

## Guidelines for Writing Thread-Safe S-Functions

Simulink lets you run S-functions in parallel with multithreaded programming, which makes simulations run more quickly than serial runs. Multithreaded programming with S-functions requires you to make S-functions thread-safe. Creating thread-safe code involves ensuring that data shared between multiple threads is protected so that data and results are as expected. Simulation with S-functions that are not thread-safe might cause unexpected behavior.

### Background

C/C++ S-functions are implemented in C or C++ and built into shared libraries known as MEX files. When an S-function block refers to a shared library, MATLAB loads the S-function block into the process. When multiple S-function blocks refer to the same shared library, they also refer to the initial shared library copy. This process results in multiple S-function blocks sharing the same data owned by the shared library. Thus, multithreaded S-function blocks access the same data at the same time.

In addition, if these S-functions refer to the same resources, multithreaded S-function blocks can access the same resources (such as files) at the same time, even when the S-function blocks are associated with different S-functions.

### Guidelines

An S-function is generally considered thread-safe when it can safely execute concurrently using multiple threads. To designate an S-function as thread-safe, use the `ssSetRuntimeThreadSafetyCompliance` function. If you are not sure about the thread-safety of your S-function, use these guidelines to investigate and make it thread-safe.

#### Data Share

Definition	Problem	Solution
S-function refers to data using pointers (for example, <code>ssSetUserData</code> , <code>ssGetUserData</code> , <code>ssSetPWorkValue</code> and <code>ssGetPWorkValue</code> ). An S-function easily shares data using these pointers.	Multiple threads can use pointers to access the same data. If the threads try to write to the same memory location at the same time, they violate thread-safety. Concurrent reads from multiple threads are safe as long as there are no writes before, during, or after the reads, which can cause incoherent caches.	Be cautious when accessing data shared by multiple threads. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the data constant if it is read-only.</li> <li>• To control access to data, consider using mutexes. Mutexes can also ensure cache coherence.</li> </ul>

**Global Variables**

Definition	Problem	Solution
Global variables are shared data accessible throughout an application.	Multiple threads writing to non-protected shared data is not safe. Reading is safe as long as there are no writes before, during, or after the reads, which can cause incoherent caches.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are writing to global data, localize it, control access to it using mutexes, or change the semantics of your algorithm. To ensure cache coherence, also consider using memory fences such as atomic or mutex.</li> <li>• If you are reading, make your global variable constant.</li> </ul>

**Local Static Variables Initialization**

Definition	Problem	Solution
<p>Local static variables are stored in one location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In C++, local static variables are initialized upon entering the function scope and are not thread-safe.</li> <li>• In C, local static variables are initialized at the start of the application as long as the value on the right of the assignment (the value being assigned into the variable) is compile-time constant. These variables are thread-safe.</li> </ul>	If multiple threads enter the function scope at the same time, the software makes multiple attempts to write to the same location. This issue holds even if the local static variable is constant.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are using a C++ version prior to C++11, protect the initialization of local static variable using a mutex or thread-safe initialization mechanism, such as <code>std::call_once</code> or <code>boost::call_once</code>.</li> <li>• If you are using C++11 or later, local static variable initialization is guaranteed to be thread-safe.</li> </ul>

**Resources**

Definition	Problem	Solution
Resources are entities that are explicitly requested from and returned to the system. Some examples of resources include dynamically allocated memory, files, database connections, and network sockets. Your application might need to manage resources.	Accessing resources from multiple threads might not be thread-safe, such as reading and writing to a file from multiple threads. Even if these operations are thread-safe, they might not produce the expected results.	Be cautious when managing a resource. Thread-safety of a resource depends on its implementation. For more information about thread-safety specifications, see the resource documentation. Optionally, you can guard access to the resource using a mechanism such as a mutex.



**Reentrancy**

Definition	Problem	Solution
A function is reentrant if it is safe to call multiple times from the same thread (recursively) . For example, the <code>strtok</code> function is not reentrant because it keeps some internal state of the string to be tokenized. A function is reentrant if it does not call nonreentrant functions.	Calling a nonreentrant function from multiple threads might not be safe.	Make your function reentrant. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eliminate the states the function holds.</li> <li>Replace nonreentrant functions calls with reentrant equivalents. For example, replace <code>strtok</code> with <code>strtok_r</code>.</li> </ul>

**mexCallMATLAB**

Definition	Problem	Solution
An S-function might call MATLAB using the <code>mexCallMATLAB</code> function.	Simulink code that handles <code>mexCallMATLAB</code> functionality is not thread-safe.	Do not call <code>mexCallMATLAB</code> in your S-function.

**Exception Free Code**

Definition	Problem	Solution
An S-function is exception free as long as none of its subroutines, when called, has the potential of long jumping. For more information about exception free S-functions, see "Exception Free Code" on page 9-45.	When an S-function is not exception free, its subroutines are indirectly called through <code>mexCallMATLAB</code> , which is not thread-safe (see <code>mexCallMATLAB</code> ).	Examine your S-function for long jumps. If there are none, mark the S-function as exception free using the <code>ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE)</code> function. If the S-function long jumps despite this flag, unpredictable behavior occurs.  If an S-function throws an exception but uses a try/catch block to catch the exception, that S-function is safe.

**Data Race**

Definition	Problem	Solution
Data race occurs when the output of your application depends on the order of execution such that the behavior of your application changes between executions.	The application might have unexpected behavior.	Consider one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Revise your algorithm to eliminate data races.</li> <li>Use locks to control the order of execution in critical parts of your code, or make critical operations atomic.</li> </ul>

**Volatile**

Definition	Problem	Solution
The <code>volatile</code> keyword tells the compiler not to optimize a variable because its value might be changed by some mechanism that the compiler is not aware of.	Applications might mistakenly use <code>volatile</code> to achieve thread-safety. <code>volatile</code> does not provide atomicity or synchronization among threads.	Do not use the <code>volatile</code> keyword for thread-safety.

**Error Status**

Definition	Problem	Solution
S-functions use <code>ssSetErrorStatus</code> , <code>ssGetErrorStatus</code> , <code>ssSetLocalErrorStatus</code> , and <code>ssGetLocalErrorStatus</code> to access error status.	<code>ssSetErrorStatus</code> and <code>ssGetErrorStatus</code> are not thread-safe. These functions can overwrite existing errors and cause reporting of inaccurate errors. For example, Block A might report the error thrown by Block B.	Use the thread-safe <code>ssSetLocalErrorStatus</code> , and <code>ssGetLocalErrorStatus</code> functions. Do not use <code>ssSetErrorStatus</code> and <code>ssGetErrorStatus</code> .

**See Also**

`ssSetLocalErrorStatus` | `ssGetLocalErrorStatus`

**More About**

- “Exception Free Code” on page 9-45
- “Run Co-Simulation Components on Multiple Cores”

## C MEX S-Function Examples

### In this section...

“About S-Function Examples” on page 9-51  
 “Continuous States” on page 9-51  
 “Discrete States” on page 9-55  
 “Continuous and Discrete States” on page 9-59  
 “Variable Sample Time” on page 9-63  
 “Array Inputs and Outputs” on page 9-67  
 “Zero-Crossing Detection” on page 9-73  
 “Discontinuities in Continuous States” on page 9-83

### About S-Function Examples

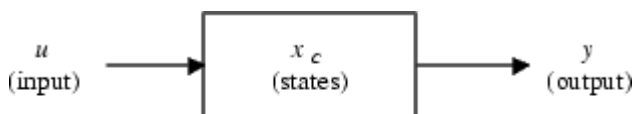
All examples are based on the C MEX S-function templates `sfuntmpl_basic.c` and `sfuntmpl_doc.c`. Open `sfuntmpl_doc.c` for a detailed discussion of the S-function template.

### Continuous States

The `csfunc.c` example shows how to model a continuous system with states using a C MEX S-function. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfcdemo_csfunc`

In continuous state integration, the Simulink solvers integrate a set of continuous states using the following equations.



$$y = f_0(t, x_c, u) \quad (\text{output})$$

$$\dot{x}_c = f_d(t, x_c, u) \quad (\text{derivative})$$

S-functions that contain continuous states implement a state-space equation. The `mdlOutputs` method contains the output portion and `mdlDerivatives` method contains the derivative portion of the state-space equation. To visualize how the integration works, see the flowchart in “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52. The output equation corresponds to the `mdlOutputs` in the major time step. Next, the example enters the integration section of the flowchart. Here the Simulink engine performs a number of minor time steps during which it calls `mdlOutputs` and `mdlDerivatives`. Each of these pairs of calls is referred to as an *integration stage*. The integration returns with the continuous states updated and the simulation time moved forward. Time is moved forward as far as possible, providing that error tolerances in the state are met. The maximum time step is subject to constraints of discrete events such as the actual simulation stop time and the user-imposed limit.

The `csfunc.c` example specifies that the input port has direct feedthrough. This is because matrix `D` is initialized to a nonzero matrix. If `D` is set equal to a zero matrix in the state-space representation,

the input signal is not used in `mdlOutputs`. In this case, the direct feedthrough can be set to `0`, which indicates that `csfunc.c` does not require the input signal when executing `mdlOutputs`.

### **matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/csfunc.c**

The S-function `csfunc.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, and a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function can include or define any other necessary headers, data, etc. The `csfunc.c` example defines the variable `U` as a pointer to the first input port's signal and initializes static variables for the state-space matrices.

```

/* File      : csfunc.c
 * Abstract:
 *
 *      Example C S-function for defining a continuous system.
 *
 *      x' = Ax + Bu
 *      y  = Cx + Du
 *
 *      For more details about S-functions, see simulink/src/sfunmpl_doc.c.
 *
 *      Copyright 1990-2013 The MathWorks, Inc.
 */

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME csfunc
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

#define U(element) (*uPtrs[element]) /* Pointer to Input Port0 */

static real_T A[2][2]={ { -0.09, -0.01 } ,
                       { 1 , 0 }
                       };

static real_T B[2][2]={ { 1 , -7 } ,
                       { 0 , -2 }
                       };

static real_T C[2][2]={ { 0 , 2 } ,
                       { 1 , -5 }
                       };

static real_T D[2][2]={ { -3 , 0 } ,
                       { 1 , 0 }
                       };

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` then sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to zero.
- `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user actually entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters does not match the number returned by `ssGetNumSFcnParams`, the S-function errors out.
- If the S-function parameter count passes, `mdlInitializeSizes` sets the number of continuous and discrete states using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`, respectively. This example has two continuous states and zero discrete states.
- Next, the method configures the S-function to have a single input and output port, each with a width of two to match the dimensions of the state-space matrices. The method passes a value of `1` to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough` to indicate the input port has direct feedthrough.
- `ssSetNumSampleTimes` initializes one sample time, which the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` function configures later.
- The S-function indicates that no work vectors are used by passing a value of `0` to `ssSetNumRWork`, `ssSetNumIWork`, etc. You can omit these lines because zero is the default value for all of these macros. However, for clarity, the S-function explicitly sets the number of work vectors.

- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets any applicable options. In this case, the only option is `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE`, which stipulates that the code is exception free.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function for this example is shown below.

```

/*=====
 * S-function methods *
 *=====*/

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Determine the S-function block's characteristics:
 *   number of inputs, outputs, states, etc.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0); /* Number of expected parameters */
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }

    ssSetNumContStates(S, 2);
    ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 0);

    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

    if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);

    ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
    ssSetNumRWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumIWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);
    ssSetNumModes(S, 0);
    ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);

    /* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl_doc.c */
    ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
}

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function sample rates. The value `CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME` passed to the `ssSetSampleTime` macro specifies that the first S-function sample rate be continuous. `ssSetOffsetTime` then specifies an offset time of zero for this sample rate. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Specify that we have a continuous sample time.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
}

```

The optional S-function method `mdlInitializeConditions` initializes the continuous state vector. The `#define` statement before this method is required for the Simulink engine to call this function. In the example below, `ssGetContStates` obtains a pointer to the continuous state vector. The `for` loop then initializes each state to zero.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====

```

```

* Abstract:
*   Initialize both continuous states to zero.
*/
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x0 = ssGetContStates(S);
    int_T lp;

    for (lp=0;lp<2;lp++) {
        *x0++=0.0;
    }
}

```

The required `mdlOutputs` function computes the output signal of this S-function. The beginning of the function obtains pointers to the first output port, continuous states, and first input port. The S-function uses the data in these arrays to solve the output equation  $y=Cx+Du$ .

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
* Abstract:
*   y = Cx + Du
*/
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T      *y   = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    real_T      *x   = ssGetContStates(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /* y=Cx+Du */
    y[0]=C[0][0]*x[0]+C[0][1]*x[1]+D[0][0]*U(0)+D[0][1]*U(1);
    y[1]=C[1][0]*x[0]+C[1][1]*x[1]+D[1][0]*U(0)+D[1][1]*U(1);
}

```

The `mdlDerivatives` function calculates the continuous state derivatives. Because this function is an optional method, a `#define` statement must precede the function. The beginning of the function obtains pointers to the S-function continuous states, state derivatives, and first input port. The S-function uses this data to solve the equation  $dx=Ax+Bu$ .

```

#define MDL_DERIVATIVES
/* Function: mdlDerivatives =====
* Abstract:
*   xdot = Ax + Bu
*/
static void mdlDerivatives(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T      *dx  = ssGetdX(S);
    real_T      *x   = ssGetContStates(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /* xdot=Ax+Bu */
    dx[0]=A[0][0]*x[0]+A[0][1]*x[1]+B[0][0]*U(0)+B[0][1]*U(1);
    dx[1]=A[1][0]*x[0]+A[1][1]*x[1]+B[1][0]*U(0)+B[1][1]*U(1);
}

```

The required `mdlTerminate` function performs any actions, such as freeing memory, necessary at the end of the simulation. In this example, the function is empty.

```

/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
* Abstract:
*   No termination needed, but we are required to have this routine.
*/
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(S); /* unused input argument */
}

```

The required S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation, as follows.

```

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfund.h" /* Code generation registration function */
#endif

```

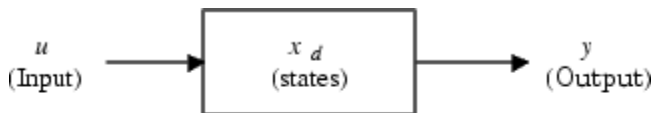
**Note** The `mdlOutputs` and `mdlTerminate` functions use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro to indicate that an input argument the callback requires is not used. This optional macro is defined in `simstruc_types.h`. If used, you must call this macro once for each input argument that a callback does not use.

## Discrete States

The `dsfunc.c` example shows how to model a discrete system in a C MEX S-function. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfcn_demo_dsfunc`

Discrete systems can be modeled by the following set of equations.



$$y = f_0(t, x_d, u) \quad (\text{Output})$$

$$x_{d+1} = f_u(t, x_d, u) \quad (\text{Update})$$

The `dsfunc.c` example implements a discrete state-space equation. The `mdlOutputs` method contains the output portion and the `mdlUpdate` method contains the update portion of the discrete state-space equation. To visualize how the simulation works, see the flowchart in “Simulink Engine Interaction with C S-Functions” on page 4-52. The output equation above corresponds to the `mdlOutputs` in the major time step. The preceding update equation corresponds to the `mdlUpdate` in the major time step. If your model does not contain continuous elements, the Simulink engine skips the integration phase and time is moved forward to the next discrete sample hit.

### `matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/dsfunc.c`

The S-function `dsfunc.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, along with a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function can include or define any other necessary headers, data, etc. The `dsfunc.c` example defines `U` as a pointer to the first input port's signal and initializes static variables for the state-space matrices.

```

/* File      : dsfunc.c
 * Abstract:
 *
 *      Example C S-function for defining a discrete system.
 *
 *      x(n+1) = Ax(n) + Bu(n)
 *      y(n)   = Cx(n) + Du(n)
 *
 *      For more details about S-functions, see simulink/src/sfuntmpl_doc.c.
 *
 * Copyright 1990-2013 The MathWorks, Inc.
 */

```

```
#define S_FUNCTION_NAME dsfunc
```

```

#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

#define U(element) (*uPtrs[element]) /* Pointer to Input Port0 */

static real_T A[2][2]={ { -1.3839, -0.5097 } ,
                       { 1      , 0      }
                       };

static real_T B[2][2]={ { -2.5559, 0      } ,
                       { 0      , 4.2382 }
                       };

static real_T C[2][2]={ { 0      , 2.0761 } ,
                       { 0      , 7.7891 }
                       };

static real_T D[2][2]={ { -0.8141, -2.9334 } ,
                       { 1.2426, 0      }
                       };

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` then sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to zero.
- `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user actually entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters does not match the number returned by `ssSetNumSFcnParams`, the S-function errors out.
- If the S-function parameter count passes, `mdlInitializeSizes` next sets the number of continuous and discrete states using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`, respectively. This example has zero continuous states and two discrete states.
- Next, the method configures the S-function to have a single input and output port, each with a width of two to match the dimensions of the state-space matrices. The method passes a value of 1 to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough` to indicate the input port has direct feedthrough.
- `ssSetNumSampleTimes` initializes one sample time, which the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` function configures later.
- The S-function indicates that no work vectors are used by passing a value of 0 to `ssSetNumRWork`, `ssSetNumIWork`, etc. You can omit these lines because zero is the default value for all of these macros. However, for clarity, the S-function explicitly sets the number of work vectors.
- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets any applicable options. In this case, the only option is `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE`, which stipulates that the code is exception free.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function for this example is shown below.

```

/*=====
 * S-function methods *
 *=====*/

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
 * Abstract:
 * Determine the S-function block's characteristics:
 * number of inputs, outputs, states, etc.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0); /* Number of expected parameters */
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }
}

```



```

ssSetNumContStates(S, 0);
ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 2);

if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);
ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);

ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
ssSetNumRWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumIWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumModes(S, 0);
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);

/* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl_doc.c */
ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
}

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function sample rates. A call to `ssSetSampleTime` sets this first S-function sample period to 1.0. `ssSetOffsetTime` then specifies an offset time of zero for the first sample rate. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Specify a sample time of 1.0.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, 1.0);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
}

```

The optional S-function method `mdlInitializeConditions` initializes the discrete state vector. The `#define` statement before this method is required for the Simulink engine to call this function. In the example below, `ssGetRealDiscStates` obtains a pointer to the discrete state vector. The `for` loop then initializes each discrete state to one.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize both discrete states to one.
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x0 = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
    int_T lp;

    for (lp=0;lp<2;lp++) {
        *x0++=1.0;
    }
}

```

The required `mdlOutputs` function computes the output signal of this S-function. The beginning of the function obtains pointers to the first output port, discrete states, and first input port. The S-function uses the data in these arrays to solve the output equation  $y=Cx+Du$ .

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   y = Cx + Du

```

```

*/
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T      *y      = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    real_T      *x      = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /* y=Cx+Du */
    y[0]=C[0][0]*x[0]+C[0][1]*x[1]+D[0][0]*U(0)+D[0][1]*U(1);
    y[1]=C[1][0]*x[0]+C[1][1]*x[1]+D[1][0]*U(0)+D[1][1]*U(1);
}

```

The Simulink engine calls the `mdlUpdate` function once every major integration time step to update the discrete states' values. Because this function is an optional method, a `#define` statement must precede the function. The beginning of the function obtains pointers to the S-function discrete states and first input port. The S-function uses the data in these arrays to solve the equation  $\dot{x}=Ax+Bu$ , which is stored in the temporary variable `tempX` before being assigned into the discrete state vector `x`.

```

#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
 * Abstract:
 *      xdot = Ax + Bu
 */
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T      tempX[2] = {0.0, 0.0};
    real_T      *x      = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /* xdot=Ax+Bu */
    tempX[0]=A[0][0]*x[0]+A[0][1]*x[1]+B[0][0]*U(0)+B[0][1]*U(1);
    tempX[1]=A[1][0]*x[0]+A[1][1]*x[1]+B[1][0]*U(0)+B[1][1]*U(1);

    x[0]=tempX[0];
    x[1]=tempX[1];
}

```

The required `mdlTerminate` function performs any actions, such as freeing memory, necessary at the end of the simulation. In this example, the function is empty.

```

/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:
 *      No termination needed, but we are required to have this routine.
 */
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(S); /* unused input argument */
}

```

The required S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation, as follows.

```

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h" /* Code generation registration function */
#endif

```

**Note** The `mdlOutputs` and `mdlTerminate` functions use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro to indicate that an input argument the callback requires is not used. This optional macro is defined in

`simstruc_types.h`. If used, you must call this macro once for each input argument that a callback does not use.

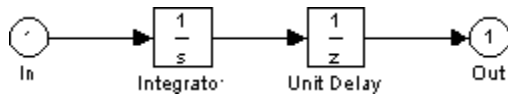
## Continuous and Discrete States

The `mixedm.c` example shows a hybrid (a combination of continuous and discrete states) system. The `mixedm.c` example combines elements of `csfunc.c` and `dsfunc.c`. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfcdemo_mixedm`

If you have a hybrid system, the `mdlDerivatives` method calculates the derivatives of the continuous states of the state vector,  $x$ , and the `mdlUpdate` method contains the equations used to update the discrete state vector,  $xD$ . The `mdlOutputs` method computes the S-function outputs after checking for sample hits to determine at what point the S-function is being called.

In Simulink block diagram form, the S-function `mixedm.c` looks like



which implements a continuous integrator followed by a discrete unit delay.

### `matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/mixedm.c`

The S-function `mixedm.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, along with a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function can include or define any other necessary headers, data, etc. The `mixedm.c` example defines `U` as a pointer to the first input port's signal.

```

/* File      : mixedm.c
 * Abstract:
 *
 *      An example S-function illustrating multiple sample times by implementing
 *      integrator -> ZOH(Ts=1second) -> UnitDelay(Ts=1second)
 *      with an initial condition of 1.
 *      (e.g. an integrator followed by unit delay operation).
 *
 *      For more details about S-functions, see simulink/src/sfuntmpl_doc.c
 *
 * Copyright 1990-2007 The MathWorks, Inc.
 */

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME mixedm
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

#define U(element) (*uPtrs[element]) /* Pointer to Input Port0 */
  
```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` then sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to zero.
- `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user actually entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters does not match the number returned by `ssGetNumSFcnParams`, the S-function errors out.

- If the S-function parameter count passes, `mdlInitializeSizes` next sets the number of continuous and discrete states using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`, respectively. This example has one continuous state and one discrete state.
- The S-function initializes one floating-point work vector by passing a value of 1 to `ssSetNumRWork`. No other work vectors are initialized.
- Next, the method uses `ssSetNumInputPorts` and `ssSetNumOutputPorts` to configure the S-function to have a single input and output port, each with a width of one. The method passes a value of 1 to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough` to indicate the input port has direct feedthrough.
- This S-function assigns sample times using a hybrid block-based and port-based method. The macro `ssSetNumSampleTimes` initializes two block-based sample times, which the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` function configures later. The macros `ssSetInputPortSampleTime` and `ssSetInputPortOffsetTime` initialize the input port to have a continuous sample time with an offset of zero. Similarly, `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime` and `ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime` initialize the output port sample time to 1 with an offset of zero.
- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets two S-function options. `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE` stipulates that the code is exception free and `SS_OPTION_PORT_SAMPLE_TIMES_ASSIGNED` indicates a combination of block-based and port-based sample times.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function for this example is shown below.

```

*=====
* S-function methods *
*=====*/

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
* Abstract:
*   Determine the S-function block's characteristics:
*   number of inputs, outputs, states, etc.
*/
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0); /* Number of expected parameters */
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }

    ssSetNumContStates(S, 1);
    ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 1);
    ssSetNumRWork(S, 1); /* for zoh output feeding the delay operator */

    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 1);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);
    ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);

    if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 1);
    ssSetOutputPortSampleTime(S, 0, 1.0);
    ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);

    ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 2);

    /* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl_doc.c. */
    ssSetOptions(S, (SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE |
                    SS_OPTION_PORT_SAMPLE_TIMES_ASSIGNED));
} /* end mdlInitializeSizes */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function block-based sample rates. The first call to `ssSetSampleTime` specifies that the first sample rate is continuous,

with the subsequent call to `ssSetOffsetTime` setting the offset to zero. The second call to this pair of macros sets the second sample time to 1 with an offset of zero. The S-function port-based sample times set in `mdlInitializeSizes` must all be registered as a block-based sample time. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model.

```
/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Two tasks: One continuous, one with discrete sample time of 1.0.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);

    ssSetSampleTime(S, 1, 1.0);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 1, 0.0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
} /* end mdlInitializeSampleTimes */
```

The optional S-function method `mdlInitializeConditions` initializes the continuous and discrete state vectors. The `#define` statement before this method is required for the Simulink engine to call this function. In this example, `ssGetContStates` obtains a pointer to the continuous state vector and `ssGetRealDiscStates` obtains a pointer to the discrete state vector. The method then sets all states' initial conditions to one.

```
#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize both continuous states to one.
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *xC0 = ssGetContStates(S);
    real_T *xD0 = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);

    xC0[0] = 1.0;
    xD0[0] = 1.0;
} /* end mdlInitializeConditions */
```

The required `mdlOutputs` function performs computations based on the current task. The macro `ssIsContinuousTask` checks if the continuous task is executing. If this macro returns `true`, `ssIsSpecialSampleHit` then checks if the discrete sample rate is also executing. If this macro also returns `true`, the method sets the value of the floating-point work vector to the current value of the continuous state, via pointers obtained using `ssGetRWork` and `ssGetContStates`, respectively. The `mdlUpdate` method later uses the floating-point work vector as the input to the zero-order hold. Updating the work vector in `mdlOutputs` ensures that the correct values are available during subsequent calls to `mdlUpdate`. Finally, if the S-function is running at its discrete rate, i.e., the call to `ssIsSampleHit` returns `true`, the method sets the output to the value of the discrete state.

```
/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   y = xD, and update the zoh internal output.
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    /* update the internal "zoh" output */
    if (ssIsContinuousTask(S, tid)) {
        if (ssIsSpecialSampleHit(S, 1, 0, tid)) {
            real_T *zoh = ssGetRWork(S);
            real_T *xC = ssGetContStates(S);
            *zoh = *xC;
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }

    /* y=xD */
    if (ssIsSampleHit(S, 1, tid)) {
        real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
        real_T *xD = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
        y[0]=xD[0];
    }

} /* end mdlOutputs */

```

The Simulink engine calls the `mdlUpdate` function once every major integration time step to update the discrete states' values. Because this function is an optional method, a `#define` statement must precede the function. The call to `ssIsSampleHit` ensures the body of the method is executed only when the S-function is operating at its discrete rate. If `ssIsSampleHit` returns `true`, the method obtains pointers to the S-function discrete state and floating-point work vector and updates the discrete state's value using the value stored in the work vector.

```

#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   xD = xC
 */
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /* xD=xC */
    if (ssIsSampleHit(S, 1, tid)) {
        real_T *xD = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
        real_T *zoh = ssGetRWork(S);
        xD[0]=*zoh;
    }
} /* end mdlUpdate */

```

The `mdlDerivatives` function calculates the continuous state derivatives. Because this function is an optional method, a `#define` statement must precede the function. The function obtains pointers to the S-function continuous state derivative and first input port then sets the continuous state derivative equal to the value of the first input.

```

#define MDL_DERIVATIVES
/* Function: mdlDerivatives =====
 * Abstract:
 *   xdot = U
 */
static void mdlDerivatives(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *dx = ssGetX(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /* xdot=U */
    dx[0]=U(0);
} /* end mdlDerivatives */

```

The required `mdlTerminate` function performs any actions, such as freeing memory, necessary at the end of the simulation. In this example, the function is empty.

```

/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   No termination needed, but we are required to have this routine.
 */
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(S); /* unused input argument */
}

```

The S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation, as follows.

```
#ifndef MATLAB_MEX_FILE    /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX file? */
#include "simulink.c"      /* MEX file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h"      /* Code generation registration function */
#endif
```

---

**Note** The `mdlUpdate` and `mdlTerminate` functions use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro to indicate that an input argument the callback requires is not used. This optional macro is defined in `simstruc_types.h`. If used, you must call this macro once for each input argument that a callback does not use.

---

## Variable Sample Time

The example S-function `vsfunc.c` uses a variable-step sample time. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfcdemo_vsfunc`

Variable step-size functions require a call to `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit`, which is an S-function routine that calculates the time of the next sample hit. S-functions that use the variable-step sample time can be used only with variable-step solvers. The `vsfunc.c` example is a discrete S-function that delays its first input by an amount of time determined by the second input.

The `vsfunc.c` example outputs the input `u` delayed by a variable amount of time. `mdlOutputs` sets the output `y` equal to state `x`. `mdlUpdate` sets the state vector `x` equal to `u`, the input vector. This example calls `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` to calculate and set the time of the next sample hit, that is, the time when `vsfunc.c` is next called. In `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit`, the macro `ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs` gets a pointer to the input `u`. Then this call is made:

```
ssSetTNext(S, ssGetT(S) + U(1));
```

The macro `ssGetT` gets the simulation time `t`. The second input to the block, `U(1)`, is added to `t`, and the macro `ssSetTNext` sets the time of the next hit equal to `t+U(1)`, delaying the output by the amount of time set in `U(1)`.

### `matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/vsfunc.c`

The S-function `vsfunc.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, along with a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function can include or define any other necessary headers, data, etc. The `vsfunc.c` example defines `U` as a pointer to the first input port's signal.

```
/* File      : vsfunc.c
 * Abstract:
 *
 * Variable step S-function example.
 * This example S-function illustrates how to create a variable step
 * block. This block implements a variable step delay
 * in which the first input is delayed by an amount of time determined
 * by the second input:
 *
 * dt      = u(2)
 * y(t+dt) = u(t)
 *
 * For more details about S-functions, see simulink/src/sfuntmpl_doc.c.
 */
```

```

* Copyright 1990-2007 The MathWorks, Inc.
*/

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME vsfunc
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

#define U(element) (*uPtrs[element]) /* Pointer to Input Port0 */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` then sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to zero.
- `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user actually entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters does not match the number returned by `ssGetNumSFcnParams`, the S-function errors out.
- If the S-function parameter count passes, `mdlInitializeSizes` next sets the number of continuous and discrete states using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`, respectively. This example has no continuous states and one discrete state.
- Next, the method uses `ssSetNumInputPorts` and `ssSetNumOutputPorts` to configure the S-function to have a single input and output port. Calls to `ssSetInputPortWidth` and `ssSetOutputPortWidth` assign widths to these input and output ports. The method passes a value of 1 to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough` to indicate the input port has direct feedthrough.
- `ssSetNumSampleTimes` then initializes one sample time, which the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` function configures later.
- The S-function indicates that no work vectors are used by passing a value of 0 to `ssSetNumRWork`, `ssSetNumIWork`, etc. You can omit these lines because zero is the default value for all of these macros. However, for clarity, the S-function explicitly sets the number of work vectors.
- Next, `ssGetSimMode` checks if the S-function is being run in a simulation or by the Simulink Coder product. If `ssGetSimMode` returns `SS_SIMMODE_RTWGEN` and `ssIsVariableStepSolver` returns `false`, indicating use with the Simulink Coder product and a fixed-step solver, then the S-function errors out.
- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets any applicable options. In this case, the only option is `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE`, which stipulates that the code is exception free.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function for this example is shown below.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
* Abstract:
* Determine the S-function block's characteristics:
* number of inputs, outputs, states, etc.
*/
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0); /* Number of expected parameters */
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }

    ssSetNumContStates(S, 0);
    ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 1);

    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 2);
    ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);
}

```



```

if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;
ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 1);

ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
ssSetNumRWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumIWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumModes(S, 0);
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);

if (ssGetSimMode(S) == SS_SIMMODE_RTWGEN && !ssIsVariableStepSolver(S)) {
    ssSetErrorStatus(S, "S-function vsfunc.c cannot be used with RTW "
        "and Fixed-Step Solvers because it contains variable "
        "sample time");
}

/* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl_doc.c */
ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
}

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function sample rates. The input argument `VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME` passed to `ssSetSampleTime` specifies that this S-function has a variable-step sample time and `ssSetOffsetTime` specifies an offset time of zero. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model. Because the S-function has a variable-step sample time, `vsfunc.c` must calculate the time of the next sample hit in the `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` method, shown later.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Variable-Step S-function
 */
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
}

```

The optional S-function method `mdlInitializeConditions` initializes the discrete state vector. The `#define` statement before this method is required for the Simulink engine to call this function. In the example, the method uses `ssGetRealDiscStates` to obtain a pointer to the discrete state vector and sets the state's initial value to zero.

```

#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize discrete state to zero.
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    real_T *x0 = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);

    x0[0] = 0.0;
}

```

The optional `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` method calculates the time of the next sample hit. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. First, this method obtains a pointer to the first input port's signal using `ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs`. If the input signal's second element is positive, the macro `ssGetT` gets the simulation time `t`. The macro `ssSetTNext` sets the time of the next hit equal to `t+(*U[1])`, delaying the output by the amount of time specified by the input's second element (`*U[1]`).

```

#define MDL_GET_TIME_OF_NEXT_VAR_HIT
static void mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit(SimStruct *S)

```

```

{
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /* Make sure input will increase time */
    if (U(1) <= 0.0) {
        /* If not, abort simulation */
        ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Variable step control input must be "
            "greater than zero");
        return;
    }
    ssSetTNext(S, ssGetT(S)+U(1));
}

```

The required `mdlOutputs` function computes the S-function output signal. The function obtains pointers to the first output port and discrete state and then assigns the state's current value to the output.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *     y = x
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    real_T *x = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);

    /* Return the current state as the output */
    y[0] = x[0];
}

```

The `mdlUpdate` function updates the discrete state's value. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. The function first obtains pointers to the S-function discrete state and first input port then assigns the value of the first element of the first input port signal to the state.

```

#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
 * Abstract:
 *     This function is called once for every major integration time step.
 *     Discrete states are typically updated here, but this function is useful
 *     for performing any tasks that should only take place once per integration
 *     step.
 */
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    real_T *x = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    x[0]=U(0);
}

```

The required `mdlTerminate` function performs any actions, such as freeing memory, necessary at the end of the simulation. In this example, the function is empty.

```

/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:
 *     No termination needed, but we are required to have this routine.
 */
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
}

```

The required S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation, as follows.

```

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX file interface mechanism */
#else

```

```
#include "cg_sfund.h"      /* Code generation registration function */
#endif
```

## Array Inputs and Outputs

The example S-function `sfund_matadd.c` demonstrates how to implement a matrix addition block. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfunddemo_matadd`

The S-function adds signals of various dimensions to a parameter value entered in the S-function. The S-function accepts and outputs 2-D or n-D signals.

### matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/sfund\_matadd.c

The S-function `sfund_matadd.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, along with a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function includes or defines any other necessary headers, data, etc. This example defines additional variables for the number of S-function parameters, the S-function parameter value, and the flag `EDIT_OK` that indicates if the parameter value can be edited during simulation.

```
/* SFUN_MATADD matrix support example.
 * C MEX S-function for matrix addition with one input port,
 * one output port, and one parameter.
 *
 * Input Signal: 2-D or n-D array
 * Parameter:    2-D or n-D array
 * Output Signal: 2-D or n-D array
 *
 * Input  parameter  output
 * -----
 * scalar  scalar    scalar
 * scalar  matrix    matrix    (input scalar expansion)
 * matrix  scalar    matrix    (parameter scalar expansion)
 * matrix  matrix    matrix
 *
 * Copyright 1990-2007 The MathWorks, Inc.
 */
#define S_FUNCTION_NAME  sfund_matadd
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

enum {PARAM = 0, NUM_PARAMS};

#define PARAM_ARG  ssGetSFcnParam(S, PARAM)

#define EDIT_OK(S, ARG) \
  (!((ssGetSimMode(S) == SS_SIMMODE_SIZES_CALL_ONLY) \
    && mxIsEmpty(ARG)))

The S-function next implements the mdlCheckParameters method to validate the S-function dialog parameters. The #ifdef statement checks that the S-function is compiled as a MEX file, instead of for use with the Simulink Coder product. Because mdlCheckParameters is optional, the S-function code contains a #define statement to register the method. The body of the function checks that the S-function parameter value is not empty. If the parameter check fails, the S-function errors out with a call to ssSetErrorStatus.
```

```
#ifndef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
#define MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS
/* Function: mdlCheckParameters =====

 * Abstract:
 *   Verify parameter settings.
```

```

*/
static void mdlCheckParameters(SimStruct *S)
{
    if(EDIT_OK(S, PARAM_ARG)){
        /* Check that parameter value is not empty*/
        if( mxIsEmpty(PARAM_ARG) ) {
            ssSetErrorStatus(S, "Invalid parameter specified. The"
                "parameter must be non-empty");
            return;
        }
    }
}
/* end mdlCheckParameters */
#endif

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` then sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to one, as defined by the variable `NUM_PARAMS`.
- If this S-function is compiled as a MEX file, `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user actually entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters matches the number returned by `ssGetNumSFcnParams`, the method calls `mdlCheckParameters` to validate the user-entered data. Otherwise, the S-function errors out.
- If the parameter check passes, the S-function specifies that all S-function parameters are tunable using `ssSetSFcnParamTunable`.
- The S-function then invokes `ssAllowSignalsWithMoreThan2D` to allow the S-function to accept n-D signals.
- Next, `ssSetNumOutputPorts` and `ssSetNumInputPorts` specify that the S-function has a single output port and a single input port.
- The S-function uses `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo` to specify that the input port is dynamically sized. In this case, the S-function needs to implement an `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` method to set the actual input dimension.
- The output dimensions depend on the dimensions of the S-function parameter. If the parameter is a scalar, the call to `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` specifies that the output port dimensions are dynamically sized. If the parameter is a matrix, the output port dimensions are initialized to the dimensions of the S-function parameter. In this case, the macro `DECL_AND_INIT_DIMSINFO` initializes a `dimsInfo` structure. The S-function assigns the width, size, and dimensions of the S-function parameter into the `dimsInfo` structure and then passes this structure to `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` in order to set the output port dimensions accordingly.
- The S-function specifies that the input port has direct feedthrough by passing a value of 1 to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough`.
- `ssSetNumSampleTimes` initializes one sample time, to be configured later in the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` method.
- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets any applicable options. In this case, `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE` stipulates that the code is exception free and `SS_OPTION_WORKS_WITH_CODE_REUSE` signifies that this S-function is compatible with the subsystem code reuse feature of the Simulink Coder product.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
* Abstract:
* Initialize the sizes array
*/
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NUM_PARAMS);
}

```

```

#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        return; }
    mdlCheckParameters(S);
    if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) return;
#endif

{
    int iParam = 0;
    int nParam = ssGetNumSFcnParams(S);

    for ( iParam = 0; iParam < nParam; iParam++ )
        {
            ssSetSFcnParamTunable( S, iParam, SS_PRM_TUNABLE );
        }
}

/* Allow signal dimensions greater than 2 */
ssAllowSignalsWithMoreThan2D(S);

/* Set number of input and output ports */
if (!ssSetNumInputPorts( S,1)) return;
if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S,1)) return;

/* Set dimensions of input and output ports */
{
    int_T pWidth = mxGetNumberOfElements(PARAM_ARG);
    /* Input can be a scalar or a matrix signal. */
    if(!ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S,0,DYNAMIC_DIMENSION)) {
        return; }

    if( pWidth == 1) {
        /* Scalar parameter: output dimensions are unknown. */
        if(!ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(S,0,DYNAMIC_DIMENSION)){
            return; }
    }
    else{
        /*
         * Non-scalar parameter: output dimensions are the same
         * as the parameter dimensions. To support n-D signals,
         * must use a dimsInfo structure to specify dimensions.
         */
        DECL_AND_INIT DIMSINFO(di); /*Initializes structure*/
        int_T pSize = mxGetNumberOfDimensions(PARAM_ARG);
        const int_T *pDims = mxGetDimensions(PARAM_ARG);
        di.width = pWidth;
        di.numDims = pSize;
        di.dims = pDims;
        if(!ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(S, 0, &di)) return;
    }
}
ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);
ssSetOptions(S,
              SS_OPTION_WORKS_WITH_CODE_REUSE |
              SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE);
} /* end mdlInitializeSizes */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function sample rates. To specify that this S-function inherits its sample time from its driving block, the S-function calls `ssSetSampleTime` with the input argument `INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME`. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
 * Abstract:
 * Initialize the sample times array.
 */

```

```

static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
} /* end mdlInitializeSampleTimes */

```

The S-function calls the `mdlSetWorkWidths` method to register its run-time parameters. Because `mdlSetWorkWidths` is an optional method, a `#define` statement precedes it. The method first initializes a name for the run-time parameter and then uses `ssRegAllTunableParamsAsRunTimeParams` to register the run-time parameter.

```

/* Function: mdlSetWorkWidths =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Set up run-time parameter.
 */
#define MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
{
    const char_T *rtParamNames[] = {"Operand"};
    ssRegAllTunableParamsAsRunTimeParams(S, rtParamNames);
} /* end mdlSetWorkWidths */

```

The S-function `mdlOutputs` method uses a `for` loop to calculate the output as the sum of the input and S-function parameter. The S-function handles n-D arrays of data using a single index into the array.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Compute the outputs of the S-function.
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    InputRealPtrsType uPtr = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    real_T *y = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    const real_T *p = mxGetPr(PARAM_ARG);

    int_T uWidth = ssGetInputPortWidth(S,0);
    int_T pWidth = mxGetNumberOfElements(PARAM_ARG);
    int_T yWidth = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);
    int i;

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    /*
     * Note1: Matrix signals are stored in column major order.
     * Note2: Access each matrix element by one index not two
     * indices. For example, if the output signal is a
     * [2x2] matrix signal,
     *
     * - - -
     * | y[0] y[2] |
     * | y[1] y[3] |
     * - - -
     *
     * Output elements are stored as follows:
     * y[0] --> row = 0, col = 0
     * y[1] --> row = 1, col = 0
     * y[2] --> row = 0, col = 1
     * y[3] --> row = 1, col = 1
     */

    for (i = 0; i < yWidth; i++) {
        int_T uIdx = (uWidth == 1) ? 0 : i;
        int_T pIdx = (pWidth == 1) ? 0 : i;

        y[i] = *uPtr[uIdx] + p[pIdx];
    }
} /* end mdlOutputs */

```

During signal propagation, the S-function calls the optional `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` method with the candidate input port dimensions stored in `dimsInfo`. The `#if defined` statement checks that the S-function is compiled as a MEX file. Because `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` is an optional method, a `#define` statement precedes it. In `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo`, the S-function uses `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo` to set the dimensions of the input port to the candidate dimensions. If the call to this macro succeeds, the S-function further checks the candidate dimensions to ensure that the input signal is either a 2-D scalar or a matrix. If this condition is met and the output port dimensions are still dynamically sized, the S-function calls `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` to set the dimension of the output port to the same candidate dimensions. The `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` macro cannot modify the output port dimensions if they are already specified.

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO
/* Function: mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo =====
 * Abstract:
 * This routine is called with the candidate dimensions for
 * an input port with unknown dimensions. If the proposed
 * dimensions are acceptable, the routine should go ahead and
 * set the actual port dimensions. If they are unacceptable
 * an error should be generated via ssSetErrorStatus.
 * Note that any other input or output ports whose dimensions
 * are implicitly defined by virtue of knowing the dimensions
 * of the given port can also have their dimensions set.
 */
static void mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S,
int_T port,
const DimsInfo_T *dimsInfo)
{
    int_T pWidth = mxGetNumberOfElements(PARAM_ARG);
    int_T pSize = mxGetNumberOfDimensions(PARAM_ARG);
    const int_T *pDims = mxGetDimensions(PARAM_ARG);

    int_T uNumDims = dimsInfo->numDims;
    int_T uWidth = dimsInfo->width;
    int_T *uDims = dimsInfo->dims;

    int_T numDims;
    boolean_T isOk = true;
    int iParam = 0;
    int_T outWidth = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S, 0);

    /* Set input port dimension */
    if(!ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S, port, dimsInfo)) return;

    /*
     * The block only accepts 2-D or higher signals. Check
     * number of dimensions. If the parameter and the input
     * signal are non-scalar, their dimensions must be the same.
     */
    isOk = (uNumDims >= 2) && (pWidth == 1 || uWidth == 1 ||
        pWidth == uWidth);
    numDims = (pSize != uNumDims) ? numDims : uNumDims;

    if(isOk && pWidth > 1 && uWidth > 1){
        for ( iParam = 0; iParam < numDims; iParam++ ) {
            isOk = (pDims[iParam] == uDims[iParam]);
            if(!isOk) break;
        }
    }

    if(!isOk){
        ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Invalid input port dimensions. The "
            "input signal must be a 2-D scalar signal, or it must "
            "be a matrix with the same dimensions as the parameter "
            "dimensions.");
        return;
    }
}
```

```

    /* Set the output port dimensions */
    if (outWidth == DYNAMICALLY_SIZED){
        if(!ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(S,port,dimsInfo)) return;
    }
} /* end mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo */

```

During signal propagation, if any output ports have unknown dimensions, the S-function calls the optional `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` method. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. In `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`, the S-function uses `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` to set the dimensions of the output port to the candidate dimensions `dimsInfo`. If the call to this macro succeeds, the S-function further checks the candidate dimensions to ensure that the input signal is either a 2-D or n-D matrix. If this condition is not met, the S-function errors out with a call to `ssSetErrorStatus`. Otherwise, the S-function calls `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo` to set the dimension of the input port to the same candidate dimensions.

```

# define MDL_SET_OUTPUT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO
/* Function: mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo =====
 * Abstract:
 * This routine is called with the candidate dimensions for
 * an output port with unknown dimensions. If the proposed
 * dimensions are acceptable, the routine should go ahead and
 * set the actual port dimensions. If they are unacceptable
 * an error should be generated via ssSetErrorStatus.
 * Note that any other input or output ports whose dimensions
 * are implicitly defined by virtue of knowing the dimensions
 * of the given port can also have their dimensions set.
 */
static void mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S,
    int_T port,
    const DimsInfo_T *dimsInfo)
{
    /*
     * If the block has scalar parameter, the output dimensions
     * are unknown. Set the input and output port to have the
     * same dimensions.
     */
    if(!ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(S, port, dimsInfo)) return;

    /* The block only accepts 2-D or n-D signals.
     * Check number of dimensions.
     */
    if (!(dimsInfo->numDims >= 2)){
        ssSetErrorStatus(S, "Invalid output port dimensions. "
            "The output signal must be a 2-D or n-D array (matrix) "
            "signal.");
        return;
    }else{
        /* Set the input port dimensions */
        if(!ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S,port,dimsInfo)) return;
    }
} /* end mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo */

```

Because the S-function has ports that are dynamically sized, it must provide an `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` method. The Simulink engine invokes this method during signal propagation when it cannot determine the dimensionality of the signal connected to the block's input port. This situation can happen, for example, if the input port is unconnected. In this example, the `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` method sets the input and output ports dimensions to a scalar.

```

# define MDL_SET_DEFAULT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO
/* Function: mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo =====
 * This routine is called when the Simulink engine is not able
 * to find dimension candidates for ports with unknown dimensions.
 * This function must set the dimensions of all ports with
 * unknown dimensions.

```



```

*/
static void mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T outWidth = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S, 0);
    /* Input port dimension must be unknown. Set it to scalar.*/
    if(!ssSetInputPortMatrixDimensions(S, 0, 1, 1)) return;
    if(outWidth == DYNAMICALLY_SIZED){
        /* Output dimensions are unknown. Set it to scalar. */
        if(!ssSetOutputPortMatrixDimensions(S, 0, 1, 1)) return;
    }
} /* end mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo */
#endif

```

The required `mdlTerminate` function performs any actions, such as freeing memory, necessary at the end of the simulation. In this example, the function is empty.

```

/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Called when the simulation is terminated.
 */
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(S); /* unused input argument */
} /* end mdlTerminate */

```

The required S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation.

```

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
#include "simulink.c"
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h"
#endif

/* [EOF] sfun_matadd.c */

```

---

**Note** The `mdlOutputs` and `mdlTerminate` functions use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro to indicate that an input argument the callback requires is not used. This optional macro is defined in `simstruc_types.h`. You must call this macro once for each input argument that a callback does not use.

---

## Zero-Crossing Detection

The example S-function `sfun_zc_sat.c` demonstrates how to implement a Saturation block. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfcndemo_sfun_zc_sat`

The S-function works with either fixed-step or variable-step solvers. When this S-function inherits a continuous sample time and uses a variable-step solver, it uses a zero-crossings algorithm to locate the exact points at which the saturation occurs.

### **matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/sfun\_zc\_sat.c**

The S-function `sfun_zc_sat.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, along with a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function includes or defines any other necessary headers, data, etc. This example defines various parameters associated with the upper and lower saturation bounds.

```

/* File    : sfun_zc_sat.c
 * Abstract:

```

```

*
*      Example of an S-function which has nonsampled zero crossings to
*      implement a saturation function. This S-function is designed to be
*      used with a variable or fixed step solver.
*
*      A saturation is described by three equations
*
*      (1)    y = UpperLimit
*      (2)    y = u
*      (3)    y = LowerLimit
*
*      and a set of inequalities that specify which equation to use
*
*      if          UpperLimit < u      then use (1)
*      if    LowerLimit <= u <= UpperLimit  then use (2)
*      if    u < LowerLimit                then use (3)
*
*      A key fact is that the valid equation 1, 2, or 3, can change at
*      any instant. Nonsampled zero crossing support helps the variable step
*      solvers locate the exact instants when behavior switches from one equation
*      to another.
*
*      Copyright 1990-2007 The MathWorks, Inc.
*/

```

```

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME  sfun_zc_sat
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

/*=====
 * General Defines/macros *
 *=====*/

/* index to Upper Limit */
#define I_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT 0

/* index to Lower Limit */
#define I_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT 1

/* total number of block parameters */
#define N_PAR              2

/*
 * Make access to mxArray pointers for parameters more readable.
 */
#define P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT ( ssGetSFcnParam(S,I_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT) )
#define P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT ( ssGetSFcnParam(S,I_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT) )

```

This S-function next implements the `mdlCheckParameters` method to check the validity of the S-function dialog parameters. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. The `#if defined` statement checks that this function is compiled as a MEX file, instead of for use with the Simulink Coder product. The body of the function performs basic checks to ensure that the user entered real vectors of equal length for the upper and lower saturation limits. If the parameter checks fail, the S-function errors out.

```

#define MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS
#if defined(MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)

/* Function: mdlCheckParameters =====
 * Abstract:
 * Check that parameter choices are allowable.
 */
static void mdlCheckParameters(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T    i;
    int_T    numUpperLimit;
    int_T    numLowerLimit;
    const char *msg = NULL;

```

```

/*
 * check parameter basics
 */
for ( i = 0; i < N_PAR; i++ ) {
    if ( mxIsEmpty(    ssGetSFcnParam(S,i) ) ||
          mxIsSparse(  ssGetSFcnParam(S,i) ) ||
          mxIsComplex( ssGetSFcnParam(S,i) ) ||
          !mxIsNumeric( ssGetSFcnParam(S,i) ) ) {
        msg = "Parameters must be real vectors.";
        goto EXIT_POINT;
    }
}

/*
 * Check sizes of parameters.
 */
numUpperLimit = mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
numLowerLimit = mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );

if ( ( numUpperLimit != 1 ) &&
      ( numLowerLimit != 1 ) &&
      ( numUpperLimit != numLowerLimit ) ) {
    msg = "Number of input and output values must be equal.";
    goto EXIT_POINT;
}

/*
 * Error exit point
 */
EXIT_POINT:
    if (msg != NULL) {
        ssSetErrorStatus(S, msg);
    }
}
#endif /* MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to two, as defined previously in the variable `N_PAR`.
- If this method is compiled as a MEX file, `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user actually entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters matches the number returned by `ssGetNumSFcnParams`, the method calls `mdlCheckParameters` to check the validity of the user-entered data. Otherwise, the S-function errors out.
- If the parameter check passes, the S-function determines the maximum number of elements entered into either the upper or lower saturation limit parameter. This number is needed later to determine the appropriate output width.
- Next, the number of continuous and discrete states is set using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`, respectively. This example has no continuous or discrete states.
- The method specifies that the S-function has a single output port using `ssSetNumOutputPorts` and sets the width of this output port using `ssSetOutputPortWidth`. The output port width is either the maximum number of elements in the upper or lower saturation limit or is dynamically sized. Similar code specifies a single input port and indicates the input port has direct feedthrough by passing a value of 1 to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough`.
- `ssSetNumSampleTimes` initializes one sample time, which the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` function configures later.
- The S-function indicates that no work vectors are used by passing a value of 0 to `ssSetNumRWork`, `ssSetNumIWork`, etc. You can omit these lines because zero is the default value

for all of these macros. However, for clarity, the S-function explicitly sets the number of work vectors.

- The method initializes the zero-crossing detection work vectors using `ssSetNumModes` and `ssSetNumNonsampledZCs`. The `mdlSetWorkWidths` method specifies the length of these dynamically sized vectors later.
- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets any applicable options. In this case, `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE` stipulates that the code is exception free and `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_INPUT_SCALAR_EXPANSION` permits scalar expansion of the input without having to provide an `mdlSetInputPortWidth` function.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function for this example is shown below.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize the sizes array.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T numUpperLimit, numLowerLimit, maxNumLimit;

    /*
     * Set and Check parameter count
     */
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, N_PAR);

#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) == ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        mdlCheckParameters(S);
        if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) {
            return;
        }
    } else {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }
#endif

    /*
     * Get parameter size info.
     */
    numUpperLimit = mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
    numLowerLimit = mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );

    if (numUpperLimit > numLowerLimit) {
        maxNumLimit = numUpperLimit;
    } else {
        maxNumLimit = numLowerLimit;
    }

    /*
     * states
     */
    ssSetNumContStates(S, 0);
    ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 0);

    /*
     * outputs
     *   The upper and lower limits are scalar expanded
     *   so their size determines the size of the output
     *   only if at least one of them is not scalar.
     */
    if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, 1)) return;

    if ( maxNumLimit > 1 ) {
        ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, maxNumLimit);
    } else {
        ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
    }
}

```

```

/*
 * inputs
 * If the upper or lower limits are not scalar then
 * the input is set to the same size. However, the
 * ssSetOptions below allows the actual width to
 * be reduced to 1 if needed for scalar expansion.
 */
if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;

ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 1);

if ( maxNumLimit > 1 ) {
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, maxNumLimit);
} else {
    ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
}

/*
 * sample times
 */
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);

/*
 * work
 */
ssSetNumRWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumIWork(S, 0);
ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);

/*
 * Modes and zero crossings:
 * If we have a variable-step solver and this block has a continuous
 * sample time, then
 * o One mode element will be needed for each scalar output
 *   in order to specify which equation is valid (1), (2), or (3).
 * o Two ZC elements will be needed for each scalar output
 *   in order to help the solver find the exact instants
 *   at which either of the two possible "equation switches"
 *   One will be for the switch from eq. (1) to (2);
 *   the other will be for eq. (2) to (3) and vice versa.
 * otherwise
 * o No modes and nonsampled zero crossings will be used.
 */
ssSetNumModes(S, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, DYNAMICALLY_SIZED);

/*
 * options
 * o No mexFunctions and no problematic mxFunctions are called
 *   so the exception free code option safely gives faster simulations.
 * o Scalar expansion of the inputs is desired. The option provides
 *   this without the need to write mdlSetOutputPortWidth and
 *   mdlSetInputPortWidth functions.
 */
ssSetOptions(S, ( SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE |
                  SS_OPTION_ALLOW_INPUT_SCALAR_EXPANSION));
} /* end mdlInitializeSizes */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function sample rates. The input argument `INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME` passed to `ssSetSampleTime` specifies that this S-function inherits its sample time from its driving block. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
 * Abstract:

```

```

*   Specify that the block is continuous.
*/
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
}

```

The optional method `mdlSetWorkWidths` initializes the size of the zero-crossing detection work vectors. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. The `#if defined` statement checks that the S-function is being compiled as a MEX file. Zero-crossing detection can be done only when the S-function is running at a continuous sample rate using a variable-step solver. The `if` statement uses `ssIsVariableStepSolver`, `ssGetSampleTime`, and `ssGetOffsetTime` to determine if this condition is met. If so, the method sets the number of modes equal to the width of the first output port and the number of nonsampled zero crossings to twice this amount. Otherwise, the method sets both values to zero.

```

#define MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS
#if defined(MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
/* Function: mdlSetWorkWidths =====
*   The width of the Modes and the ZCs depends on the width of the output.
*   This width is not always known in mdlInitializeSizes so it is handled
*   here.
*/
static void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
{
    int nModes;
    int nNonsampledZCs;

    if (ssIsVariableStepSolver(S) &&
        ssGetSampleTime(S,0) == CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME &&
        ssGetOffsetTime(S,0) == 0.0) {

        int numOutput = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S, 0);

        /*
         * modes and zero crossings
         *   o One mode element will be needed for each scalar output
         *     in order to specify which equation is valid (1), (2), or (3).
         *   o Two ZC elements will be needed for each scalar output
         *     in order to help the solver find the exact instants
         *     at which either of the two possible "equation switches"
         *     One will be for the switch from eq. (1) to (2);
         *     the other will be for eq. (2) to (3) and vice versa.
         */
        nModes      = numOutput;
        nNonsampledZCs = 2 * numOutput;
    } else {
        nModes      = 0;
        nNonsampledZCs = 0;
    }
    ssSetNumModes(S,nModes);
    ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S,nNonsampledZCs);
}
#endif /* MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS */

```

After declaring variables for the input and output signals, the `mdlOutputs` function uses an `if-else` statement to create blocks of code used to calculate the output signal based on whether the S-function uses a fixed-step or variable-step solver. The `if` statement queries the length of the nonsampled zero-crossing vector. If the length, set in `mdlWorkWidths`, is zero, then no zero-crossing detection is done and the output signals are calculated directly from the input signals. Otherwise, the function uses the mode work vector to determine how to calculate the output signal. If the simulation is at a major time step, i.e., `ssIsMajorTimeStep` returns `true`, `mdlOutputs` determines which mode the simulation is running in, either saturated at the upper limit, saturated at the lower limit, or not saturated. Then, for both major and minor time steps, the function calculates an output based on

this mode. If the mode changed between the previous and current time step, then a zero crossing occurred. The `mdlZeroCrossings` function, not `mdlOutputs`, indicates this crossing to the solver.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *
 * A saturation is described by three equations
 *
 * (1)    y = UpperLimit
 * (2)    y = u
 * (3)    y = LowerLimit
 *
 * When this block is used with a fixed-step solver or it has a noncontinuous
 * sample time, the equations are used as it
 *
 * Now consider the case of this block being used with a variable-step solver
 * and it has a continuous sample time. Solvers work best on smooth problems.
 * In order for the solver to work without chattering, limit cycles, or
 * similar problems, it is absolutely crucial that the same equation be used
 * throughout the duration of a MajorTimeStep. To visualize this, consider
 * the case of the Saturation block feeding an Integrator block.
 *
 * To implement this rule, the mode vector is used to specify the
 * valid equation based on the following:
 *
 * if      UpperLimit < u      then use (1)
 * if      LowerLimit <= u <= UpperLimit      then use (2)
 * if      u < LowerLimit      then use (3)
 *
 * The mode vector is changed only at the beginning of a MajorTimeStep.
 *
 * During a minor time step, the equation specified by the mode vector
 * is used without question. Most of the time, the value of u will agree
 * with the equation specified by the mode vector. However, sometimes u's
 * value will indicate a different equation. Nonetheless, the equation
 * specified by the mode vector must be used.
 *
 * When the mode and u indicate different equations, the corresponding
 * calculations are not correct. However, this is not a problem. From
 * the ZC function, the solver will know that an equation switch occurred
 * in the middle of the last MajorTimeStep. The calculations for that
 * time step will be discarded. The ZC function will help the solver
 * find the exact instant at which the switch occurred. Using this knowledge,
 * the length of the MajorTimeStep will be reduced so that only one equation
 * is valid throughout the entire time step.
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs    = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
    real_T            *y        = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
    int_T             numOutput = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);
    int_T             iOutput;

    /*
     * Set index and increment for input signal, upper limit, and lower limit
     * parameters so that each gives scalar expansion if needed.
     */
    int_T uIdx          = 0;
    int_T uInc          = ( ssGetInputPortWidth(S,0) > 1 );
    const real_T *upperLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
    int_T upperLimitInc = ( mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT ) > 1 );
    const real_T *lowerLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );
    int_T lowerLimitInc = ( mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT ) > 1 );

    UNUSED_ARG(tid); /* not used in single tasking mode */

    if (ssGetNumNonsampledZCs(S) == 0) {
        /*
         * This block is being used with a fixed-step solver or it has
         * a noncontinuous sample time, so we always saturate.
         */
        for (iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++) {

```

```

        if (*uPtrs[uIdx] >= *upperLimit) {
            *y++ = *upperLimit;
        } else if (*uPtrs[uIdx] > *lowerLimit) {
            *y++ = *uPtrs[uIdx];
        } else {
            *y++ = *lowerLimit;
        }

        upperLimit += upperLimitInc;
        lowerLimit += lowerLimitInc;
        uIdx       += uInc;
    }
} else {
    /*
    * This block is being used with a variable-step solver.
    */
    int_T *mode = ssGetModeVector(S);

    /*
    * Specify indices for each equation.
    */
    enum { UpperLimitEquation, NonLimitEquation, LowerLimitEquation };

    /*
    * Update the Mode Vector ONLY at the beginning of a MajorTimeStep
    */
    if ( ssIsMajorTimeStep(S) ) {
        /*
        * Specify the mode, ie the valid equation for each output scalar.
        */
        for ( iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++ ) {
            if ( *uPtrs[uIdx] > *upperLimit ) {
                /*
                * Upper limit eq is valid.
                */
                mode[iOutput] = UpperLimitEquation;
            } else if ( *uPtrs[uIdx] < *lowerLimit ) {
                /*
                * Lower limit eq is valid.
                */
                mode[iOutput] = LowerLimitEquation;
            } else {
                /*
                * Nonlimit eq is valid.
                */
                mode[iOutput] = NonLimitEquation;
            }
        }
        /*
        * Adjust indices to give scalar expansion if needed.
        */
        uIdx       += uInc;
        upperLimit += upperLimitInc;
        lowerLimit += lowerLimitInc;
    }

    /*
    * Reset index to input and limits.
    */
    uIdx       = 0;
    upperLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
    lowerLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );
} /* end IsMajorTimeStep */

/*
* For both MinorTimeSteps and MajorTimeSteps calculate each scalar
* output using the equation specified by the mode vector.
*/
for ( iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++ ) {
    if ( mode[iOutput] == UpperLimitEquation ) {
        /*

```



```

        * Upper limit eq.
        */
        *y++ = *upperLimit;
    } else if ( mode[iOutput] == LowerLimitEquation ) {
        /*
        * Lower limit eq.
        */
        *y++ = *lowerLimit;
    } else {
        /*
        * Nonlimit eq.
        */
        *y++ = *uPtrs[uIdx];
    }

    /*
    * Adjust indices to give scalar expansion if needed.
    */
    uIdx += uInc;
    upperLimit += upperLimitInc;
    lowerLimit += lowerLimitInc;
}
} /* end mdlOutputs */

```

The `mdlZeroCrossings` method determines if a zero crossing occurred between the previous and current time step. The method obtains a pointer to the input signal using `ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs`. A comparison of this signal's value to the value of the upper and lower saturation limits determines values for the elements of the nonsampled zero-crossing vector. If any element of the nonsampled zero-crossing vector switches from negative to positive, or positive to negative, a zero crossing occurred. In the event of a zero crossing, the Simulink engine modifies the step size and recalculates the outputs to try to locate the exact zero crossing.

```

#define MDL_ZERO_CROSSINGS
#if defined(MDL_ZERO_CROSSINGS) && (defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE) || defined(NRT))

/* Function: mdlZeroCrossings =====
* Abstract:
* This will only be called if the number of nonsampled zero crossings is
* greater than 0 which means this block has a continuous sample time and the
* model is using a variable-step solver.
*
* Calculate zero crossing (ZC) signals that help the solver find the
* exact instants at which equation switches occur:
*
* if UpperLimit < u then use (1)
* if LowerLimit <= u <= UpperLimit then use (2)
* if u < LowerLimit then use (3)
*
* The key words are help find. There is no choice of a function that will
* direct the solver to the exact instant of the change. The solver will
* track the zero crossing signal and do a bisection style search for the
* exact instant of equation switch.
*
* There is generally one ZC signal for each pair of signals that can
* switch. The three equations above would break into two pairs (1)&(2)
* and (2)&(3). The possibility of a "long jump" from (1) to (3) does
* not need to be handled as a separate case. It is implicitly handled.
*
* When ZCs are calculated, the value is normally used twice. When it is
* first calculated, it is used as the end of the current time step. Later,
* it will be used as the beginning of the following step.
*
* The sign of the ZC signal always indicates an equation from the pair. For
* S-functions, which equation is associated with a positive ZC and which is
* associated with a negative ZC doesn't really matter. If the ZC is positive
* at the beginning and at the end of the time step, this implies that the
* "positive" equation was valid throughout the time step. Likewise, if the
* ZC is negative at the beginning and at the end of the time step, this
* implies that the "negative" equation was valid throughout the time step.

```

```

* Like any other nonlinear solver, this is not foolproof, but it is an
* excellent indicator. If the ZC has a different sign at the beginning and
* at the end of the time step, then an equation switch definitely occurred
* during the time step.
*
* Ideally, the ZC signal gives an estimate of when an equation switch
* occurred. For example, if the ZC signal is -2 at the beginning and +6
* at the end, then this suggests that the switch occurred
*  $25\% = 100\% \cdot (-2) / (-2 - (+6))$  of the way into the time step. It will almost
* never be true that 25% is perfectly correct. There is no perfect choice
* for a ZC signal, but there are some good rules. First, choose the ZC
* signal to be continuous. Second, choose the ZC signal to give a monotonic
* measure of the "distance" to a signal switch; strictly monotonic is ideal.
*/
static void mdlZeroCrossings(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T          iOutput;
    int_T          numOutput = ssGetOutputPortWidth(S,0);
    real_T         *zcSignals = ssGetNonsampledZCs(S);
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs    = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /*
    * Set index and increment for the input signal, upper limit, and lower
    * limit parameters so that each gives scalar expansion if needed.
    */
    int_T uIdx      = 0;
    int_T uInc      = ( ssGetInputPortWidth(S,0) > 1 );
    real_T *upperLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT );
    int_T upperLimitInc = ( mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_UPPER_LIMIT ) > 1 );
    real_T *lowerLimit = mxGetPr( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT );
    int_T lowerLimitInc = ( mxGetNumberOfElements( P_PAR_LOWER_LIMIT ) > 1 );

    /*
    * For each output scalar, give the solver a measure of "how close things
    * are" to an equation switch.
    */
    for ( iOutput = 0; iOutput < numOutput; iOutput++ ) {

        /* The switch from eq (1) to eq (2)
        *
        * if          UpperLimit < u      then use (1)
        * if          LowerLimit <= u <= UpperLimit      then use (2)
        *
        * is related to how close u is to UpperLimit. A ZC choice
        * that is continuous, strictly monotonic, and is
        * u - UpperLimit
        * or it is negative.
        */
        zcSignals[2*iOutput] = *uPtrs[uIdx] - *upperLimit;

        /* The switch from eq (2) to eq (3)
        *
        * if          LowerLimit <= u <= UpperLimit      then use (2)
        * if          u < LowerLimit                      then use (3)
        *
        * is related to how close u is to LowerLimit. A ZC choice
        * that is continuous, strictly monotonic, and is
        * u - LowerLimit.
        */
        zcSignals[2*iOutput+1] = *uPtrs[uIdx] - *lowerLimit;

        /*
        * Adjust indices to give scalar expansion if needed.
        */
        uIdx      += uInc;
        upperLimit += upperLimitInc;
        lowerLimit += lowerLimitInc;
    }
}
#endif /* end mdlZeroCrossings */

```

The S-function concludes with the required `mdlTerminate` function. In this example, the function is empty.

```
/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   No termination needed, but we are required to have this routine.
 */
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(S); /* unused input argument */
}
```

The required S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation, as follows.

```
#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h" /* Code generation registration function */
#endif
```

---

**Note** The `mdlOutputs` and `mdlTerminate` functions use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro to indicate that an input argument the callback requires is not used. This optional macro is defined in `simstruc_types.h`. If used, you must call this macro once for each input argument that a callback does not use.

---

## Discontinuities in Continuous States

The example S-function `stvctf.c` demonstrates a time-varying continuous transfer function. The following Simulink model uses this S-function.

`sfcn demo_stvctf`

The S-function demonstrates how to work with the solvers so that the simulation maintains *consistency*, which means that the block maintains smooth and consistent signals for the integrators although the equations that are being integrated are changing.

### `matlabroot/toolbox/simulink/simdemos/simfeatures/src/stvctf.c`

The S-function `stvctf.c` begins with `#define` statements for the S-function name and level, along with a `#include` statement for the `simstruc.h` header. After these statements, the S-function includes or defines any other necessary headers, data, etc. This example defines parameters for the transfer function's numerator and denominator, which are entered into the S-function dialog. The comments at the beginning of this S-function provide additional information on the purpose of the work vectors in this example.

```
/*
 * File : stvctf.c
 * Abstract:
 *   Time Varying Continuous Transfer Function block
 *
 *   This S-function implements a continuous time transfer function
 *   whose transfer function polynomials are passed in via the input
 *   vector. This is useful for continuous time adaptive control
 *   applications.
 *
 *   This S-function is also an example of how to use banks to avoid
 *   problems with computing derivatives when a continuous output has
 *   discontinuities. The consistency checker can be used to verify that
 *   your S-function is correct with respect to always maintaining smooth
```

```

* and consistent signals for the integrators. By consistent we mean that
* two mdlOutputs calls at major time t and minor time t are always the
* same. The consistency checker is enabled on the diagnostics page of the
* Configuraion parameters dialog box. The update method of this S-function
* modifies the coefficients of the transfer function, which cause the
* output to "jump." To have the simulation work properly, we need to let
* the solver know of these discontinuities by setting
* ssSetSolverNeedsReset and then we need to use multiple banks of
* coefficients so the coefficients used in the major time step output
* and the minor time step outputs are the same. In the simulation loop
* we have:
* Loop:
*   o Output in major time step at time t
*   o Update in major time step at time t
*   o Integrate (minor time step):
*       o Consistency check: recompute outputs at time t and compare
*         with current outputs.
*       o Derivatives at time t
*       o One or more Output, Derivative evaluations at time t+k
*         where k <= step_size to be taken.
*       o Compute state, x
*       o t = t + step_size
*   End_Integrate
* End_Loop
* Another purpose of the consistency checker is to verify that when
* the solver needs to try a smaller step_size, the recomputing of
* the output and derivatives at time t doesn't change. Step size
* reduction occurs when tolerances aren't met for the current step size.
* The ideal ordering would be to update after integrate. To achieve
* this we have two banks of coefficients. And the use of the new
* coefficients, which were computed in update, is delayed until after
* the integrate phase is complete.
*
* This block has multiple sample times and will not work correctly
* in a multitasking environment. It is designed to be used in
* a single tasking (or variable step) simulation environment.
* Because this block accesses the input signal in both tasks,
* it cannot specify the sample times of the input and output ports
* (SS_OPTION_PORT_SAMPLE_TIMES_ASSIGNED).
*
* See simulink/src/sfuntmpl_doc.c.
*
* Copyright 1990-7 The MathWorks, Inc.
*/

```

```

#define S_FUNCTION_NAME stvctf
#define S_FUNCTION_LEVEL 2

#include "simstruc.h"

/*
 * Defines for easy access to the numerator and denominator polynomials
 * parameters
 */
#define NUM(S)  ssGetSFcnParam(S, 0)
#define DEN(S)  ssGetSFcnParam(S, 1)
#define TS(S)   ssGetSFcnParam(S, 2)
#define NPARAMS 3

```

This S-function implements the `mdlCheckParameters` method to check the validity of the S-function dialog parameters. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. The `#if` defined statement checks that this function is compiled as a MEX file, instead of for use with the Simulink Coder product. The body of the function performs basic checks to ensure that the user entered real vectors for the numerator and denominator, and that the denominator has a higher order than the numerator. If the parameter check fails, the S-function errors out.

```

#define MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS
#if defined(MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
/* Function: mdlCheckParameters =====
 * Abstract:

```

```

*   Validate our parameters to verify:
*   o The numerator must be of a lower order than the denominator.
*   o The sample time must be a real positive nonzero value.
*/
static void mdlCheckParameters(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T i;

    for (i = 0; i < NPARAMS; i++) {
        real_T *pr;
        int_T   el;
        int_T   nEls;
        if (mxEIsEmpty(  ssGetSFcnParam(S,i)) ||
            mxIsSparse(  ssGetSFcnParam(S,i)) ||
            mxIsComplex( ssGetSFcnParam(S,i)) ||
            !mxIsNumeric( ssGetSFcnParam(S,i) ) ) {
            ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Parameters must be real finite vectors");
            return;
        }
        pr = mxGetPr(ssGetSFcnParam(S,i));
        nEls = mxGetNumberOfElements(ssGetSFcnParam(S,i));
        for (el = 0; el < nEls; el++) {
            if (!mxIsFinite(pr[el])) {
                ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Parameters must be real finite vectors");
                return;
            }
        }
    }

    if (mxGetNumberOfElements(NUM(S)) > mxGetNumberOfElements(DEN(S)) &&
        mxGetNumberOfElements(DEN(S)) > 0 && *mxGetPr(DEN(S)) != 0.0) {
        ssSetErrorStatus(S,"The denominator must be of higher order than "
            "the numerator, nonempty and with first "
            "element nonzero");
        return;
    }

    /* xxx verify finite */
    if (mxGetNumberOfElements(TS(S)) != 1 || mxGetPr(TS(S))[0] <= 0.0) {
        ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Invalid sample time specified");
        return;
    }
}
#endif /* MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSizes` then sets up the following S-function characteristics.

- `ssSetNumSFcnParams` sets the number of expected S-function dialog parameters to three, as defined previously in the variable `NPARAMS`.
- If this method is compiled as a MEX file, `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` determines how many parameters the user entered into the S-function dialog. If the number of user-specified parameters matches the number returned by `ssGetNumSFcnParams`, the method calls `mdlCheckParameters` to check the validity of the user-entered data. Otherwise, the S-function errors out.
- If the parameter check passes, the S-function specifies the number of continuous and discrete states using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`, respectively. This example has no discrete states and sets the number of continuous states based on the number of coefficients in the transfer function's denominator.
- Next, `ssSetNumInputPorts` specifies that the S-function has a single input port and sets its width to one plus twice the length of the denominator using `ssSetInputPortWidth`. The method uses the value provided by the third S-function dialog parameter as the input port's sample time. This parameter indicates the rate at which the transfer function is modified during simulation. The

S-function specifies that the input port has direct feedthrough by passing a value of 1 to `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough`.

- `ssSetNumOutputPorts` specifies that the S-function has a single output port. The method uses `ssSetOutputPortWidth` to set the width of this output port, `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime` to specify that the output port has a continuous sample time, and `ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime` to set the offset time to zero.
- `ssSetNumSampleTimes` then initializes two sample times, which the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` function configures later.
- The method passes a value of four times the number of denominator coefficients to `ssSetNumRWork` in order to set the length of the floating-point work vector. `ssSetNumIWork` then sets the length of the integer work vector to two. The RWork vectors store two banks of transfer function coefficients, while the IWork vector indicates which bank in the RWork vector is currently in use. The S-function sets the length of all other work vectors to zero. You can omit these lines because zero is the default value for these macros. However, for clarity, the S-function explicitly sets the number of work vectors.
- Lastly, `ssSetOptions` sets any applicable options. In this case, `SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE` stipulates that the code is exception free.

The `mdlInitializeSizes` function for this example is shown below.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSizes =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Determine the S-function block's characteristics:
 *   number of inputs, outputs, states, etc.
 */
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T nContStates;
    int_T nCoeffs;

    /* See sfuntmpl_doc.c for more details on the macros below. */

    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, NPARAMS); /* Number of expected parameters. */
#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) == ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        mdlCheckParameters(S);
        if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) {
            return;
        }
    } else {
        return; /* Parameter mismatch reported by the Simulink engine*/
    }
#endif

    /*
     * Define the characteristics of the block:
     */
    *   Number of continuous states:    length of denominator - 1
    *   Inputs port width                2 * (NumContStates+1) + 1
    *   Output port width                1
    *   DirectFeedThrough:              0 (Although this should be computed.
    *                                   We'll assume coefficients entered
    *                                   are strictly proper).
    *
    *   Number of sample times:          2 (continuous and discrete)
    *   Number of Real work elements:    4*NumCoeffs
    *                                   (Two banks for num and den coeff's:
    *                                   NumBank0Coeffs
    *                                   DenBank0Coeffs
    *                                   NumBank1Coeffs
    *                                   DenBank1Coeffs)
    *   Number of Integer work elements: 2 (indicator of active bank 0 or 1
    *                                   and flag to indicate when banks
    *                                   have been updated).
    */

```

```

*
* The number of inputs arises from the following:
*   o 1 input (u)
*   o the numerator and denominator polynomials each have NumContStates+1
*     coefficients
*/
nCoeffs    = mxGetNumberOfElements(DEN(S));
nContStates = nCoeffs - 1;

ssSetNumContStates(S, nContStates);
ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 0);

if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, 1)) return;
ssSetInputPortWidth(S, 0, 1 + (2*nCoeffs));
ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, 0, 0);
ssSetInputPortSampleTime(S, 0, mxGetPr(TS(S))[0]);
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, 0);

if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S,1)) return;
ssSetOutputPortWidth(S, 0, 1);
ssSetOutputPortSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);
ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime(S, 0, 0);

ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 2);

ssSetNumRWork(S, 4 * nCoeffs);
ssSetNumIWork(S, 2);
ssSetNumPWork(S, 0);

ssSetNumModes(S, 0);
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0);

/* Take care when specifying exception free code - see sfuntmpl_doc.c */
ssSetOptions(S, (SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE));
} /* end mdlInitializeSizes */

```

The required S-function method `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` specifies the S-function sample rates. The first call to `ssSetSampleTime` specifies that the first sample rate is continuous and the subsequent call to `ssSetOffsetTime` sets the offset to zero. The second call to this pair of macros sets the second sample time to the value of the third S-function parameter with an offset of zero. The call to `ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance` tells the solver to use the default rule to determine if referenced models containing this S-function can inherit their sample times from the parent model.

```

/* Function: mdlInitializeSampleTimes =====
* Abstract:
*   This function is used to specify the sample time(s) for the
*   S-function. This S-function has two sample times. The
*   first, a continuous sample time, is used for the input to the
*   transfer function, u. The second, a discrete sample time
*   provided by the user, defines the rate at which the transfer
*   function coefficients are updated.
*/
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
{
    /*
    * the first sample time, continuous
    */
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 0, CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 0, 0.0);

    /*
    * the second, discrete sample time, is user provided
    */
    ssSetSampleTime(S, 1, mxGetPr(TS(S))[0]);
    ssSetOffsetTime(S, 1, 0.0);
    ssSetModelReferenceSampleTimeDefaultInheritance(S);
}

```

```
 } /* end mdlInitializeSampleTimes */
```

The optional S-function method `mdlInitializeConditions` initializes the continuous state vector and the initial numerator and denominator vectors. The `#define` statement before this method is required for the Simulink engine to call this function. The function initializes the continuous states to zero. The numerator and denominator coefficients are initialized from the first two S-function parameters, normalized by the first denominator coefficient. The function sets the value stored in the `IWork` vector to zero, to indicate that the first bank of numerator and denominator coefficients stored in the `RWork` vector is currently in use.

```
#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS
/* Function: mdlInitializeConditions =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Initialize the states, numerator and denominator coefficients.
 */
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T i;
    int_T nContStates = ssGetNumContStates(S);
    real_T *x0        = ssGetContStates(S);
    int_T nCoeffs     = nContStates + 1;
    real_T *numBank0  = ssGetRWork(S);
    real_T *denBank0  = numBank0 + nCoeffs;
    int_T *activeBank = ssGetIWork(S);

    /*
     * The continuous states are all initialized to zero.
     */
    for (i = 0; i < nContStates; i++) {
        x0[i]      = 0.0;
        numBank0[i] = 0.0;
        denBank0[i] = 0.0;
    }
    numBank0[nContStates] = 0.0;
    denBank0[nContStates] = 0.0;

    /*
     * Set up the initial numerator and denominator.
     */
    {
        const real_T *numParam = mxGetPr(NUM(S));
        int          numParamLen = mxGetNumberOfElements(NUM(S));

        const real_T *denParam = mxGetPr(DEN(S));
        int          denParamLen = mxGetNumberOfElements(DEN(S));
        real_T       den0       = denParam[0];

        for (i = 0; i < denParamLen; i++) {
            denBank0[i] = denParam[i] / den0;
        }

        for (i = 0; i < numParamLen; i++) {
            numBank0[i] = numParam[i] / den0;
        }
    }

    /*
     * Normalize if this transfer function has direct feedthrough.
     */
    for (i = 1; i < nCoeffs; i++) {
        numBank0[i] -= denBank0[i]*numBank0[0];
    }

    /*
     * Indicate bank0 is active (i.e. bank1 is oldest).
     */
    *activeBank = 0;
} /* end mdlInitializeConditions */
```



The `mdlOutputs` function calculates the S-function output signals when the S-function is simulating in a continuous task, i.e., `ssIsContinuousTask` is true. If the simulation is also at a major time step, `mdlOutputs` checks if the numerator and denominator coefficients need to be updated, as indicated by a switch in the active bank stored in the `IWork` vector. At both major and minor time steps, the S-function calculates the output using the numerator coefficients stored in the active bank.

```

/* Function: mdlOutputs =====
 * Abstract:
 *   The outputs for this block are computed by using a controllable state-
 *   space representation of the transfer function.
 */
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    if (ssIsContinuousTask(S,tid)) {
        int         i;
        real_T      *num;
        int         nContStates = ssGetNumContStates(S);
        real_T      *x          = ssGetContStates(S);
        int_T       nCoeffs    = nContStates + 1;
        InputRealPtrsType uPtrs  = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
        real_T      *y          = ssGetOutputPortRealSignal(S,0);
        int_T       *activeBank = ssGetIWork(S);

        /*
         * Switch banks because we've updated them in mdlUpdate and we're no
         * longer in a minor time step.
         */
        if (ssIsMajorTimeStep(S)) {
            int_T *banksUpdated = ssGetIWork(S) + 1;
            if (*banksUpdated) {
                *activeBank = !(*activeBank);
                *banksUpdated = 0;
            }
            /*
             * Need to tell the solvers that the derivatives are no
             * longer valid.
             */
            ssSetSolverNeedsReset(S);
        }
    }
    num = ssGetRWork(S) + (*activeBank) * (2*nCoeffs);

    /*
     * The continuous system is evaluated using a controllable state space
     * representation of the transfer function. This implies that the
     * output of the system is equal to:
     *
     *   y(t) = Cx(t) + Du(t)
     *          = [ b1 b2 ... bn]x(t) + b0u(t)
     *
     * where b0, b1, b2, ... are the coefficients of the numerator
     * polynomial:
     *
     *   B(s) = b0 s^n + b1 s^(n-1) + b2 s^(n-2) + ... + bn-1 s + bn
     */
    *y = *num++ * (*uPtrs[0]);
    for (i = 0; i < nContStates; i++) {
        *y += *num++ * *x++;
    }
}

} /* end mdlOutputs */

```

Although this example has no discrete states, the method still implements the `mdlUpdate` function to update the transfer function coefficients at every major time step. Because this method is optional, a `#define` statement precedes it. The method uses `ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs` to obtain a pointer to the input signal. The input signal's values become the new transfer function coefficients, which the S-function stores in the bank of the inactive `RWork` vector. When the `mdlOutputs` function

is later called at this major time step, it updates the active bank to be this updated bank of coefficients.

```

#define MDL_UPDATE
/* Function: mdlUpdate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Every time through the simulation loop, update the
 *   transfer function coefficients. Here we update the oldest bank.
 */
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    if (ssIsSampleHit(S, 1, tid)) {
        int_T          i;
        InputRealPtrsType uPtrs      = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);
        int_T          uIdx          = 1; /*1st coeff is after signal input*/
        int_T          nContStates   = ssGetNumContStates(S);
        int_T          nCoeffs      = nContStates + 1;
        int_T          bankToUpdate = !ssGetIWork(S)[0];
        real_T         *num          = ssGetRWork(S)+bankToUpdate*2*nCoeffs;
        real_T         *den          = num + nCoeffs;

        real_T         den0;
        int_T          allZero;

        /*
         * Get the first denominator coefficient. It will be used
         * for normalizing the numerator and denominator coefficients.
         *
         * If all inputs are zero, we probably could have unconnected
         * inputs, so use the parameter as the first denominator coefficient.
         */
        den0 = *uPtrs[uIdx+nCoeffs];
        if (den0 == 0.0) {
            den0 = mxGetPr(DEN(S))[0];
        }

        /*
         * Grab the numerator.
         */
        allZero = 1;
        for (i = 0; (i < nCoeffs) && allZero; i++) {
            allZero &= *uPtrs[uIdx+i] == 0.0;
        }

        if (allZero) { /* if numerator is all zero */
            const real_T *numParam = mxGetPr(NUM(S));
            int_T        numParamLen = mxGetNumberOfElements(NUM(S));
            /*
             * Move the input to the denominator input and
             * get the denominator from the input parameter.
             */
            uIdx += nCoeffs;
            num += nCoeffs - numParamLen;
            for (i = 0; i < numParamLen; i++) {
                *num++ = *numParam++ / den0;
            }
        } else {
            for (i = 0; i < nCoeffs; i++) {
                *num++ = *uPtrs[uIdx++] / den0;
            }
        }

        /*
         * Grab the denominator.
         */
        allZero = 1;
        for (i = 0; (i < nCoeffs) && allZero; i++) {
            allZero &= *uPtrs[uIdx+i] == 0.0;
        }

        if (allZero) { /* If denominator is all zero. */

```

```

    const real_T *denParam = mxGetPr(DEN(S));
    int_T        denParamLen = mxGetNumberOfElements(DEN(S));

    den0 = denParam[0];
    for (i = 0; i < denParamLen; i++) {
        *den++ = *denParam++ / den0;
    }
} else {
    for (i = 0; i < nCoeffs; i++) {
        *den++ = *uPtrs[uIdx++] / den0;
    }
}

/*
 * Normalize if this transfer function has direct feedthrough.
 */
num = ssGetRWork(S) + bankToUpdate*2*nCoeffs;
den = num + nCoeffs;
for (i = 1; i < nCoeffs; i++) {
    num[i] -= den[i]*num[0];
}

/*
 * Indicate oldest bank has been updated.
 */
ssGetIWork(S)[1] = 1;
}

} /* end mdlUpdate */

```

The `mdlDerivatives` function calculates the continuous state derivatives. The function uses the coefficients from the active bank to solve a controllable state-space representation of the transfer function.

```

#define MDL_DERIVATIVES
/* Function: mdlDerivatives =====
 * Abstract:
 *   The derivatives for this block are computed by using a controllable
 *   state-space representation of the transfer function.
 */
static void mdlDerivatives(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T        i;
    int_T        nContStates = ssGetNumContStates(S);
    real_T       *x           = ssGetContStates(S);
    real_T       *dx          = ssGetdX(S);
    int_T        nCoeffs     = nContStates + 1;
    int_T        activeBank  = ssGetIWork(S)[0];
    const real_T *num         = ssGetRWork(S) + activeBank*(2*nCoeffs);
    const real_T *den         = num + nCoeffs;
    InputRealPtrsType uPtrs  = ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs(S,0);

    /*
     * The continuous system is evaluated using a controllable state-space
     * representation of the transfer function. This implies that the
     * next continuous states are computed using:
     *
     *   dx = Ax(t) + Bu(t)
     *       = [-a1 -a2 ... -an] [x1(t)] + [u(t)]
     *         [ 1  0 ...  0] [x2(t)] + [0]
     *         [ 0  1 ...  0] [x3(t)] + [0]
     *         [ . . ... .] . . . + .
     *         [ . . ... .] . . . + .
     *         [ . . ... .] . . . + .
     *         [ 0  0 ... 1 0] [xn(t)] + [0]
     *
     * where a1, a2, ... are the coefficients of the numerator polynomial:
     *
     *   A(s) = s^n + a1 s^(n-1) + a2 s^(n-2) + ... + an-1 s + an
     */
    dx[0] = -den[1] * x[0] + *uPtrs[0];
}

```

```
    for (i = 1; i < nContStates; i++) {
        dx[i] = x[i-1];
        dx[0] -= den[i+1] * x[i];
    }
} /* end mdlDerivatives */
```

The required `mdlTerminate` function performs any actions, such as freeing memory, necessary at the end of the simulation. In this example, the function is empty.

```
/* Function: mdlTerminate =====
 * Abstract:
 *   Called when the simulation is terminated.
 *   For this block, there are no end of simulation tasks.
 */
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    UNUSED_ARG(S); /* unused input argument */
} /* end mdlTerminate */
```

The required S-function trailer includes the files necessary for simulation or code generation, as follows.

```
#ifdef MATLAB_MEX_FILE /* Is this file being compiled as a MEX file? */
#include "simulink.c" /* MEX file interface mechanism */
#else
#include "cg_sfun.h" /* Code generation registration function */
#endif
```

---

**Note** The `mdlTerminate` function uses the `UNUSED_ARG` macro to indicate that an input argument the callback requires is not used. This optional macro is defined in `simstruc_types.h`. If used, you must call this macro once for each input argument that a callback does not use.

---

### See Also

`mdlInitializeSizes` | `mdlUpdate` | `mdlTerminate`

### More About

- “Create a Basic C MEX S-Function” on page 4-2
- “S-Function Callback Methods” on page 1-14
- “SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

# Implement Block Features for MATLAB S-Functions

---

- “Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions” on page 10-2
- “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 10-4
- “Create Input and Output Ports” on page 10-6
- “Inherit Custom Data Types” on page 10-8
- “Specify S-Function Sample Times” on page 10-9
- “S-Function Compliance with ModelOperatingPoint” on page 10-12
- “Use DWork Vectors in S-Functions” on page 10-14
- “Use MATLAB S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode” on page 10-18

## Pass Dialog Parameters to S-Functions

### In this section...

“Using Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Dialog Parameters” on page 10-2

“Tunable Parameters” on page 10-2

You can pass parameters to an S-function at the start of and during the simulation, using the **S-function parameters** field of the Block Parameters dialog box. Such parameters are called *dialog box parameters* to distinguish them from run-time parameters created by the S-function to facilitate code generation (see “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5).

**Note** You cannot use the Model Explorer, the S-function Block Parameters dialog box, or a mask to tune the parameters of a source S-function, i.e., an S-function that has outputs but no inputs, while a simulation is running. For more information, see “Tune and Experiment with Block Parameter Values”.

### Using Level-2 MATLAB S-Function Dialog Parameters

The Simulink engine stores Level-2 MATLAB S-function dialog parameters in the block run-time object. To use dialog parameters in a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, perform the following steps when you create the S-function:

- 1 Determine the order in which the parameters are to be specified in the block's dialog box.
- 2 In the `setup` method, set the run-time object's `NumDialogPrms` property to indicate to the engine how many parameters the S-function accepts, for example:

```
block.NumDialogPrms = 2;
```

- 3 Access the dialog box parameters in the S-function using the run-time object's `DialogPrm` method. The dialog parameter's `Data` property stores its current value, for example:

```
param1 = block.DialogPrm(1).Data;
param2 = block.DialogPrm(2).Data;
```

When running a simulation, you must specify the parameters in the **Parameters** field of the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function **Block Parameters** dialog in the same order that you defined them in step 1.

### Tunable Parameters

Dialog parameters can be either tunable or nontunable. A tunable parameter is a parameter that a user can change while the simulation is running.

**Note** Dialog box parameters are tunable by default. Nevertheless, it is good programming practice to set the tunability of every parameter, even those that are tunable. If you enable the simulation diagnostic **S-function upgrades needed**, the Simulink engine issues the diagnostic whenever it encounters an S-function that fails to specify the tunability of all its parameters.

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, set the run-time object `DialogPrmsTunable` property in the `setup` method to specify the tunability of each S-function dialog box parameter. For example, the following

line sets the first parameter of an S-function with three dialog parameters to tunable, and the second and third parameters to nontunable.

```
block.DialogPrmsTunable = {'Tunable', 'Nontunable', 'Nontunable'};
```

## See Also

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

## More About

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4

## Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters

You can create internal representations of external S-function dialog box parameters called *run-time parameters*. Every run-time parameter corresponds to one or more dialog box parameters and can have the same value and data type as its corresponding external parameters or a different value or data type. If a run-time parameter differs in value or data type from its external counterpart, the dialog parameter is said to have been transformed to create the run-time parameter. The value of a run-time parameter that corresponds to multiple dialog parameters is typically a function of the values of the dialog parameters. The Simulink engine allocates and frees storage for run-time parameters and provides functions for updating and accessing them, thus eliminating the need for S-functions to perform these tasks. Run-time parameters facilitate the following kinds of S-function operations:

- Computed parameters

Often the output of a block is a function of the values of several dialog parameters. For example, suppose a block has two parameters, the volume and density of some object, and the output of the block is a function of the input signal and the mass of the object. In this case, the mass can be viewed as a third internal parameter computed from the two external parameters, volume and density. An S-function can create a run-time parameter corresponding to the computed weight, thereby eliminating the need to provide special case handling for weight in the output computation. See “Creating Run-Time Parameters from Multiple S-Function Parameters” on page 9-7 for more information.

- Data type conversions

Often a block needs to change the data type of a dialog parameter to facilitate internal processing. For example, suppose that the output of the block is a function of the input and a dialog parameter and the input and dialog parameter are of different data types. In this case, the S-function can create a run-time parameter that has the same value as the dialog parameter but has the data type of the input signal, and use the run-time parameter in the computation of the output.

- Code generation

During code generation, the Simulink Coder product writes all run-time parameters automatically to the `model.rtw` file, eliminating the need for the S-function to perform this task via an `mdlRTW` method.

### Create Run-Time Parameters

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, you create run-time parameters associated with all the tunable dialog parameters. Use the run-time object's `AutoRegRuntimePrms` method in the `PostPropagationSetup` callback method to register the block's run-time parameters. For example:

```
block.AutoRegRuntimePrms;
```

### Update Run-Time Parameters

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, update the run-time parameters using the `AutoUpdateRuntimePrms` method in the `ProcessParameters` callback method. For example:

```
block.AutoUpdateRuntimePrms;
```



## **See Also**

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

## **More About**

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4

## Create Input and Output Ports

### Creating Input Ports for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

To create and configure input ports, the `setup` method should first specify the number of S-function input ports, using the run-time object `NumInputPorts` property. Next, if all input ports inherit their functional properties (data type, dimensions, complexity, and sampling mode) from their input signals, include the following line in the `setup` method:

```
block.SetPreCompInpPortInfoToDynamic;
```

Then, for each input port, the `setup` method can specify

- The dimensions of the input port, using `block.InputPort(n).Dimensions`.

To individually specify that an input port's dimensions are dynamically sized, assign a value of `-1` to the dimensions. In this case, you can implement the `SetInputPortDimensions` method to set the dimensions during signal propagation.

- Whether the input port has direct feedthrough, using `block.InputPort(n).DirectFeedthrough`.

A port has direct feedthrough if the input is used in the `Outputs` functions to calculate either the outputs or the next sample time hit. The direct feedthrough flag for each input port can be set to either `1=yes` or `0=no`. Setting the direct feedthrough flag to `0` tells the Simulink engine that `u` is not used to calculate the outputs or next sample time hit. Violating this leads to unpredictable results.

- The data type of the input port, using `block.InputPort(n).DatatypeID`. See the explanation for the “DatatypeID” property in the `Simulink.BlockData` data object reference page for a list of valid data type IDs.

If you want the data type of the port to depend on the data type of the port to which it is connected, specify the data type as `-1`. In this case, you can implement the `SetInputPortDataType` method to set the data type during signal propagation.

- The numeric type of the input port, if the port accepts complex-valued signals, using `block.InputPort(n).Complexity`.

If you want the numeric type of the port to depend on the numeric type of the port to which it is connected, specify the numeric type as `'Inherited'`. In this case, you can implement the `SetInputPortComplexSignal` method to set the numeric type during signal propagation.

For an example that configures a Level-2 MATLAB S-function with multiple input and output ports, open the model `sldemo_msfcn_lms` and inspect the S-function `adapt_lms.m`.

### Creating Output Ports for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

To create output ports for Level-2 MATLAB S-functions the `setup` method should first specify the number of S-function output ports, using the run-time object `NumOutputPorts` property. Next, if all output ports inherit their functional properties (data type, dimensions, complexity, and sampling mode), include the following line in the `setup` method:

```
block.SetPreCompOutPortInfoToDynamic;
```

Configure the output ports exactly as you configure input ports. See “Creating Input Ports for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 10-6 for a list of properties you can specify for each output port, substituting `OutputPort` for `InputPort` in each call to the run-time object.

## Scalar Expansion of Inputs

Scalar expansion of inputs refers conceptually to the process of expanding scalar input signals to the same dimensions as wide input signals connected to other S-function input ports. This is done by setting each element of the expanded signal to the value of the scalar input.

A C MEX S-function's `mdlInitializeSizes` method enables scalar expansion of inputs by setting the `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_INPUT_SCALAR_EXPANSION` option, using `ssSetOptions`.

## Masked Multiport S-Functions

If you are developing masked multiport S-function blocks whose number of ports varies based on some parameter, and want to place them in a Simulink library, you must specify that the mask modifies the appearance of the block. To do this, execute the command

```
set_param(blockname, 'MaskSelfModifiable', 'on')
```

at the MATLAB command prompt before saving the library, where *blockname* is the full path to the block. Failure to specify that the mask modifies the appearance of the block means that an instance of the block in a model reverts to the number of ports in the library whenever you load the model or update the library link.

## See Also

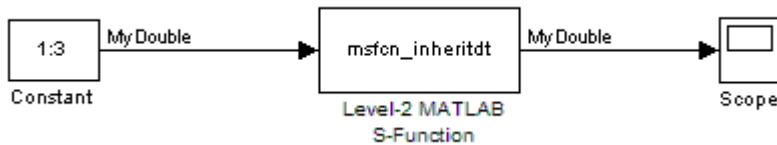
[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

## More About

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4

## Inherit Custom Data Types

Level-2 MATLAB S-functions do not support defining custom data types within the S-function. However, input and output ports can inherit their data types from a `Simulink.NumericType` or `Simulink.AliasType` object. For example, the S-function in the following model inherits its input data type from the Constant block:



The Constant block's **Output data type** field contains the value `MyDouble`, which is a `Simulink.AliasType` defined in the MATLAB workspace with the following line of code:

```
MyDouble = Simulink.AliasType('double');
```

The input and output ports of the Level-2 MATLAB S-function `msfcn_inheritdt.m` inherit their data types. When the Simulink engine performs data type propagation, it assigns the data type `MyDouble` to these ports.

You can define a fixed-point data type within a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, using one of the following three methods:

- `RegisterDataTypeFxpBinaryPoint` registers a fixed-point data type with binary point-only scaling
- `RegisterDataTypeFxpFSlopeFixExpBias` registers a fixed-point data type with [Slope Bias] scaling specified in terms of fractional slope, fixed exponent, and bias
- `RegisterDataTypeFxpSlopeBias` registers a data type with [Slope Bias] scaling

---

**Note** If the registered data type is not one of the Simulink built-in data types, you must have a Fixed-Point Designer™ license.

---

If you have Fixed-Point Designer, inspect the example models and S-functions provided with the software for examples using the macros for defining fixed-point data types.

### See Also

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function

### More About

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4
- “Write Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions” on page 3-2

## Specify S-Function Sample Times

### About Sample Times

You can specify the sample-time behavior of your S-functions in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`. Your S-function can inherit its rates from the blocks that drive it or define its own rates.

You can specify your S-function rates (i.e., sample times) as

- Block-based sample times
- Port-based sample times
- Hybrid block-based and port-based sample times

With block-based sample times, the S-function specifies a set of operating rates for the block as a whole during the initialization phase of the simulation. With port-based sample times, the S-function specifies a sample time for each input and output port individually during initialization. During the simulation phase, with block-based sample times, the S-function processes all inputs and outputs each time a sample hit occurs for the block. By contrast, with port-based sample times, the block processes a particular port only when a sample hit occurs for that port.

For example, consider two sample rates, 0.5 and 0.25 seconds, respectively:

- In the block-based method, selecting 0.5 and 0.25 directs the block to execute inputs and outputs at 0.25 second increments.
- In the port-based method, setting the input port to 0.5 and the output port to 0.25 causes the block to process inputs at 2 Hz and outputs at 4 Hz.

You should use port-based sample times if your application requires unequal sample rates for input and output execution or if you do not want the overhead associated with running input and output ports at the highest sample rate of your block.

In some applications, an S-Function block might need to operate internally at one or more sample rates while inputting or outputting signals at other rates. The hybrid block- and port-based method of specifying sample rates allows you to create such blocks.

In typical applications, you specify only one block-based sample time. Advanced S-functions might require the specification of port-based or multiple block sample times.

### Block Based Sample Times

Level-2 MATLAB S-functions specify block-based sample times in their `setup` method. Use the line

```
block.SampleTimes = [sampleTime offsetTime];
```

to specify the sample time. Use a value of `[-1 0]` to indicate an inherited sample time. See “Specify Sample Time” in *Using Simulink* for a complete list of valid sample times.

### Specifying Port-Based Sample Times

To use port-based sample times in a Level-2 MATLAB S-function:

- Specify the sample and offset times for each S-function port in the `setup` method. For example:

```
block.InputPort(1).SampleTime = [-1 0];  
block.OutputPort(1).SampleTime = [-1 0];
```

The `setup` method must not specify a sample time for the block when using port-based sample times.

- Provide `SetInputPortSampleTime` and `SetOutputPortSampleTime` methods, even if your S-function does not inherit its port-based sample times.

### Specifying Inherited Sample Time for a Port

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use a value of `[-1 0]` for the `SampleTime` property of each port to specify that the port inherits its sample time.

### Specifying Constant Sample Time (Inf) for a Port

If your S-function uses port-based sample times, it can set a sample time of `Inf` on any of its ports. A port-based sample time of `Inf` means that the signal entering or leaving the port stays constant.

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use this code to specify a sample time of `Inf` for a port:

```
block.OutputPort(1).SampleTime = [inf 0];  
block.SetAllowConstantSampleTime(true);
```

### Configuring Port-Based Sample Times for Use in Triggered Subsystems

Level-2 MATLAB S-functions with port-based sample times cannot be placed in a triggered subsystem. You must modify your S-function to use block-based sample times if you need to include it in a triggered subsystem.

## Hybrid Block-Based and Port-Based Sample Times

Level-2 MATLAB S-functions support port-based sample times, but do not support hybrid block-based sample times. See “Specifying Port-Based Sample Times” on page 9-23 for more information.

## Multirate S-Function Blocks

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use the `IsSampleHit` method to determine whether the current simulation time is one at which a task handled by this block is active.

If you write TLC code to generate inlined code from an S-function, and if the TLC code contains an `Outputs` function, you must modify the TLC code if all of these conditions are true:

- The output port has a constant value. It uses or inherits a sample time of `Inf`.
- The S-function is a multi-rate S-function.

In this case, the TLC code must generate code for the constant-valued output port by using the function `OutputsForTID` instead of the function `Outputs`. For more information, see “Specifying Constant Sample Time (Inf) for a Port” on page 9-24.

## Synchronizing Multirate S-Function Blocks

If tasks running at different rates need to share data, you must ensure that data generated by one task is valid when accessed by another task running at a different rate.

Suppose, for example, that your model has an input port operating at one rate (with a sample time index of 0) and an output port operating at a slower rate (with a sample time index of 1). Further, suppose that you want the output port to output the value currently on the input. Note that higher-rate tasks always run before slower-rate tasks. Thus, the input task always runs before the output task, ensuring that valid data is always present at the output port.

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use the `IsSpecialSampleHit` method to determine whether the current simulation time is one at which multiple tasks implemented by this block are active.

### See Also

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

### More About

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4

## S-Function Compliance with ModelOperatingPoint

### ModelOperatingPoint Compliance Specification for Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

For the default ModelOperatingPoint compliance setting, Simulink saves and restores the following data for a block:

- Continuous state values
- Values stored in non-scratch DWork vectors (this includes IWork, RWork and Mode DWorks)
- Values of Zero Crossing signals

In order for a Level-2 MATLAB S-function to work with the ModelOperatingPoint feature, you must specify the simStateCompliance of the block using the method,

```
block.simStateCompliance = setting
```

where the permissible setting values are:

Setting	Result
OPERATING_POINT_COMPLIANCE_UNKNOWN	This default setting instructs Simulink to use the USE_DEFAULT_OPERATING_POINT to save and restore the ModelOperatingPoint and issues a warning.
USE_DEFAULT_OPERATING_POINT	This setting instructs Simulink to treat the S-function like a built-in block when saving and restoring the ModelOperatingPoint.
USE_EMPTY_OPERATING_POINT	This setting informs Simulink that the S-function does not have any simulation state. With this setting, no state information is saved for the block. This setting is primarily useful for "sink" blocks (i.e., blocks with no output ports) that use PWorks or DWorks to store handles to files or figure windows.  <b>Note</b> This setting is not allowed if the S-function registers any discrete or continuous states or zero crossing signals.
USE_CUSTOM_OPERATING_POINT	This setting informs Simulink that the S-function has custom GetOperatingPoint and SetOperatingPoint methods.
DISALLOW_OPERATING_POINT	This setting informs Simulink that the S-function does not allow saving or restoring its simulation state. Simulink reports an error if you save and restore the ModelOperatingPoint of the model that contains this S-function.

For an S-function with custom methods ('USE\_CUSTOM\_OPERATING\_POINT'), you can use the following statements to respectively get and set the ModelOperatingPoint:

```
function outSS = GetOperatingPoint(block)
function SetOperatingPoint(block, inSS)
```

For an example of how to implement these custom methods, see `msfcn_varpulse.m`.

### See Also

Level-2 MATLAB S-Function | S-Function Builder | S-Function | MATLAB Function



## **More About**

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4

## Use DWork Vectors in S-Functions

### What is a DWork Vector?

DWork vectors are blocks of memory that an S-function asks the Simulink engine to allocate to each instance of the S-function in a model. If multiple instances of your S-function can occur in a model, your S-function must use DWork vectors instead of global or static memory to store instance-specific values of S-function variables. Otherwise, your S-function runs the risk of one instance overwriting data needed by another instance, causing a simulation to fail or produce incorrect results. The ability to keep track of multiple instances of an S-function is called *reentrancy*.

You can create an S-function that is reentrant by using DWork vectors that the engine manages for each particular instance of the S-function.

DWork vectors have several advantages:

- Provide instance-specific storage for block variables
- Support floating-point, integer, pointer, and general data types
- Eliminate static and global variables
- Interact directly with the Simulink engine to perform memory allocation, initialization, and deallocation
- Facilitate inlining the S-function during code generation
- Provide more control over how data appears in the generated code

---

**Note** DWork vectors are the most generalized and versatile type of work vector and the following sections focus on their use. The Simulink product provides additional elementary types of work vectors that support floating-point, integer, pointer, and mode data. You can find a discussion of these work vectors in “Elementary Work Vectors” on page 8-15.

---

DWork vectors provide the most flexibility for setting data types, names, etc., of the data in the simulation and during code generation. The following list describes all the properties that you can set on a DWork vector:

- Data type
- Size
- Numeric type, either real or complex
- Name
- Usage type (see “Types of DWork Vectors” on page 8-4)
- Simulink Coder identifier
- Simulink Coder storage class
- Simulink Coder C type qualifier

See “How to Use DWork Vectors” on page 8-5 for instructions on how to set these properties. The three Simulink Coder properties pertain only to code generation and have no effect during simulation.

## How to Use DWork Vectors in Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

### Using DWork Vectors in Level-2 MATLAB S-Functions

The following steps show how to initialize and use DWork vectors in Level-2 MATLAB S-functions. These steps use the S-function `msfcn_unit_delay.m`.

- 1 In the `PostPropagationSetup` method, initialize the number of DWork vectors and the attributes of each vector. For example, the following `PostPropagationSetup` callback method configures one DWork vector used to store a discrete state.

```
function PostPropagationSetup(block)

    %% Setup Dwork
    block.NumDworks           = 1;
    block.Dwork(1).Name       = 'x0';
    block.Dwork(1).Dimensions = 1;
    block.Dwork(1).DatatypeID = 0;
    block.Dwork(1).Complexity = 'Real';
    block.Dwork(1).UsedAsDiscState = true;
```

The reference pages for `Simulink.BlockCompDworkData` and the parent class `Simulink.BlockData` list the properties you can set for Level-2 MATLAB S-function DWork vectors.

- 2 Initialize the DWork vector values in either the `Start` or `InitializeConditions` methods. Use the `Start` method for values that are initialized only at the beginning of the simulation. Use the `InitializeConditions` method for values that need to be reinitialized whenever a disabled subsystem containing the S-function is reenabled.

For example, the following `InitializeConditions` method initializes the value of the DWork vector configured in the previous step to the value of the first S-function dialog parameter.

```
function InitializeConditions(block)

    %% Initialize Dwork
    block.Dwork(1).Data = block.DialogPrm(1).Data;
```

- 3 In the `Outputs`, `Update`, etc. methods, use or update the DWork vector values, as needed. For example, the following `Outputs` method sets the S-function output equal to the value stored in the DWork vector. The `Update` method then changes the DWork vector value to the current value of the first S-function input port.

```
%% Outputs callback method
function Outputs(block)

    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.Dwork(1).Data;

%% Update callback method
function Update(block)

    block.Dwork(1).Data = block.InputPort(1).Data;
```

---

**Note** Level-2 MATLAB S-functions do not support MATLAB sparse matrices. Therefore, you cannot assign a sparse matrix to the value of a DWork vector. For example, the following line of code produces an error

```
block.Dwork(1).Data = speye(10);
```

where the `speye` command produces a sparse identity matrix.

---

## Level-2 MATLAB S-Function DWork Vector Example

The example S-function `msfcn_varpulse.m` models a variable width pulse generator. The S-function uses two DWork vectors. The first DWork vector stores the pulse width value, which is modified at every major time step in the `Update` method. The second DWork vector stores the handle of the pulse generator block in the Simulink model. The value of this DWork vector does not change over the course of the simulation.

The `PostPropagationSetup` method, called `DoPostPropSetup` in this S-function, sets up the two DWork vectors.

```
function DoPostPropSetup(block)

% Initialize the Dwork vector
block.NumDworks = 2;

% Dwork(1) stores the value of the next pulse width
block.Dwork(1).Name      = 'x1';
block.Dwork(1).Dimensions = 1;
block.Dwork(1).DatatypeID = 0;      % double
block.Dwork(1).Complexity = 'Real'; % real
block.Dwork(1).UsedAsDiscState = true;

% Dwork(2) stores the handle of the Pulse Generator block
block.Dwork(2).Name      = 'BlockHandle';
block.Dwork(2).Dimensions = 1;
block.Dwork(2).DatatypeID = 0;      % double
block.Dwork(2).Complexity = 'Real'; % real
block.Dwork(2).UsedAsDiscState = false;
```

The `Start` method initializes the DWork vector values.

```
function Start(block)

% Populate the Dwork vector
block.Dwork(1).Data = 0;

% Obtain the Pulse Generator block handle
pulseGen = find_system(gcs, 'BlockType', 'DiscretePulseGenerator');
blockH = get_param(pulseGen{1}, 'Handle');
block.Dwork(2).Data = blockH;
```

The `Outputs` method uses the handle stored in the second DWork vector to update the pulse width of the Pulse Generator block.

```
function Outputs(block)

% Update the pulse width value
set_param(block.Dwork(2).Data, 'PulseWidth', num2str(block.InputPort(1).data));
```

The `Update` method then modifies the first DWork vector with the next value for the pulse width, specified by the input signal to the S-Function block.

```
function Update(block)

% Store the input value in the Dwork(1)
block.Dwork(1).Data = block.InputPort(1).Data;

%endfunction
```

## **See Also**

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

## **More About**

- [“S-Function Concepts”](#) on page 1-7
- [“Use S-Functions in Models”](#) on page 1-4

## Use MATLAB S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode

A sim viewing device encapsulates processing and viewing of signals received from the target system in external mode. During simulation in external mode, the target system uploads the appropriate input values to the sim viewing device in the Simulink model. The sim viewing device then conditions the input signals as needed and renders the signals on the screen. A sim viewing device runs only on the host, generating no code in the target system and, therefore, allowing extra processing of displayed signals without burdening the generated code. You can use your S-function as a sim viewing device in external mode if it satisfies the following conditions.

- The S-function has no output ports.
- The S-function contains no states.
- The generated code does not require the conditioned signals produced by the S-function.

To specify a Level-2 MATLAB S-function as a sim viewing device, call the run-time object's `SetSimViewingDevice` method in the S-function `setup` callback method.

### See Also

[Level-2 MATLAB S-Function](#) | [S-Function Builder](#) | [S-Function](#) | [MATLAB Function](#)

### More About

- “S-Function Concepts” on page 1-7
- “Use S-Functions in Models” on page 1-4

# S-Function Callback Methods

---

Every user-written S-function must implement a set of methods, called *callback methods* or simply *callbacks*, that the Simulink engine invokes when simulating a model that contains the S-function. Some callback methods are optional. The engine invokes an optional callback only if the S-function defines the callback. This topic describes the purpose and syntax of all callback methods that an S-function can implement. In each case, the documentation for a callback method indicates whether it is required or optional. For a list of required callback methods, see “Callback Methods That an S-Function Must Implement” on page 4-31.

## CheckParameters

Check the validity of a MATLAB S-Function's parameters

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

CheckParameters(s)

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing a Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

Verifies new parameter settings whenever parameters change or are reevaluated during a simulation.

When a simulation is running, changes to S-function parameters can occur at any time during the simulation loop, that is, either at the start of a simulation step or during a simulation step. When the change occurs during a simulation step, the Simulink engine calls this routine twice to handle the parameter change. The first call during the simulation step is used to verify that the parameters are correct. After verifying the new parameters, the simulation continues using the original parameter values until the next simulation step, at which time the new parameter values are used. Redundant calls are needed to maintain simulation consistency.

---

**Note** You cannot access the work, state, input, output, and other vectors in this routine. Use this routine only to validate the parameters. Additional processing of the parameters should be done in `ProcessParameters`.

---

### Example

In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, the `setup` method registers the `CheckParameters` method as follows

```
s.RegBlockMethod('CheckParameters', @CheckParam);
```

The local function `CheckParam` then verifies the S-function parameters. In this example, the function checks that the second parameter, an upper limit value, is greater than the first S-function parameter, a lower limit value.



```
function CheckParam(s)

% Check that upper limit is greater than lower limit
lowerLim = s.DialogPrm(1).Data;
upperLim = s.DialogPrm(2).Data;

if upperLim <= lowerLim,
    error('The upper limit must be greater than the lower limit.');
```

## See Also

ProcessParameters, Simulink.RunTimeBlock, Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock, mdlCheckParameters

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## Derivatives

Compute a MATLAB S-Function's derivatives

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

Derivatives(s)

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at each time step to compute the derivatives of the S-function's continuous states. This method should store the derivatives in the S-function's state derivatives vector. In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use the run-time object's `Derivatives` method.

Each time the `Derivatives` routine is called, it must explicitly set the values of all derivatives. The derivative vector does not maintain the values from the last call to this routine. The memory allocated to the derivative vector changes during execution.

### Example

For a Level-2 MATLAB S-function example, see `msfcn_limintm.m`.

### See Also

`Simulink.RunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlDerivatives`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

# Disable

Respond to disabling of an enabled system containing this MATLAB S-Function block

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

Disable(s)

## Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method if this block resides in an enabled subsystem and the enabled subsystem changes from an enabled to a disabled state at the current time step. Your S-function can use this method to perform any actions required by the disabling of the containing subsystem.

## See Also

Enable, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlDisable`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## Enable

Respond to enabling of an enabled system containing this MATLAB S-Function block

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

`Enable(s)`

### Arguments

`s`

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method if this block resides in an enabled subsystem and the enabled subsystem changes from a disabled to an enabled state at the current time step. Your S-function can use this method to perform any actions required by the enabling of the containing subsystem.

### See Also

`Disable`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlEnable`

## Version History

**Introduced before R2006a**

# GetOperatingPoint

Return MATLAB S-function's simulation operating point as a MATLAB data structure

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

`GetOperatingPoint(s)`

## Arguments

`s`

Instance of the `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method to get the simulation snapshot (operating point) of the model containing `S`. A call to this method should occur after `Start` and before `Terminate` to ensure that all of the S-function data structures (states, `DWork` vectors, and outputs) are available.

## See Also

“Custom Code and Hand Coded Blocks Using the S-function API” | `SetOperatingPoint` | `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` | `mdlGetOperatingPoint` | `ssSetOperatingPointCompliance`

## Version History

Introduced in R2019a

## GetSimState

(Not recommended) Return the MATLAB S-function simulation state as a valid MATLAB data structure, such as a matrix structure or a cell array.

---

**Note** `GetSimState` is not recommended. Use `mdlGetOperatingPoint` instead.

---

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

`GetSimState(s)`

### Arguments

`s`

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method to get the simulation state (`SimState`) of the model containing `S`. A call to this method should occur after `Start` and before `Terminate` to ensure that all of the S-function data structures (e.g., states, `DWork` vectors, and outputs) are available.

### See Also

`SetSimState`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlGetSimState`

### Version History

**Introduced in R2015b**

# InitializeConditions

Initialize the state vectors of this MATLAB S-function

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
InitializeConditions(s)
```

## Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at the beginning of a simulation. It should initialize the continuous and discrete states, if any, of this S-Function block. In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use the `ContStates` or `Dwork` run-time object methods to access the continuous and discrete states. This method can also perform any other initialization activities that this S-function requires.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, and you need to ensure that the initialization code in the `InitializeConditions` function is run only once, then move this initialization code into the `Start` method. MathWorks recommends this code change as a best practice.

---

If this S-function resides in an enabled subsystem configured to reset states, the Simulink engine also calls this method when the enabled subsystem restarts execution.

The Simulink engine calls `InitializeConditions` prior to calculating the S-function's input signals. Therefore, since the input signal values are not yet available, `InitializeConditions` should not use the input signal values to set initial conditions. If your S-function needs to initialize internal values using the block's input signals, perform the initialization in `Outputs`.

For example, in a C MEX S-function, initializes an `IWork` vector with one element in the `mdlInitializeSizes` method.

```
ssSetNumIWork(S, 1);
```

The `IWork` vector holds a flag indicating if initial values have been specified. Initialize the flag's value in the `mdlInitializeCondition` method.

```
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* The mdlInitializeConditions method is called when the simulation
       start and every time an enabled subsystem is re-enabled.

       Reset the IWork flag to 1 when values need to be reinitialized.*/

    ssSetIWorkValue(S, 0, 1);
}
```

Check the value of the IWork vector flag in the mdlOutputs method, to determine if initial values need to be set. Since the engine has calculated input values at this point in the simulation, the mdlOutputs method can use them to initialize internal values.

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    // Initialize values if the IWork vector flag is true. //
    if (ssGetIWorkValue(S, 0) == 1) {
        // Enter initialization code here //
    }

    // Remainder of mdlOutputs function //
}
```

For a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use a DWork vector instead of an IWork vector in the previous example.

## Example

This example initializes both a continuous and discrete state to 1.0. Level-2 MATLAB S-functions store discrete states in their DWork vectors.

```
function InitializeConditions(s)

s.ContStates.Data(1) = 1;
s.Dwork(1).Data      = 1;

% endfunction
```

## See Also

Start, Outputs, Simulink.RuntimeBlock, Simulink.MSFcnRuntimeBlock, mdlInitializeConditions

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b



# mdlCheckParameters

Check the validity of a C MEX S-function's parameters

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS  
void mdlCheckParameters(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

Verifies new parameter settings whenever parameters change or are reevaluated during a simulation. If you have Simulink Coder, for C MEX S-functions, this method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement to be compatible with code generation targets that support noninlined S-functions.

When a simulation is running, changes to S-function parameters can occur at any time during the simulation loop, that is, either at the start of a simulation step or during a simulation step. When the change occurs during a simulation step, the Simulink engine calls this routine twice to handle the parameter change. The first call during the simulation step is used to verify that the parameters are correct. After verifying the new parameters, the simulation continues using the original parameter values until the next simulation step, at which time the new parameter values are used. Redundant calls are needed to maintain simulation consistency.

---

**Note** You cannot access the work, state, input, output, and other vectors in this routine. Use this routine only to validate the parameters. Additional processing of the parameters should be done in `mdlProcessParameters`.

---

## Example

This example checks the first S-function parameter to verify that it is a real nonnegative scalar.

---

**Note** Since `mdlCheckParameters` is an optional method, a `#define MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS` statement precedes the function. Also, since the Simulink Coder product does not support code

generation for `mdlCheckParameters`, the function is wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

---

```
#define PARAM1(S) ssGetSFcnParam(S,0)
#define MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS /* Change to #undef to remove function */
#if defined(MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
static void mdlCheckParameters(SimStruct *S)
{
    if (mxGetNumberOfElements(PARAM1(S)) != 1) {
        ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Parameter to S-function must be a scalar");
        return;
    } else if (mxGetPr(PARAM1(S))[0] < 0) {
        ssSetErrorStatus(S, "Parameter to S-function must be nonnegative");
        return;
    }
}
#endif /* MDL_CHECK_PARAMETERS */
```

In addition to the preceding routine, you must add a call to this method from `mdlInitializeSizes` to check parameters during initialization, because `mdlCheckParameters` is only called while the simulation is running. To do this, after setting the number of parameters you expect in your S-function by using `ssSetNumSFcnParams`, use this code in `mdlInitializeSizes`:

```
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 1); /* Number of expected parameters */
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
    if(ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) == ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S) {
        mdlCheckParameters(S);
        if(ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL) return;
    } else {
        return; /* The Simulink engine reports a mismatch error. */
    }
#endif
    ...
}
```

---

**Note** The macro `ssGetSFcnParamsCount` returns the actual number of parameters entered in the dialog box.

---

See `sfun_errhdl.c` for an example.

## See Also

`mdlProcessParameters`, `ssGetSFcnParamsCount`, `CheckParameters`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlDerivatives

Compute the C MEX S-function's derivatives

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_DERIVATIVES  
  
void mdlDerivatives(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at each time step to compute the derivatives of the S-function's continuous states. This method should store the derivatives in the S-function's state derivatives vector. In a C MEX S-function, use `ssGetdX` to get a pointer to the derivatives vector.

Each time the `mdlDerivatives` routine is called, it must explicitly set the values of all derivatives. The derivative vector does not maintain the values from the last call to this routine. The memory allocated to the derivative vector changes during execution.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined C MEX S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#define MDL_DERIVATIVES  
#if defined(MDL_DERIVATIVES) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)  
static void mdlDerivatives(SimStruct *S)  
{  
    /* Add mdlDerivatives code here */  
}  
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlDerivatives` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, the Simulink Coder product cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

## **Example**

For a C MEX S-function example, see `csfunc.c`.

## **See Also**

`ssGetdx`, Derivatives

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlDisable

Respond to disabling of an enabled system containing this block

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_DISABLE  
void mdlDisable(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S  
SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method if this block resides in an enabled subsystem and the enabled subsystem changes from an enabled to a disabled state at the current time step. Your S-function can use this method to perform any actions required by the disabling of the containing subsystem.

## See Also

mdlEnable, Disable

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

## mdlEnable

Respond to enabling of a enabled system containing this block

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_ENABLE  
void mdlEnable(SimStruct *S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method if this block resides in an enabled subsystem and the enabled subsystem changes from a disabled to an enabled state at the current time step. Your S-function can use this method to perform any actions required by the enabling of the containing subsystem.

### See Also

mdlDisable, Enable

### Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlGetOperatingPoint

Return C MEX S-function's simulation operating point as a MATLAB data structure

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
mxArray* mdlGetOperatingPoint(SimStruct* S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method to get the simulation operating point (snapshot) of the model containing S. A call to this method occurs after `mdlStart` and before `mdlTerminate` to ensure that all of the S-function data structures (states, DWork vectors, and outputs) are available. `mdlGetOperatingPoint` is required when the operating point compliance is custom,

## Example

```
/* Function: mdlGetOperatingPoint
 * Abstract:
 * Package the RunTimeData structure as a MATLAB structure
 * and return it.
 */
static mxArray* mdlGetOperatingPoint(SimStruct* S)
{
    RunTimeData_T* rtd =
        (RunTimeData_T*)ssGetPWorkValue(S, 0);
    const char* fieldNames[] = {"Count"};

    /* Create a MATLAB structure to hold the run-time data */
    mxArray* simSnap =
        mxCreateStructMatrix(1, 1, 1, fieldNames);
    mxSetField(simSnap, 0, fieldNames[0],
        mxCreateDoubleScalar(rtd->cnt));
    return simSnap;
}
```

## **See Also**

“Custom Code and Hand Coded Blocks Using the S-function API” | `mdlSetOperatingPoint` | `GetOperatingPoint`

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2019a**



## mdlGetSimState

(Not recommended) Return the C MEX S-function simulation state as a valid MATLAB data structure, such as a matrix structure or a cell array.

---

**Note** `mdlGetSimState` is not recommended. Use `mdlGetOperatingPoint` instead.

---

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SIM_STATE
mxArray* mdlGetSimState(SimStruct* S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method to get the simulation state (SimState) of the model containing S. A call to this method should occur after `mdlStart` and before `mdlTerminate` to ensure that all of the S-function data structures (e.g., states, DWork vectors, and outputs) are available.

### Example

```
/* Function: mdlGetSimState
 * Abstract:
 * Package the RunTimeData structure as a MATLAB structure
 * and return it.
 */
static mxArray* mdlGetSimState(SimStruct* S)
{
    RunTimeData_T* rtd =
        (RunTimeData_T*)ssGetPWorkValue(S, 0);
    const char* fieldNames[] = {"Count"};

    /* Create a MATLAB structure to hold the run-time data */
    mxArray* simSnap =
```

```
        mxCreateStructMatrix(1, 1, 1, fieldNames);
        mxSetField(simSnap, 0, fieldNames[0],
            mxCreateDoubleScalar(rtd->cnt));
        return simSnap;
    }
```

## See Also

mdlSetSimState, GetSimState

## Version History

Introduced in R2009a

# mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit

Determine the time of the next sample time hit

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_GET_TIME_OF_NEXT_VAR_HIT
void mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at a major time step when the variable sample time registered by this S-function has a hit. This method is used by the Simulink engine to determine the time of the next sample hit for variable sample time. The S-function should set this next sample hit using `ssSetTNext` macro in this method. The time of the next hit must be greater than the current simulation time as returned by `ssGetT`. The S-function must implement `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` if it operates at a variable sample time.

For Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, use a sample time of -2 to specify a variable sample time. The S-function's output method should then update the `NextTimeHit` property of the instance of the `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the S-Function block to set the time of the next sample time hit. See `/msfcn_vs.m` for an example.

For Level-1 MATLAB S-functions, a flag of 4 is passed to the S-function when the next sample time hit needs to be calculated.

---

**Note** The time of the next hit can be a function of the input signals.

---

## Example

```
static void mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit(SimStruct *S)
{
    time_T offset = getOffset();
    time_T timeOfNextHit = ssGetT(S) + offset;
```

```
        ssSetTNext(S, timeOfNextHit);  
    }
```

## **See Also**

mdlInitializeSampleTimes, ssGetT, ssSetTNext

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlInitializeConditions

Initialize the state vectors of this C MEX S-function

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS  
void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at the beginning of a simulation. It should initialize the continuous and discrete states, if any, of this S-Function block. In a C MEX S-function, use `ssGetContStates` and/or `ssGetDiscStates` to access the states. This method can also perform any other initialization activities that this S-function requires.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder and you need to ensure that the initialization code in the `mdlInitializeConditions` function is run only once, then move this initialization code into the `mdlStart` method. MathWorks recommends this code change as a best practice.

---

If this S-function resides in an enabled subsystem configured to reset states, the Simulink engine also calls this method when the enabled subsystem restarts execution. C MEX S-functions can use the `ssIsFirstInitCond` macro to determine whether the time at which `mdlInitializeCondition` is called is equal to the simulation start time.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined C MEX S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS  
#if defined(MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)  
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)  
{
```

```
    /* Add mdlInitializeConditions code here */  
}  
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlInitializeConditions` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, the Simulink Coder product cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

The Simulink engine calls `mdlInitializeConditions` prior to calculating the S-function's input signals. Therefore, since the input signal values are not yet available, `mdlInitializeConditions` should not use the input signal values to set initial conditions. If your S-function needs to initialize internal values using the block's input signals, perform the initialization in `mdlOutputs`.

For example, in a C MEX S-function, initializes an `IWork` vector with one element in the `mdlInitializeSizes` method.

```
ssSetNumIWork(S, 1);
```

The `IWork` vector holds a flag indicating if initial values have been specified. Initialize the flag's value in the `mdlInitializeCondition` method.

```
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)  
{  
    /* The mdlInitializeConditions method is called when the simulation  
       start and every time an enabled subsystem is re-enabled.  
  
       Reset the IWork flag to 1 when values need to be reinitialized.*/  
  
    ssSetIWorkValue(S, 0, 1);  
}
```

Check the value of the `IWork` vector flag in the `mdlOutputs` method, to determine if initial values need to be set. Since the engine has calculated input values at this point in the simulation, the `mdlOutputs` method can use them to initialize internal values.

```
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)  
{  
    // Initialize values if the IWork vector flag is true. //  
    if (ssGetIWorkValue(S, 0) == 1) {  
        // Enter initialization code here //  
    }  
  
    // Remainder of mdlOutputs function //  
}
```

For a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, use a `DWork` vector instead of an `IWork` vector in the previous example.

## Example

This example initializes both a continuous and discrete state to 1.0.

```
#define MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS    /*Change to #undef to remove */  
                                     /*function*/  
#if defined(MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS)
```

```
static void mdlInitializeConditions(SimStruct *S)
{
    int i;
    real_T *xcont = ssGetContStates(S);
    int_T nCStates = ssGetNumContStates(S);
    real_T *xdisc = ssGetRealDiscStates(S);
    int_T nDStates = ssGetNumDiscStates(S);

    for (i = 0; i < nCStates; i++) {
        *xcont++ = 1.0;
    }

    for (i = 0; i < nDStates; i++) {
        *xdisc++ = 1.0;
    }

}
#endif /* MDL_INITIALIZE_CONDITIONS */
```

For another example that initializes only the continuous states, see `resetint.c`.

## See Also

`mdlStart`, `mdlOutputs`, `ssIsFirstInitCond`, `ssGetContStates`, `ssGetDiscStates`, `ssGetTStart`, `ssGetT`, `InitializeConditions`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

## mdlInitializeSampleTimes

Specify the sample rates at which this C MEX S-function operates

### Required

Yes

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

This method should specify the sample time and offset time for each sample rate at which this S-function operates via the following paired macros

```
ssSetSampleTime(S, sampleTimeIndex, sample_time)  
ssSetOffsetTime(S, offsetTimeIndex, offset_time)
```

where `sampleTimeIndex` runs from 0 to one less than the number of sample times specified in `mdlInitializeSizes` via `ssSetNumSampleTimes`.

If the S-function operates at one or more sample rates, this method can specify any of the following sample time and offset values for a given sample time:

- [CONTINUOUS\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]
- [CONTINUOUS\_SAMPLE\_TIME, FIXED\_IN\_MINOR\_STEP\_OFFSET]
- [discrete\_sample\_period, offset]
- [VARIABLE\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]

The uppercase values are macros defined in `sl_sample_time_defs.h`.

If the S-function operates at one rate, this method can alternatively set the sample time to one of the following sample/offset time pairs.

- [INHERITED\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]
- [INHERITED\_SAMPLE\_TIME, FIXED\_IN\_MINOR\_STEP\_OFFSET]



If the number of sample times is 0, the Simulink engine assumes that the S-function inherits its sample time from the block to which it is connected, i.e., that the sample time is

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]
```

This method can therefore return without doing anything.

Use the following guidelines when specifying sample times.

- A continuous function that changes during minor integration steps should set the sample time to  
[CONTINUOUS\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]
- A continuous function that does not change during minor integration steps should set the sample time to  
[CONTINUOUS\_SAMPLE\_TIME, FIXED\_IN\_MINOR\_STEP\_OFFSET]
- A discrete function that changes at a specified rate should set the sample time to

```
[discrete_sample_period, offset]
```

where

```
discrete_sample_period > 0.0
```

and

```
0.0 <= offset < discrete_sample_period
```

- A discrete function that changes at a variable rate should set the sample time to  
[VARIABLE\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]

The Simulink engine invokes the `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` function to get the time of the next sample hit for the variable-step discrete task.

Note that `VARIABLE_SAMPLE_TIME` requires a variable-step solver.

- To operate correctly in a triggered subsystem or a periodic system, a discrete S-function should
  - Specify a single sample time set to  
[INHERITED\_SAMPLE\_TIME, 0.0]
  - Use `ssSetOptions` to set the `SS_OPTION_DISALLOW_CONSTANT_SAMPLE_TIME` simulation option in `mdlInitializeSizes`
  - Verify that it was assigned a discrete or triggered sample time in `mdlSetWorkWidths`:

```
if (ssGetSampleTime(S, 0) == CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME) {
    ssSetErrorStatus(S,
        "This block cannot be assigned a continuous sample
        time");
}
```

After propagating sample times throughout the block diagram, the engine assigns the sample time

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME]
```

to discrete blocks residing in triggered subsystems.

If this function has no intrinsic sample time, it should set its sample time to inherited according to the following guidelines:

- A function that changes as its input changes, even during minor integration steps, should set its sample time to

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, 0.0]
```

A function that changes as its input changes, but doesn't change during minor integration steps (i.e., is held during minor steps) should set its sample time to

```
[INHERITED_SAMPLE_TIME, FIXED_IN_MINOR_STEP_OFFSET]
```

The S-function should use the `ssIsSampleHit` or `ssIsContinuousTask` macros to check for a sample hit during execution (in `mdlOutputs` or `mdlUpdate`). For example, if the block's first sample time is continuous, the function can use the following code fragment to check for a sample hit.

```
if (ssIsContinuousTask(S,tid)) {  
}
```

---

**Note** The function receives incorrect results if it uses `ssIsSampleHit(S,0,tid)`.

---

If the function wants to determine whether the third (discrete) task has a hit, it can use the following code fragment.

```
if (ssIsSampleHit(S,2,tid)) {  
}
```

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)  
static void mdlInitializeSampleTimes(SimStruct *S)  
{  
    /* Add mdlInitializeSampleTimes code here */  
}  
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, the Simulink Coder product cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

## See Also

`mdlSetInputPortSampleTime`, `mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlInitializeSizes

Specify the number of inputs, outputs, states, parameters, and other characteristics of the C MEX S-function

## Required

Yes

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_INITIAL_SIZES
void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

This is the first S-function callback methods that the Simulink engine calls. This method performs the following tasks:

- Specify the number of parameters that this S-function supports, using `ssSetNumSFcnParams`.  
Use `ssSetSFcnParamTunable(S, paramIdx, 0)` when a parameter cannot change during simulation, where `paramIdx` starts at 0. When a parameter has been specified as not tunable, the engine issues an error during simulation (or when in external mode when using the Simulink Coder product) if an attempt is made to change the parameter.
- Specify the number of states that this function has, using `ssSetNumContStates` and `ssSetNumDiscStates`.
- Configure the block's input ports, including:
  - Specify the number of input ports that this S-function has, using `ssSetNumInputPorts`.
  - Specify the dimensions of the input ports.  
See `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo` for more information.
  - For each input port, specify whether it has direct feedthrough, using `ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough`.

A port has direct feedthrough if the input is used in either the `mdlOutputs` or `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` function. The direct feedthrough flag for each input port can be

set to either 1=yes or 0=no. It should be set to 1 if the input, `u`, is used in the `mdlOutputs` or `mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit` routine. Setting the direct feedthrough flag to 0 tells the Simulink engine that `u` is not used in either of these S-function routines. Violating this leads to unpredictable results.

- Configure the block's output ports, including:
  - Specify the number of output ports that the block has, using `ssSetNumOutputPorts`.
  - Specify the dimensions of the output ports.

See `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` for more information.

If your S-function outputs are discrete (for example, the outputs only take specific values such as 0, 1, and 2), specify `SS_OPTION_DISCRETE_VALUED_OUTPUT`.

- Set the number of sample times (i.e., sample rates) at which the block operates.

There are two ways of specifying sample times:

- Port-based sample times
- Block-based sample times

See “Specify S-Function Sample Times” on page 9-20 for a complete discussion of sample time issues.

For multirate S-functions, the suggested approach to setting sample times is via the port-based sample times method. When you create a multirate S-function, you must take care to verify that, when slower tasks are preempted, your S-function correctly manages data so as to avoid race conditions. When port-based sample times are specified, the block cannot inherit a sample time of `Inf` at any port.

- Set the size of the block's work vectors, using `ssSetNumRWork`, `ssSetNumIWork`, `ssSetNumPWork`, `ssSetNumModes`, `ssSetNumNonsampledZCs`.
- Set the simulation options that this block implements, using `ssSetOptions`.

All options have the form `SS_OPTION_<name>`. See “Configure C/C++ S-Function Features” for information on each option. Use a bitwise OR operator to set multiple options, as in

```
ssSetOptions(S, (SS_OPTION_name1 | SS_OPTION_name2))
```

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* Add mdlInitializeSizes code here */
}
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlInitializeSizes` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, the Simulink Coder product cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

## Dynamically Sized Block Features

You can set the parameters NumContStates, NumDiscStates, NumInputs, NumOutputs, NumRWork, NumIWork, NumPWork, NumModes, and NumNonsampledZCs to a fixed nonnegative integer or tell the Simulink engine to size them dynamically:

- DYNAMICALLY\_SIZED -- Sets lengths of states, work vectors, and so on to values inherited from the driving block. It sets widths to the actual input widths, according to the scalar expansion rules unless you use mdlSetWorkWidths to set the widths.
- 0 or positive number -- Sets lengths (or widths) to the specified values. The default is 0.

## Initialization for MATLAB S-Functions

The Level-2 MATLAB S-function setup method performs nearly the same tasks as the C MEX S-function mdlInitializeSizes method.

## Example

```
static void mdlInitializeSizes(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T nInputPorts = 1; /* number of input ports */
    int_T nOutputPorts = 1; /* number of output ports */
    int_T needsInput = 1; /* direct feedthrough */

    int_T inputPortIdx = 0;
    int_T outputPortIdx = 0;

    ssSetNumSFcnParams(S, 0); /* Number of expected parameters */
    if (ssGetNumSFcnParams(S) != ssGetSFcnParamsCount(S)) {
        /*
         * If the number of expected input parameters is not
         * equal to the number of parameters entered in the
         * dialog box, return. The Simulink engine generates an
         * error indicating that there is a parameter mismatch.
         */
        return;
    } else {
        mdlCheckParameters(S);

        if (ssGetErrorStatus(S) != NULL)
            return;
    }

    ssSetNumContStates(S, 0);
    ssSetNumDiscStates(S, 0);

    /*
     * Configure the input ports. First set the number of input
     * ports.
     */
    if (!ssSetNumInputPorts(S, nInputPorts)) return;
    /*
     * Set input port dimensions for each input port index
     * starting at 0.
     */
}
```

```
*/
  if(!ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo(S, inputPortIdx,
    DYNAMIC_DIMENSION)) return;
/*
 * Set direct feedthrough flag (1=yes, 0=no).
 */
ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough(S, inputPortIdx, needsInput);

/*
 * Configure the output ports. First set the number of
 * output ports.
 */
if (!ssSetNumOutputPorts(S, nOutputPorts)) return;

/*
 * Set output port dimensions for each output port index
 * starting at 0.
 */
if(!ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(S,outputPortIdx,
  DYNAMIC_DIMENSION)) return;

/*
 * Set the number of sample times.      */
ssSetNumSampleTimes(S, 1);

/*
 * Set size of the work vectors.
 */
ssSetNumRWork(S, 0); /* real vector */
ssSetNumIWork(S, 0); /* integer vector */
ssSetNumPWork(S, 0); /* pointer vector */
ssSetNumModes(S, 0); /* mode vector */
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs(S, 0); /* zero crossings */

ssSetOptions(S, 0);
} /* end mdlInitializeSizes */
```

## See Also

setup, mdlInitializeSampleTimes

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlOutputs

Compute the signals that this block emits

## Required

Yes

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_OUTPUTS  
void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

tid

Task ID.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this required method at each simulation time step. The method should compute the S-function's outputs at the current time step and store the results in the S-function's output signal arrays.

The `tid` (task ID) argument specifies the task running when the `mdlOutputs` routine is invoked. You can use this argument in the `mdlOutputs` routine of a multirate S-Function block to encapsulate task-specific blocks of code (see "Multirate S-Function Blocks" on page 9-27).

Use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro if the S-function does not contain task-specific blocks of code to indicate that the `tid` input argument is required but not used in the body of the callback. To do this, insert the line

```
UNUSED_ARG(tid)
```

after the declarations in `mdlOutputs`.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)  
static void mdlOutputs(SimStruct *S)
```

```
{  
    /* Add mdlOutputs code here */  
}  
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlOutputs` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, the Simulink Coder product cannot use this method, resulting in link or runtime errors.

---

## Example

For an example of an `mdlOutputs` routine that works with multiple input and output ports, see `sfun_multiport.c`.

## See Also

`ssGetOutputPortComplexSignal`, `ssGetOutputPortRealSignal`, `ssGetOutputPortSignal`, `Outputs`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a



# mdlProcessParameters

Process the C MEX S-function's parameters

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_PROCESS_PARAMETERS
void mdlProcessParameters(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

This is an optional routine that the Simulink engine calls after `mdlCheckParameters` changes and verifies parameters. The processing is done at the top of the simulation loop when it is safe to process the changed parameters. This function is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclose the method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The purpose of this routine is to process newly changed parameters. An example is to cache parameter changes in work vectors. The engine does not call this routine when it is used with the Simulink Coder product. Therefore, if you use this routine in an S-function designed for use with the Simulink Coder product, you must write your S-function so that it doesn't rely on this routine. To do this, you must inline your S-function by using the Target Language Compiler. For information on inlining S-functions, see "Inlining S-Functions" (Simulink Coder).

## Example

This example processes a character vector parameter that `mdlCheckParameters` has verified to be of the form '+++' (where there could be any number of '+' or '-' characters).

```
#define MDL_PROCESS_PARAMETERS /* Change to #undef to remove function */
#if defined(MDL_PROCESS_PARAMETERS) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
static void mdlProcessParameters(SimStruct *S)
{
    int_T i;
    char_T *plusMinusStr;
```

```
int_T nInputPorts = ssGetNumInputPorts(S);
int_T *iwork      = ssGetIWork(S);
if ((plusMinusStr=(char_T*)malloc(nInputPorts+1)) == NULL) {
    ssSetErrorStatus(S,"Memory allocation error in mdlStart");
    return;
}
if (mxGetString(SIGNS_PARAM(S),plusMinusStr,nInputPorts+1) != 0) {
    free(plusMinusStr);
    ssSetErrorStatus(S,"mxGetString error in mdlStart");
    return;
}
for (i = 0; i < nInputPorts; i++) {
    iwork[i] = plusMinusStr[i] == '+'? 1: -1;
}
free(plusMinusStr);
}
#endif /* MDL_PROCESS_PARAMETERS */
```

mdlProcessParameters is called from mdlStart to load the signs character vector prior to the start of the simulation loop.

```
#define MDL_START
#if defined(MDL_START)
static void mdlStart(SimStruct *S)
{
    mdlProcessParameters(S);
}
#endif /* MDL_START */
```

## See Also

mdlCheckParameters, ProcessParameters

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlProjection

Perturb the solver's solution of a system's states to better satisfy time-invariant solution relationships

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_PROJECTION
void mdlProjection(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

This method is intended for use with S-functions that model dynamic systems whose states satisfy time-invariant relationships, such as those resulting from mass or energy conservation or other physical laws. The Simulink engine invokes this method at each time step after the model's solver has computed the S-function's states for that time step. Typically, slight errors in the numerical solution of the states cause the solutions to fail to satisfy solution invariants exactly. Your `mdlProjection` method can compensate for the errors by perturbing the states so that they more closely approximate solution invariants at the current time step. As a result, the numerical solution adheres more closely to the ideal solution as the simulation progresses, producing a more accurate overall simulation of the system modeled by your S-function.

Your `mdlProjection` method's perturbations of system states must fall within the solution error tolerances specified by the model in which the S-function is embedded. Otherwise, the perturbations may invalidate the solver's solution. It is up to your `mdlProjection` method to ensure that the perturbations meet the error tolerances specified by the model. See "Perturbing a System's States Using a Solution Invariant" on page 11-96 for a simple method for perturbing a system's states. The following articles describe more sophisticated perturbation methods that your `mdlProjection` method can use.

- C.W. Gear, "Maintaining Solution Invariants in the Numerical Solution of ODEs," *Journal on Scientific and Statistical Computing*, Vol. 7, No. 3, July 1986.
- L.F. Shampine, "Conservation Laws and the Numerical Solution of ODEs I," *Computers and Mathematics with Applications*, Vol. 12B, 1986, pp. 1287-1296.
- L.F. Shampine, "Conservation Laws and the Numerical Solution of ODEs II," *Computers and Mathematics with Applications*, Vol. 38, 1999, pp. 61-72.

## Examples

### Perturbing a System's States Using a Solution Invariant

Here is a simple, Taylor-series-based approach to perturbing a system's states. Suppose your S-function models a dynamic system having a solution invariant,  $g(X, t)$ , i.e.,  $g$  is a continuous, differentiable function of the system states,  $X$ , and time,  $t$ , whose value is constant with time. Then

Here is a simple, Taylor-series-based approach to perturbing a system's states. Suppose your S-function models a dynamic system having a solution invariant,  $g(X, t)$ , i.e.,  $g$  is a continuous, differentiable function of the system states,  $X$ , and time,  $t$ , whose value is constant with time. Then

$$X_n \cong X_n^* + J_n^T (J_n J_n^T)^{-1} R_n$$

where

- $X_n$  is the system's ideal state vector at the solver's current time step
- $X_n^*$  is the approximate state vector computed by the solver at the current time step
- $J_n$  is the Jacobian of the invariant function evaluated at the point in state space specified by the approximate state vector at the current time step:

$$J_n = \frac{\partial g}{\partial X}(X_n^*, t_n)$$

- $t_n$  is the time at the current time step
- $R_n$  is the residual (difference) between the invariant function evaluated at  $X_n$  and  $X_n^*$  at the current time step:

$$R_n = g(X_n, t_n) - g(X_n^*, t_n)$$

---

**Note** The value of  $g(X_n, t_n)$  is the same at each time step and is known by definition.

---

Given a continuous, differentiable invariant function for the system that your S-function models, this formula allows your S-function's `mdlProjection` method to compute a perturbation

$$J_n^T (J_n J_n^T)^{-1} R_n$$

of the solver's numerical solution,  $X_n^*$ , that more closely matches the ideal solution,  $X_n$ , keeping the S-function's solution from drifting from the ideal solution as the simulation progresses.

### Setup Working Environment for Perturbation Method Example

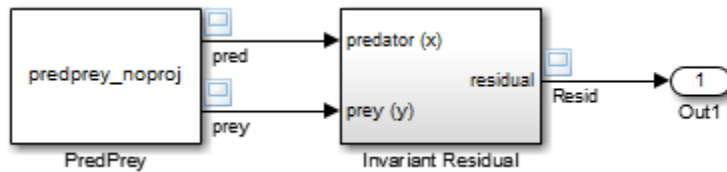
This example opens up a directory containing the following files required for this example.

- 1 `mdlProjectionEx1.slx`
- 2 `mdlProjectionEx2.slx`
- 3 `predprey_noproj.m`

## 4 predprey.m

### Perturbation Method Example

This example illustrates how the perturbation method outlined in the previous section can keep a model's numerical solution from drifting from the ideal solution as a simulation progresses. Consider the following model, mdlProjectionEx1:



The PredPrey block references an S-function that uses the Lotka-Volterra equations:

### predprey\_noproj.m

```

function predprey_noproj(block)
% This is one of a pair S-functions that model a population of predators
% and preys, the other being predprey.m.

% Both S-functions use the Lotka-Volterra equations
%
%   xdot = ax(1-y)
%   ydot = -cy(1-x)
%
% to model changes in the population where x(t) and y(t) are
% the number of predators and prey, respectively, and
% a and c are constants. Both S-functions assume a=1 and c=2 and
% that the population consists initially of one predator and three prey.
%
% The solution to the Lotka-Volterra equations obeys the time-invariant
% relationship
%
%   (x^-c)*exp(cx)*(y^-a)*exp(ay) = d
%
% where d is a constant.
%
% The other S-function uses this relationship to compensate for
% numerical errors in the solver's solution of the model's state
% equations. This S-function does not attempt to compensate for the
% numerical errors. As a result, the solution drifts from the ideal
% solution as the simulation progresses.
%
% For more information, see the documentation for the mdlProjection
% method in the online Simulink documentation.
%
% Copyright 2006 The MathWorks, Inc.

    setup(block);

%endfunction
  
```

```
function setup(block)

    %% Register number of input and output ports
    block.NumInputPorts = 0;
    block.NumOutputPorts = 2;

    block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
    block.OutputPort(1).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    block.OutputPort(2).Dimensions = 1;
    block.OutputPort(2).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    %% Set block sample time to variable sample time
    block.SampleTimes = [0 0];

    %% Setup Dwork
    block.NumContStates = 2;

    %% Register methods
    block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions', @InitConditions);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs', @Output);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Derivatives', @Derivatives);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Projection', @Projection);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Update', @Update);

%endfunction

function InitConditions(block)

    %% Initialize Dwork: 1 predator, 3 prey.
    block.ContStates.Data = [1 3]';

%endfunction

function Output(block)

    % Output number of predators.
    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.ContStates.Data(1);

    % Output number of prey.
    block.OutputPort(2).Data = block.ContStates.Data(2);

    block.ContStates.Data;

%endfunction

function Derivatives(block)

    states = block.ContStates.Data;
    % System ODEs
    block.Derivatives.Data = [2*states(1)*(1-states(2)); -states(2)*(1-states(1))];

%endfunction

function Projection(block)
```

```

    %not implemented
%endfunction

function Update(block)
%endfunction

     $\dot{x} = ax(1 - y)$ 
     $\dot{y} = -cy(1 - x)$ 

```

to model predator-prey population dynamics, where  $x(t)$  is the population density of the predators and  $y(t)$  is the population density of prey. The ideal solution to the predator-prey ODEs satisfies the time-invariant function

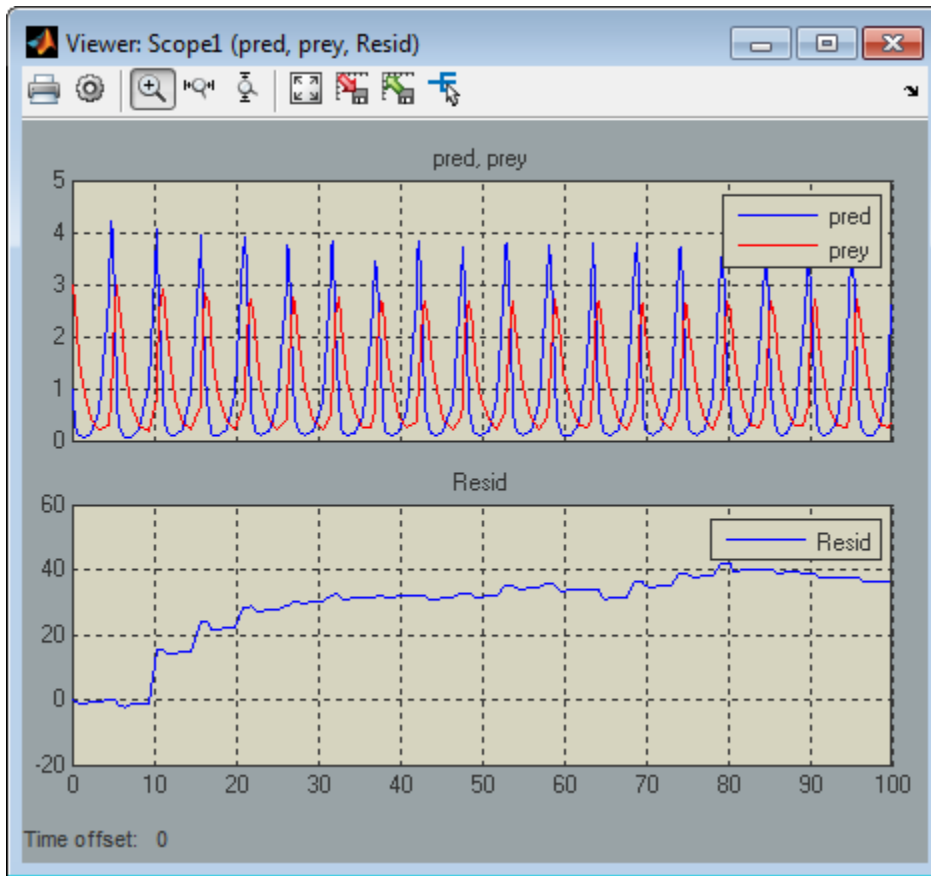
$$x^{-c}e^{cx}y^{-a}e^{ay} = d$$

where  $a$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  are constants. The S-function assumes  $a = 1$ ,  $c = 2$ , and  $d = 121.85$ .

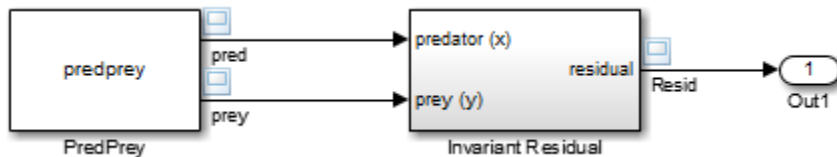
The Invariant Residual block in this model computes the residual between the invariant function evaluated along the system's ideal trajectory through state space and its simulated trajectory:

$$R_n = d - x_n^{-c}e^{cx_n}y_n^{-a}e^{ay_n}$$

where  $x_n$  and  $y_n$  are the values computed by the model's solver for the predator and prey population densities, respectively, at the current time step. Ideally, the residual should be zero throughout simulation of the model, but simulating the model reveals that the residual actually strays considerably from zero:



Now consider the following model, mdlProjectionEx2:



This model is the same as the previous model, except that its S-function, `predprey.m`, includes a `mdlProjection` method that uses the perturbation approach outlined in “Perturbing a System's States Using a Solution Invariant” on page 11-96 to compensate for numerical drift. As a result, the numerical solution more closely tracks the ideal solution as the simulation progresses as demonstrated by the residual signal, which remains near or at zero throughout the simulation:

### **predprey.m**

```
function predprey(block)
% This is one of a pair S-functions that model a population of predators
% and preys, the other being predprey_noproj.m.

% Both S-functions use the Lotka-Volterra equations
%
%   xdot = ax(1-y)
%   ydot = -cy(1-x)
```



```

%
% to model changes in the population where x(t) and y(t) are
% the number of predators and prey, respectively, and
% a and c are constants. Both S-functions assume a=1 and c=2 and
% that the population consists initially of one predator and three prey.
%
% The solution to the Lotka-Volterra equations obeys the time-invariant
% relationship
%
%  $(x^{-c}) \cdot \exp(cx) \cdot (y^{-a}) \cdot \exp(ay) = d$ 
%
% where d is a constant.
%
% This S-function uses this relationship to compensate for
% numerical errors in the solver's solution of the model's state
% equations. The other S-function does not. As a result,
% the other's solution drifts from the ideal solution as the
% simulation progresses.
%
% For more information, see the documentation for the mdlProjection
% method in the online Simulink documentation.
%
% Copyright 2006 The MathWorks, Inc.
    setup(block);

%endfunction

function setup(block)

    %% Register number of input and output ports
    block.NumInputPorts = 0;
    block.NumOutputPorts = 2;

    block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
    block.OutputPort(1).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    block.OutputPort(2).Dimensions = 1;
    block.OutputPort(2).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    %% Set block sample time to variable sample time
    block.SampleTimes = [0 0];

    %% Setup Dwork
    block.NumContStates = 2;

    %% Register methods
    block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions', @InitConditions);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs', @Output);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Derivatives', @Derivatives);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Projection', @Projection);

%endfunction

function InitConditions(block)

    %% Initialize Dwork: 1 predator, 3 prey.
    block.ContStates.Data = [1 3]';

```

```
%endfunction

function Output(block)

    % Output number of predators.
    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.ContStates.Data(1);

    % Output number of prey.
    block.OutputPort(2).Data = block.ContStates.Data(2);
    block.ContStates.Data;

%endfunction

function Derivatives(block)

states = block.ContStates.Data;
% System ODEs
block.Derivatives.Data = [2*states(1)*(1-states(2)); -states(2)*(1-states(1))];

%endfunction

function Projection(block)

states = block.ContStates.Data;

%Computing the Jacobian of the Invariant
J = localInvJac(states);

%Computing the residual of the invariant
R = localInvRes(states);

%Perturbing the states
states = states + (J')*((J*(J'))^-1) * R;

%Update the states
block.ContStates.Data = states;

%endfunction

function J = localInvJac(states)

%Computing the Jacobian of the invariant
L = 1/states(1) * exp(states(1));
R = 1/(states(2)^2)*exp(2*states(2));
Lx = (states(1)-1)/(states(1)^2)*exp(states(1));
Ry = 2*(states(2)-1)/(states(2)^3)*exp(2*states(2));

J = [Lx*R L*Ry];

%endfunction

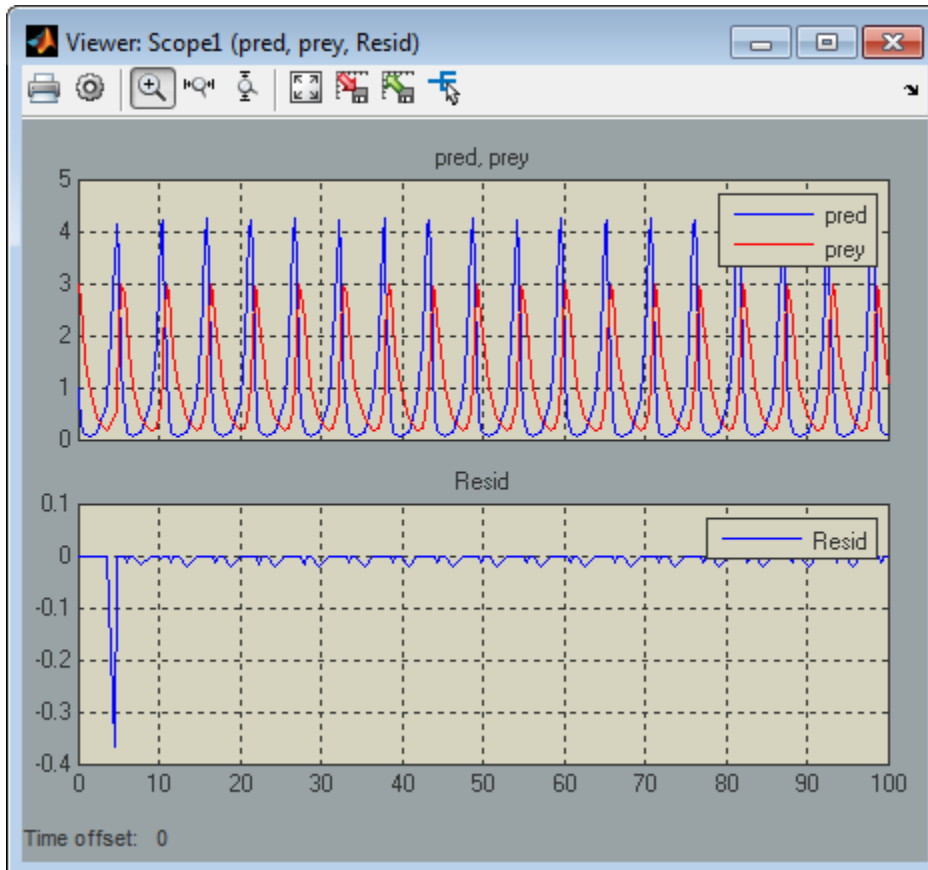
function R = localInvRes(states)

%Invariant value
inv0 = 1.218481287142732e+002;
```

```
%Computing invariant
L = 1/states(1) * exp(states(1));
R = 1/(states(2)^2)*exp(2*states(2));
inv = L*R;

%Residual
R = inv0-inv;

%endfunction
```



## See Also

Projection

## Version History

Introduced in R2006b

## mdlRTW

Generate code generation data for a C MEX S-function

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_RTW  
  
void mdlRTW(SimStruct *S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

This function is called when the Simulink Coder product is generating the *model*.rtw file. In C MEX S-functions, you can call the following functions that add fields to the *model*.rtw file:

- `ssWriteRTWParameters`
- `ssWriteRTWParamSettings`
- `ssWriteRTWWorkVect`
- `ssWriteRTWStr`
- `ssWriteRTWStrParam`
- `ssWriteRTWScalarParam`
- `ssWriteRTWStrVectParam`
- `ssWriteRTWVectParam`
- `ssWriteRTW2dMatParam`
- `ssWriteRTWMxVectParam`
- `ssWriteRTWMx2dMatParam`

In C MEX S-functions, this function must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

## Example

See the S-function `sfun_multiport.c` in the Simulink model `sfcndemo_sfun_multiport` for an example.

## See Also

`ssSetErrorStatus`, `WriteRTW`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

## mdlSetDefaultPortComplexSignals

Set the numeric types (real, complex, or inherited) of ports whose numeric types cannot be determined from block connectivity

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_DEFAULT_PORT_COMPLEX_SIGNALS  
  
void mdlSetDefaultPortComplexSignals(SimStruct *S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this method if the block has ports whose numeric types cannot be determined from connectivity. (This usually happens when the block is unconnected or is part of a feedback loop.) This method must set the numeric types of all ports whose numeric types are not set. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

If the block does not implement this method and at least one port is known to be complex, the engine sets the unknown ports to `COMPLEX_YES`; otherwise, it sets the unknown ports to `COMPLEX_NO`.

### See Also

`ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal`, `ssSetInputPortComplexSignal`

### Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlSetDefaultPortDataTypes

Set the data types of ports whose data types cannot be determined from block connectivity

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_DEFAULT_PORT_DATA_TYPES
void mdlSetDefaultPortDataTypes(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this method if the block has ports whose data types cannot be determined from block connectivity. (This usually happens when the block is unconnected or is part of a feedback loop.) This method must set the data types of all ports whose data types are not set. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

If the block does not implement this method and the engine cannot determine the data types of any of its ports, the engine sets the data types of all the ports to `double`. If the block does not implement this method and the engine cannot determine the data types of some, but not all, of its ports, the engine sets the unknown ports to the data type of the port whose data type has the largest size.

The engine invokes an error if the `mdlSetDefaultPortDataType` method attempts to modify the data type of a port when the data type was previously specified by `mdlSetInputPortDataType` or `mdlSetOutputPortDataType`. If an S-function has multiple input or output ports, `mdlSetDefaultPortDataType` should check if the data type of a port is still dynamic before attempting to set the type. For example, the `mdlSetDefaultPortDataType` uses the following lines to check if the data type of the second input port is still unknown.

```
if (ssGetInputPortDataType(S, 1) == DYNAMICALLY_TYPED) {
    ssSetInputPortDataType(S, 1, SS_UINT8 );
}
```

## See Also

`ssSetOutputPortDataType`, `ssSetInputPortDataType`

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**



# mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo

Set the default dimensions of the signals accepted or emitted by a C MEX S-function's ports

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_DEFAULT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO  
  
void mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method during signal dimension propagation when a model does not supply enough information to determine the dimensionality of signals that can enter or leave the block represented by S. This method should set the dimensions of any input and output ports that are dynamically sized to default values. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

If the S-function does not implement this method, the engine tries to find a set of dimensions that will satisfy the dimension propagation rules implemented using `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` and `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`. This process might not be able to produce a valid set of dimensions for S-functions with special dimension requirements.

The engine invokes an error if the `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` method attempts to modify the dimensions of a port when the dimensions were previously specified by `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` or `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`. If an S-function has multiple input or output ports, `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` should check if the dimensions of the port are still dynamic before attempting to set the dimensions. For example, the `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` uses the following lines to check if the dimensions of the first output port are still unknown.

```
if (ssGetOutputPortWidth(S, 0) == DYNAMICALLY_SIZED) {  
    ssSetOutputPortMatrixDimensions(S, 0, 1, 1);  
}
```

## **Example**

See `sfun_matadd.c` for an example of how to use this function.

## **See Also**

`ssSetErrorStatus`, `ssSetOutputPortMatrixDimensions`

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlSetInputPortComplexSignal

Set the numeric types (real, complex, or inherited) of the signals accepted by an input port

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_COMPLEX_SIGNAL  
  
void mdlSetInputPortComplexSignal(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    CSignal_T csig)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

csig

Numeric type of signal, either `COMPLEX_NO` (real) or `COMPLEX_YES` (complex).

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the input port numeric type for inputs that have this attribute set to `COMPLEX_INHERITED`. The input `csig` is the proposed numeric type for this input port. This method is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclosed this method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The S-function must check whether the proposed numeric type is a valid type for the specified port. If it is valid, a C MEX S-function sets the numeric type of the specified input port using `ssSetInputPortComplexSignal`. Otherwise, it reports an error using `ssSetErrorStatus`.

The S-function can also set the numeric types of other input and output ports with inherited numeric types. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the numeric type of a port whose numeric type is known.

If the S-function does not implement this routine, the engine assumes that the S-function accepts a real or complex signal and sets the input port numeric type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited numeric types have their numeric types specified.

## **Example**

See `sdotproduct.c` for an example of how to use this function.

## **See Also**

`ssSetErrorStatus`, `ssSetInputPortComplexSignal`, `SetInputPortComplexSignal`

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlSetInputPortDataType

Set the data types of the signals accepted by an input port

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_DATA_TYPE  
  
void mdlSetInputPortDataType(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    DTypeId id)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

id

Data type ID.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the data type of port when port has an inherited data type. The data type id is the proposed data type for this port. Data type IDs for the built-in data types can be found in `simstruc_types.h`. This method is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclose this method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The S-function must check whether the specified data type is a valid data type for the specified port. If it is a valid data type, a C MEX S-functions sets the data type of the input port using `ssSetInputPortDataType`. Otherwise, it reports an error using `ssSetErrorStatus`.

The S-function can also set the data types of other input and output ports if they are unknown. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the data type of a port whose data type has been set.

If the block does not implement this routine, the engine assumes that the block accepts any data type and sets the input port data type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited data types have their data types specified.

## **See Also**

ssSetErrorStatus, ssSetInputPortDataType, SetInputPortDataType

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo

Set the dimensions of the signals accepted by an input port

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO  
  
void mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    const DimsInfo_T *dimsInfo)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

dimsInfo

Structure that specifies the signal dimensions supported by the port.

See `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo` for a description of this structure.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method during dimension propagation with candidate dimensions `dimsInfo` for `port`. In C MEX S-functions, if the proposed dimensions are acceptable, the method sets the actual port dimensions, using `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo`. If they are unacceptable, the method generates an error via `ssSetErrorStatus`.

This method is only valid for simulation. A C MEX S-function must enclose the method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

---

**Note** This method can set the dimensions of any other input or output port whose dimensions derive from the dimensions of `port`.

---

By default, the engine calls this method only if it can fully determine the dimensionality of `port` from the port to which it is connected. For C MEX S-functions, if the engine cannot completely determine the dimensionality from port connectivity, it invokes `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo`. If an S-

function can fully determine the port dimensionality from partial information, set the option `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_PARTIAL_DIMENSIONS_CALL` in `mdlInitializeSizes`, using `ssSetOptions`. If this option is set, the engine invokes `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` even if it can only partially determine the dimensionality of the input port from connectivity.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited dimensions have their dimensions specified.

## **Example**

See `sfun_matadd.c` for an example of how to use this function.

## **See Also**

`ssSetErrorStatus`, `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`, `SetInputPortDimensions`

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**



# mdlSetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn

Propagate the dimensions mode

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
void mdlSetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn(SimStruct *S, int_T portIdx,  
DimensionsMode_T dimsMode)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

portIdx

Index of a port.

dimsMode

Current dimensions mode. Possible values are INHERIT\_DIMS\_MODE, FIXED\_DIMS\_MODE, and VARIABLE\_DIMS\_MODE

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this optional method to enable this S-function to set the dimensions mode of the input port indexed by portIdx.

## C Example

See `sfun_varsize_holdStatesUntilReset.c` for an example of how to use this function.

## See Also

`mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo`, `SetInputPortDimensionsMode`

## Version History

Introduced in R2009b

## mdlSetInputPortSampleTime

Set the sample time of an input port that inherits its sample time from the port to which it is connected

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_SAMPLE_TIME  
  
void mdlSetInputPortSampleTime(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    real_T sampleTime, real_T offsetTime)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

sampleTime

Inherited sample time for port.

offsetTime

Inherited offset time for port.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this method with the sample time that `port` inherits from the port to which it is connected.

For C MEX S-functions, if the inherited sample time is acceptable, this method sets the sample time of `port` to the inherited time, using `ssSetInputPortSampleTime` and `ssSetInputPortOffsetTime`. If the sample time is unacceptable, this method generates an error via `ssSetErrorStatus`. Note that any other input or output ports whose sample times are implicitly defined by virtue of knowing the sample time of the given port can also have their sample times set via calls to `ssSetInputPortSampleTime` or `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime`. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited sample times are specified.

When inherited port-based sample times are specified, the sample time is guaranteed to be one of the following where  $0.0 < \text{period} < \text{inf}$  and  $0.0 \leq \text{offset} < \text{period}$ .

	Sample Time	Offset Time
Continuous	0.0	0.0
Discrete	period	offset

Constant, triggered, and variable-step sample times are not propagated to S-functions with port-based sample times.

Generally `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` is called once per port with the input port sample time. However, there can be cases where this function is called more than once. This happens when the simulation engine is converting continuous sample times to continuous but fixed in minor steps sample times. When this occurs, the original values of the sample times specified in `mdlInitializeSizes` are restored before this method is called again.

The final sample time specified at the port can be different from (but equivalent to) the sample time specified by this method. This occurs when

- The model uses a fixed-step solver and the port has a continuous but fixed in minor step sample time. In this case, the Simulink engine converts the sample time to the fundamental sample time for the model.
- The engine adjusts the sample time to be as numerically sound as possible. For example, the engine converts `[0.249999999999999, 0]` to `[0.25, 0]`.

The S-function can examine the final sample times in `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`.

## See Also

`ssSetInputPortSampleTime`, `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime`, `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`, `SetInputPortSampleTime`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

## mdlSetInputPortWidth

Set the width of an input port that accepts 1-D (vector) signals

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_INPUT_PORT_WIDTH  
void mdlSetInputPortWidth(SimStruct *S, int_T port, int_T width)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

width

Width of signal.

### Description

This method is called with the candidate width for a dynamically sized port. If the proposed width is acceptable, the method should set the actual port width using `ssSetInputPortWidth`. If the size is unacceptable, an error should be generated via `ssSetErrorStatus`. Note that any other dynamically sized input or output ports whose widths are implicitly defined by virtue of knowing the width of the given port can also have their widths set via calls to `ssSetInputPortWidth` or `ssSetOutputPortWidth`. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The Simulink engine invokes this method until all dynamically sized input ports are configured.

### See Also

`ssSetInputPortWidth`, `ssSetOutputPortWidth`, `ssSetErrorStatus`

### Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlSetOperatingPoint

Restore operating point of C MEX S-function

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_OPERATING_POINT
void mdlSetOperatingPoint(SimStruct* S, const mxArray* in)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

const mxArray\* in

Operating point of S-Function created by mdlGetOperatingPoint.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method at the beginning of a simulation of the model containing S (SimStruct representing an S-Function block). `mdlSetOperatingPoint` sets the initial simulation state of the S-function to the operating point of the model.

## Example

```
/* Function: mdlSetOperatingPoint
 * Abstract:
 *   Unpack the MATLAB structure passed and restore it to
 *   the RunTimeData structure
 */
static void mdlSetOperatingPoint(SimStruct* S,
const mxArray* simSnap)
{
    RunTimeData_T* rtd =
        (RunTimeData_T*)ssGetPWorkValue(S, 0);

    /* Check and load the count value */
    {
        const mxArray* cnt =
            mxGetField(simSnap, 0, fieldNames[0]);
        ERROR_IF_NULL(S,cnt,
```

```
        "Count field not found in simulation state");
if ( mxIsComplex(cnt) ||
    !mxIsUint64(cnt) ||
    mxGetNumberOfElements(cnt) != 1 ) {
    ssSetErrorStatus(S, "Count field is invalid");
    return;
}
rtd->cnt = ((uint64_T*)(mxGetData(cnt)))[0];
}
```

## See Also

"Custom Code and Hand Coded Blocks Using the S-function API" | [mdlInitializeConditions](#) | [mdlGetOperatingPoint](#) | [SetOperatingPoint](#)

## Version History

**Introduced in R2019a**

# mdlSetOutputPortComplexSignal

Set the numeric types (real, complex, or inherited) of the signals accepted by an output port

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_OUTPUT_PORT_COMPLEX_SIGNAL

void mdlSetOutputPortComplexSignal(SimStruct *S, int_T port,
    CSigal_T csig)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

csig

Numeric type of signal, either COMPLEX\_NO (real) or COMPLEX\_YES (complex).

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the output port numeric type for outputs that have this attribute set to COMPLEX\_INHERITED. The input argument `csig` is the proposed numeric type for this output port. The S-function must check whether the specified numeric type is a valid type for the specified port.

If it is valid, C MEX S-functions set the numeric type of the specified output port using `ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal`. Otherwise, the S-function reports an error, using `ssSetErrorStatus`. This method is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclose the method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The S-function can also set the numeric types of other input and output ports with unknown numeric types. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the numeric type of a port whose numeric type is known.

If the S-function does not implement this routine, the engine assumes that the S-function accepts a real or complex signal and sets the output port numeric type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all output ports with inherited numeric types have their numeric types specified.

## **Example**

See `sdotproduct.c` for an example of how to use this function.

## **See Also**

`ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal`, `ssSetErrorStatus`, `SetOutputPortComplexSignal`

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**



# mdlSetOutputPortDataType

Set the data type of the signals emitted by an output port

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_OUTPUT_PORT_DATA_TYPE  
  
void mdlSetOutputPortDataType(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    DTypeId id)
```

## Arguments

**S**

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

**port**

Index of an output port.

**id**

Data type ID.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the data type of **port** when **port** has an inherited data type. The data type ID **id** is the proposed data type for this port. Data type IDs for the built-in data types can be found in `simstruc_types.h`. The S-function must check whether the specified data type is a valid data type for the specified port.

If it is a valid data type, a C MEX S-function sets the data type of **port** using `ssSetOutputPortDataType`. Otherwise, the S-function reports an error, using `ssSetErrorStatus`. This method is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclose the method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

The S-function can also set the data types of other input and output ports if their data types have not been set. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the data type of a port whose data type has been set.

If the block does not implement this method, the engine assumes that the block supports any data type and sets the output port data type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all output ports with inherited data types have their data types specified.

## **See Also**

ssSetOutputPortDataType, ssSetErrorStatus, SetOutputPortDataType

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo

Set the dimensions of the signals accepted by an output port

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_OUTPUT_PORT_DIMENSION_INFO  
  
void mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    const DimsInfo_T *dimsInfo)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

dimsInfo

Structure that specifies the signal dimensions supported by port.

See `ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo` for a description of this structure.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method with candidate dimensions `dimsInfo` for `port`. In C MEX S-functions, if the proposed dimensions are acceptable, the method sets the actual port dimensions, using `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`. If they are unacceptable, the method generates an error via `ssSetErrorStatus`. This method is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclose the method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

---

**Note** This method can set the dimensions of any other input or output port whose dimensions derive from the dimensions of `port`.

---

By default, the engine calls this method only if it can fully determine the dimensionality of `port` from the port to which it is connected. In C MEX S-functions, if the engine cannot completely determine the dimensionality from port connectivity, it invokes `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo`. If an S-function can fully determine the port dimensionality from partial information, set the option `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_PARTIAL_DIMENSIONS_CALL` in `mdlInitializeSizes`, using `ssSetOptions`.

If this option is set, the engine invokes `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` even if it can only partially determine the dimensionality of the output port from connectivity.

The engine calls this method until all output ports with inherited dimensions have their dimensions specified.

### **Example**

See `sfun_matadd.c` for an example of how to use this function.

### **See Also**

`ssSetErrorStatus`, `ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`, `SetOutputPortDimensions`

### **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime

Set the sample time of an output port that inherits its sample time from the port to which it is connected

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_OUTPUT_PORT_SAMPLE_TIME

void mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime(SimStruct *S, int_T port,
    real_T sampleTime, real_T offsetTime)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

sampleTime

Inherited sample time for port.

offsetTime

Inherited offset time for port.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method with the sample time that port inherits from the port to which it is connected.

For C MEX S-functions, if the inherited sample time is acceptable, this method should set the sample time of port to the inherited sample time and offset time, using `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime` and `ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime`. If the sample time is unacceptable, this method generates an error via `ssSetErrorStatus`. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

This method can set the sample time of any other input or output port whose sample time derives from the sample time of port, using `ssSetInputPortSampleTime` or `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime` in C MEX S-functions.

Normally, sample times are propagated forward; however, if sources feeding this block have inherited sample times, the engine might choose to back-propagate known sample times to this block. When

back-propagating sample times, this method is called in succession for all inherited output port signals.

See `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime` for more information about when this method is called.

### **See Also**

`ssSetErrorStatus`, `ssSetInputPortSampleTime`, `ssSetOutputPortSampleTime`,  
`mdlSetInputPortSampleTime`, `SetOutputPortSampleTime`

### **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

# mdlSetOutputPortWidth

Set the width of an output port that outputs 1-D (vector) signals

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_OUTPUT_PORT_WIDTH  
  
void mdlSetOutputPortWidth(SimStruct *S, int_T port,  
    int_T width)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

port

Index of a port.

width

Width of signal.

## Description

This method is called with the candidate width for a dynamically sized port. If the proposed width is acceptable, the method should go ahead and set the actual port width, using `ssSetOutputPortWidth`. If the size is unacceptable, an error should be generated via `ssSetErrorStatus`. Note that any other dynamically sized input or output ports whose widths are implicitly defined by virtue of knowing the width of the given port can also have their widths set via calls to `ssSetInputPortWidth` or `ssSetOutputPortWidth`. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

## See Also

`ssSetInputPortWidth`, `ssSetOutputPortWidth`, `ssSetErrorStatus`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

## mdlSetSimState

(Not recommended) Set the simulation state of the C MEX S-function by restoring the SimState.

---

**Note** `mdlSetSimState` is not recommended. Use `mdlSetOperatingPoint` instead.

---

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SIM_STATE
void mdlSetSimState(SimStruct* S, const mxArray* in)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

const mxArray\* in

Any valid MATLAB data.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method at the beginning of a simulation of the model containing S. Simulink sets the initial simulation state of the S-function to the SimState of the model.

### Example

```
/* Function: mdlSetSimState
 * Abstract:
 *   Unpack the MATLAB structure passed and restore it to
 *   the RunTimeData structure
 */
static void mdlSetSimState(SimStruct* S,
const mxArray* simSnap)
{
    RunTimeData_T* rtd =
        (RunTimeData_T*)ssGetPWorkValue(S, 0);

    /* Check and load the count value */
    {
```



```
const mxArray* cnt =
    mxGetField(simSnap, 0, fieldNames[0]);
ERROR_IF_NULL(S,cnt,
    "Count field not found in simulation state");
if ( mxIsComplex(cnt) ||
    !mxIsUint64(cnt) ||
    mxGetNumberOfElements(cnt) != 1 ) {
    ssSetErrorStatus(S, "Count field is invalid");
    return;
}
rtd->cnt = ((uint64_T*)(mxGetData(cnt)))[0];
}
```

## See Also

mdlInitializeConditions, mdlGetSimState, SetSimState

## Version History

Introduced in R2009a

## mdlSetWorkWidths

Specify the sizes of the work vectors and create the run-time parameters required by this C MEX S-function

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SET_WORK_WIDTHS  
  
void mdlSetWorkWidths(SimStruct *S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine calls this optional method to enable this S-function to set the sizes of state and work vectors that it needs to store global data and to create run-time parameters (see “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5). The engine invokes this method after it has determined the input port width, output port width, and sample times of the S-function. This allows the S-function to size the state and work vectors based on the number and sizes of inputs and outputs and/or the number of sample times. This method specifies the state and work vector sizes via the macros `ssSetNumContStates`, `ssSetNumDiscStates`, `ssSetNumRWork`, `ssSetNumIWork`, `ssSetNumPWork`, `ssSetNumModes`, and `ssSetNumNonsampledZCs`.

A C-MEX S-function needs to implement this method only if it does not know the sizes of all the work vectors it requires when the engine invokes the function's `mdlInitializeSizes` method. If this S-function implements `mdlSetWorkWidths`, it should initialize the sizes of any work vectors that it needs to `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` in `mdlInitializeSizes`, even for those whose exact size it knows at that point. The S-function should then specify the actual size in `mdlSetWorkWidths`. This method is only valid for simulation, and must be enclosed in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

### Example

For a full example of a C MEX S-function using `DWork` vectors, see the file `sfun_directlook.c`.

## **See Also**

mdlInitializeSizes, PostPropagationSetup

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

## mdlSimStatusChange

Respond to a pause or resumption of the simulation of the model that contains this C MEX S-function

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_SIM_STATUS_CHANGE  
  
void mdlSimStatusChange(SimStruct *S,  
    ssSimStatusChangeType simStatus)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

simStatus

Status of the simulation, either SIM\_PAUSE or SIM\_CONTINUE.

### Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine when a simulation of the model containing S pauses or resumes. This method is only valid for simulation. C MEX S-functions must enclose the method in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement.

### Example

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)  
#define MDL_SIM_STATUS_CHANGE  
static void mdlSimStatusChange(SimStruct *S,  
    ssSimStatusChangeType simStatus) {  
    if (simStatus == SIM_PAUSE) {  
        ssPrintf("Pause has been called! \n");  
    } else if (simStatus == SIM_CONTINUE) {  
        ssPrintf("Continue has been called! \n");  
    }  
}  
#endif
```

### See Also

SimStatusChange

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

## mdlStart

Initialize the state vectors of this C MEX S-function

### Required

No

### Languages

C, C++

### Syntax

```
#define MDL_START  
void mdlStart(SimStruct *S)
```

### Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at the beginning of a simulation. The method performs initialization activities that this S-function requires only once, such as setting up user data or initializing states.

This method is called at the start of every successive simulation in Fast Restart mode, and it performs tasks that are required for every run. In contrast, `mdlSetupRuntimeResources` performs tasks once in Fast Restart mode and the results of those tasks done are reused by successive simulations.

If your S-function resides in an enabled subsystem and needs to reinitialize its states whenever the subsystem is enabled, use `mdlInitializeConditions` to initialize the state values, instead of `mdlStart`.

In C MEX S-functions, use `ssGetContStates` and/or `ssGetDiscStates` to get the states.

### Example

See `sfun_directlook.c` for an example of how to use this function.

### See Also

`mdlInitializeConditions`, `ssGetContStates`, `ssGetDiscStates`, `Start`

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**

## **mdlSetupRuntimeResources**

Perform any actions required once at the start of the simulation

### **Required**

No

### **Languages**

C, C++

### **Syntax**

```
#define MDL_SETUP_RUNTIME_RESOURCES  
void mdlSetupRuntimeResources(SimStruct *S)
```

### **Arguments**

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

### **Description**

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at the end of compilation. The method performs setup activities that this S-function requires only once irrespective of the number of simulations that follow (such as in a Fast Restart scenario).

### **See Also**

mdlInitializeConditions, ssGetContStates, ssGetDiscStates, Start, “Get Started with Fast Restart”

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2016b**



# mdlTerminate

Perform any actions required at termination of the simulation

## Required

Yes

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

This method performs any actions, such as freeing of memory, that must be performed when the simulation is terminated or when an S-Function block is destroyed (e.g., when it is deleted from a model). This method is called at the end of every simulation in Fast Restart mode.

In C MEX S-functions, the `mdlTerminate` method is called after a simulation (`mdlStart` is called).

In addition, if the `SS_OPTION_CALL_TERMINATE_ON_EXIT` option is set for a given S-function, and if `mdlInitializeSizes` is called, then the user is guaranteed that Simulink will call `mdlTerminate`. One reason to set the `SS_OPTION_CALL_TERMINATE_ON_EXIT` option is to allocate memory in `mdlInitializeSizes` rather than wait until `mdlStart`.

Note that Simulink calls `mdlInitializeSizes` under a number of circumstances, including compilation and simulation. Simulink will also call `mdlInitializeSizes` during model editing if you perform an operation such as the setting of parameters.

In C MEX S-functions, use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro if the `mdlTerminate` function does not perform any actions that require the SimStruct S to indicate that the S input argument is required, but not used in the body of the callback. To do this, insert the line

```
UNUSED_ARG(S)
```

after any declarations in `mdlTerminate`.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined C MEX S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
static void mdlTerminate(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* Add mdlTerminate code here */
}
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlTerminate` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, Simulink Coder cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

## Example

Suppose your S-function allocates blocks of memory in `mdlStart` and saves pointers to the blocks in a `PWork` vector. The following code fragment would free this memory.

```
{
    int i;
    for (i = 0; i < ssGetNumPWork(S); i++) {
        if (ssGetPWorkValue(S,i) != NULL) {
            free(ssGetPWorkValue(S,i));
        }
    }
}
```

## See Also

`ssSetOptions`, `Terminate`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlCleanupRuntimeResources

Perform any actions required once at termination of the simulation

## Required

Yes

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
void mdlCleanupRuntimeResources(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

This method performs any actions, such as freeing of memory, that must be performed when the simulation is terminated or when an S-Function block is destroyed (e.g., when it is deleted from a model).

In C MEX S-functions, the `mdlCleanupRuntimeResources` method is called after a simulation (`mdlSetupRuntimeResources` is called), and it reverses the actions performed by `mdlSetupRuntimeResources`.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined C MEX S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
static void mdlCleanupRuntimeResources(SimStruct *S)
{
    /* Add mdlCleanupRuntimeResources code here */
}
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlCleanupRuntimeResources` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, Simulink Coder cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

## Example

Suppose your S-function allocates blocks of memory in `mdlSetupRuntimeResources` and saves pointers to the blocks in a `PWork` vector. The following code fragment would free this memory.

```
#define MDL_CLEANUP_RUNTIME_RESOURCES
static void mdlCleanupRuntimeResources(SimStruct *S)
{
    int i;
    for (i = 0; i < ssGetNumPWork(S); i++) {
        if (ssGetPWorkValue(S,i) != NULL) {
            free(ssGetPWorkValue(S,i));
        }
    }
}
```

## See Also

`mdlSetupRuntimeResources`, `ssSetOptions`, `Terminate`, “Get Started with Fast Restart”

## Version History

**Introduced in R2016b**

# mdlUpdate

Update a block's states

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_UPDATE  
void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

tid

Task ID.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at each major simulation time step. The method should compute the S-function's states at the current time step and store the states in the S-function's state vector. The method can also perform any other tasks that the S-function needs to perform at each major time step.

Use this code if your S-function has one or more discrete states or does *not* have direct feedthrough.

If your C MEX S-function needs to have its `mdlUpdate` routine called and it does not satisfy either of the above two conditions, specify that it has a discrete state, using the `ssSetNumDiscStates` macro in the `mdlInitializeSizes` function.

In C MEX S-functions, the `tid` (task ID) argument specifies the task running when the `mdlOutputs` routine is invoked. You can use this argument in the `mdlUpdate` routine of a multirate S-Function block to encapsulate task-specific blocks of code (see “Multirate S-Function Blocks” on page 9-27).

Use the `UNUSED_ARG` macro if your C MEX S-function does not contain task-specific blocks of code to indicate that the `tid` input argument is required but not used in the body of the callback. To do this, insert the line

```
UNUSED_ARG(tid)
```

after the declarations in `mdlUpdate`.

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, when generating code for a noninlined C MEX S-function that contains this method, make sure the method is not wrapped in a `#if defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)` statement. For example:

```
#define MDL_UPDATE
#if defined(MDL_UPDATE) && defined(MATLAB_MEX_FILE)
static void mdlUpdate(SimStruct *S, int_T tid)
{
    /* Add mdlUpdate code here */
}
#endif
```

The `define` statement makes the `mdlUpdate` method available only to a MATLAB MEX file. If the S-function is not inlined, Simulink Coder cannot use this method, resulting in link or run-time errors.

---

## Example

For an example that uses this function to update discrete states, see `dsfunc.c`. For an example that uses this function to update the transfer function coefficients of a time-varying continuous transfer function, see `stvctf.c`.

## See Also

`mdlDerivatives`, `ssGetContStates`, `ssGetDiscStates`, `Update`

## Version History

Introduced before R2006a

# mdlZeroCrossings

Update zero-crossing vector

## Required

No

## Languages

C, C++

## Syntax

```
#define MDL_ZERO_CROSSINGS  
void mdlZeroCrossings(SimStruct *S)
```

## Arguments

S

SimStruct representing an S-Function block.

## Description

An S-function needs to provide this optional method only if it does zero-crossing detection. Implementing zero-crossing detection typically requires using the zero-crossing and mode work vectors to determine when a zero crossing occurs and how the S-function's outputs should respond to this event. The `mdlZeroCrossings` method should update the S-function's zero-crossing vector, using `ssGetNonsampledZCs`.

You can use the optional `mdlZeroCrossings` routine when your S-function has registered the `CONTINUOUS_SAMPLE_TIME` and has nonsampled zero crossings (`ssGetNumNonsampledZCs(S) > 0`). The `mdlZeroCrossings` routine is used to provide the Simulink engine with signals that are to be tracked for zero crossings. These are typically

- Continuous signals entering the S-function
- Internally generated signals that cross zero when a discontinuity would normally occur in `mdlOutputs`

Thus, the zero-crossing signals are used to locate the discontinuities and end the current time step at the point of the zero crossing. To provide the engine with zero-crossing signals, `mdlZeroCrossings` updates the `ssGetNonsampledZCs(S)` vector.

## Example

For an example, see `sfun_zc_sat.c`. A detailed description of this example can be found in “Zero Crossings” on page 9-31.

## **See Also**

mdlInitializeSizes, ssGetNonsampledZCs

## **Version History**

**Introduced before R2006a**



# Outputs

Compute the signals that this MATLAB S-function block emits

## Required

Yes

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

Outputs(s)

## Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this required method at each simulation time step. In a Level-2 MATLAB S-function, the `Outputs` method calculates the S-function's outputs at the current time step and store the results in the run-time object's `OutputPort(n).Data` property. In addition, for S-functions with a variable sample time, the `Outputs` method computes the next sample time hit.

Use the run-time object method `IsSampleHit` to determine if the current simulation time is one at which a task handled by this block is active. For port-based sample times, use the `IsSampleHit` property of the run-time object's `InputPort` or `OutputPort` methods to determine if the port produces outputs or accepts inputs at the current simulation time step.

Set the run-time object's `NextTimeHit` property to specify the time of the next sample hit for variable sample-time S-functions.

## See Also

`Simulink.RunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlOutputs`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## PostPropagationSetup

Specify the sizes of the work vectors and create the run-time parameters required by this MATLAB S-function

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

`PostPropagationSetup(s)`

### Arguments

`s`

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine calls this optional method to enable this S-function to set the sizes of state and work vectors that it needs to store global data and to create run-time parameters (see “Create and Update S-Function Run-Time Parameters” on page 9-5). The engine invokes this method after it has determined the input port width, output port width, and sample times of the S-function. This allows the S-function to size the state and work vectors based on the number and sizes of inputs and outputs and/or the number of sample times.

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function must implement this method if any `DWork` vectors are used in the S-function. In the case of MATLAB S-functions, this method sets the number of `DWork` vectors and initializes their attributes. For example, the following code in the `PostPropagationSetup` method specifies the usage for the first `DWork` vector:

```
s.DWork(1).Usage = type;
```

where `s` is an instance of the `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block and `type` is one of the following:

- `DWork`
- `DState`
- `Scratch`
- `Mode`

## Example

For a full example of a Level-2 MATLAB S-function using DWork vectors, see the file `adapt_lms.m` used in the Simulink model `sldemo_msfcn_lms`.

## See Also

`setup`, `Simulink.RunTimeBlock`, `mdlSetWorkWidths`

## Version History

**Introduced in R2012b**

## ProcessParameters

Process the MATLAB S-function's parameters

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

ProcessParameters(s)

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

This is an optional routine that the Simulink engine calls after `CheckParameters` changes and verifies parameters. The processing is done at the top of the simulation loop when it is safe to process the changed parameters. This function is only valid for simulation.

The purpose of this routine is to process newly changed parameters. An example is to cache parameter changes in work vectors. The engine does not call this routine when it is used with the Simulink Coder product. Therefore, if you use this routine in an S-function designed for use with the Simulink Coder product, you must write your S-function so that it doesn't rely on this routine. To do this, you must inline your S-function by using the Target Language Compiler. For information on inlining S-functions, see "Inlining S-Functions" (Simulink Coder).

### See Also

`CheckParameters`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlProcessParameters`

### Version History

Introduced in R2012b

# Projection

Perturb the solver's solution of a system's states to better satisfy time-invariant solution relationships

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

Projection(s)

## Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

This method is intended for use with S-functions that model dynamic systems whose states satisfy time-invariant relationships, such as those resulting from mass or energy conservation or other physical laws. The Simulink engine invokes this method at each time step after the model's solver has computed the S-function's states for that time step. Typically, slight errors in the numerical solution of the states cause the solutions to fail to satisfy solution invariants exactly. Your `Projection` method can compensate for the errors by perturbing the states so that they more closely approximate solution invariants at the current time step. As a result, the numerical solution adheres more closely to the ideal solution as the simulation progresses, producing a more accurate overall simulation of the system modeled by your S-function.

Your `Projection` method's perturbations of system states must fall within the solution error tolerances specified by the model in which the S-function is embedded. Otherwise, the perturbations may invalidate the solver's solution. It is up to your `Projection` method to ensure that the perturbations meet the error tolerances specified by the model. See "Perturbing a System's States Using a Solution Invariant" on page 11-96 for a simple method for perturbing a system's states. The following articles describe more sophisticated perturbation methods that your `mdlProjection` method can use.

- C.W. Gear, "Maintaining Solution Invariants in the Numerical Solution of ODEs," *Journal on Scientific and Statistical Computing*, Vol. 7, No. 3, July 1986.
- L.F. Shampine, "Conservation Laws and the Numerical Solution of ODEs I," *Computers and Mathematics with Applications*, Vol. 12B, 1986, pp. 1287-1296.
- L.F. Shampine, "Conservation Laws and the Numerical Solution of ODEs II," *Computers and Mathematics with Applications*, Vol. 38, 1999, pp. 61-72.

## Examples

### Perturbing a System's States Using a Solution Invariant

Here is a simple, Taylor-series-based approach to perturbing a system's states. Suppose your S-function models a dynamic system having a solution invariant,  $g(X, t)$ , i.e.,  $g$  is a continuous, differentiable function of the system states,  $X$ , and time,  $t$ , whose value is constant with time. Then

Here is a simple, Taylor-series-based approach to perturbing a system's states. Suppose your S-function models a dynamic system having a solution invariant,  $g(X, t)$ , i.e.,  $g$  is a continuous, differentiable function of the system states,  $X$ , and time,  $t$ , whose value is constant with time. Then

$$X_n \cong X_n^* + J_n^T (J_n J_n^T)^{-1} R_n$$

where

- $X_n$  is the system's ideal state vector at the solver's current time step
- $X_n^*$  is the approximate state vector computed by the solver at the current time step
- $J_n$  is the Jacobian of the invariant function evaluated at the point in state space specified by the approximate state vector at the current time step:

$$J_n = \frac{\partial g}{\partial X}(X_n^*, t_n)$$

- $t_n$  is the time at the current time step
- $R_n$  is the residual (difference) between the invariant function evaluated at  $X_n$  and  $X_n^*$  at the current time step:

$$R_n = g(X_n, t_n) - g(X_n^*, t_n)$$

---

**Note** The value of  $g(X_n, t_n)$  is the same at each time step and is known by definition.

---

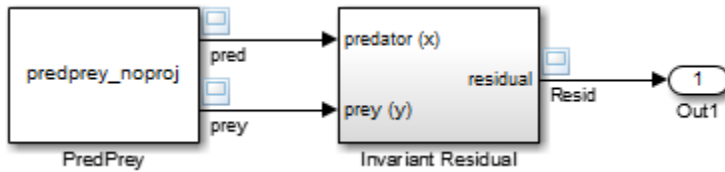
Given a continuous, differentiable invariant function for the system that your S-function models, this formula allows your S-function's `mdlProjection` method to compute a perturbation

$$J_n^T (J_n J_n^T)^{-1} R_n$$

of the solver's numerical solution,  $X_n^*$ , that more closely matches the ideal solution,  $X_n$ , keeping the S-function's solution from drifting from the ideal solution as the simulation progresses.

### Perturbation Method Example

This example illustrates how the perturbation method outlined in the previous section can keep a model's numerical solution from drifting from the ideal solution as a simulation progresses. To access model files for this example, see "Setup Working Environment for Perturbation Method Example" on page 11-38. Consider the following model, `mdlProjectionEx1`:



The PredPrey block references an S-function that uses the Lotka-Volterra equations:

### **predprey\_noproj.m**

```

function predprey_noproj(block)
% This is one of a pair S-functions that model a population of predators
% and preys, the other being predprey.m.

% Both S-functions use the Lotka-Volterra equations
%
%   xdot = ax(1-y)
%   ydot = -cy(1-x)
%
% to model changes in the population where x(t) and y(t) are
% the number of predators and prey, respectively, and
% a and c are constants. Both S-functions assume a=1 and c=2 and
% that the population consists initially of one predator and three prey.
%
% The solution to the Lotka-Volterra equations obeys the time-invariant
% relationship
%
%   (x^-c)*exp(cx)*(y^-a)*exp(ay) = d
%
% where d is a constant.
%
% The other S-function uses this relationship to compensate for
% numerical errors in the solver's solution of the model's state
% equations. This S-function does not attempt to compensate for the
% numerical errors. As a result, the solution drifts from the ideal
% solution as the simulation progresses.
%
% For more information, see the documentation for the mdlProjection
% method in the online Simulink documentation.
%
% Copyright 2006 The MathWorks, Inc.

    setup(block);
%endfunction

function setup(block)

    %% Register number of input and output ports
    block.NumInputPorts = 0;
    block.NumOutputPorts = 2;

    block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
    block.OutputPort(1).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    block.OutputPort(2).Dimensions = 1;
  
```

```

    block.OutputPort(2).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    %% Set block sample time to variable sample time
    block.SampleTimes = [0 0];

    %% Setup Dwork
    block.NumContStates = 2;

    %% Register methods
    block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions', @InitConditions);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs', @Output);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Derivatives', @Derivatives);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Projection', @Projection);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Update', @Update);

%endfunction

function InitConditions(block)

    %% Initialize Dwork: 1 predator, 3 prey.
    block.ContStates.Data = [1 3]';

%endfunction

function Output(block)

    % Output number of predators.
    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.ContStates.Data(1);

    % Output number of prey.
    block.OutputPort(2).Data = block.ContStates.Data(2);

    block.ContStates.Data;

%endfunction

function Derivatives(block)

states = block.ContStates.Data;
% System ODEs
block.Derivatives.Data = [2*states(1)*(1-states(2)); -states(2)*(1-states(1))];

%endfunction

function Projection(block)
    %not implemented
%endfunction

function Update(block)

%endfunction

     $\dot{x} = ax(1 - y)$ 
     $\dot{y} = -cy(1 - x)$ 

```



to model predator-prey population dynamics, where  $x(t)$  is the population density of the predators and  $y(t)$  is the population density of prey. The ideal solution to the predator-prey ODEs satisfies the time-invariant function

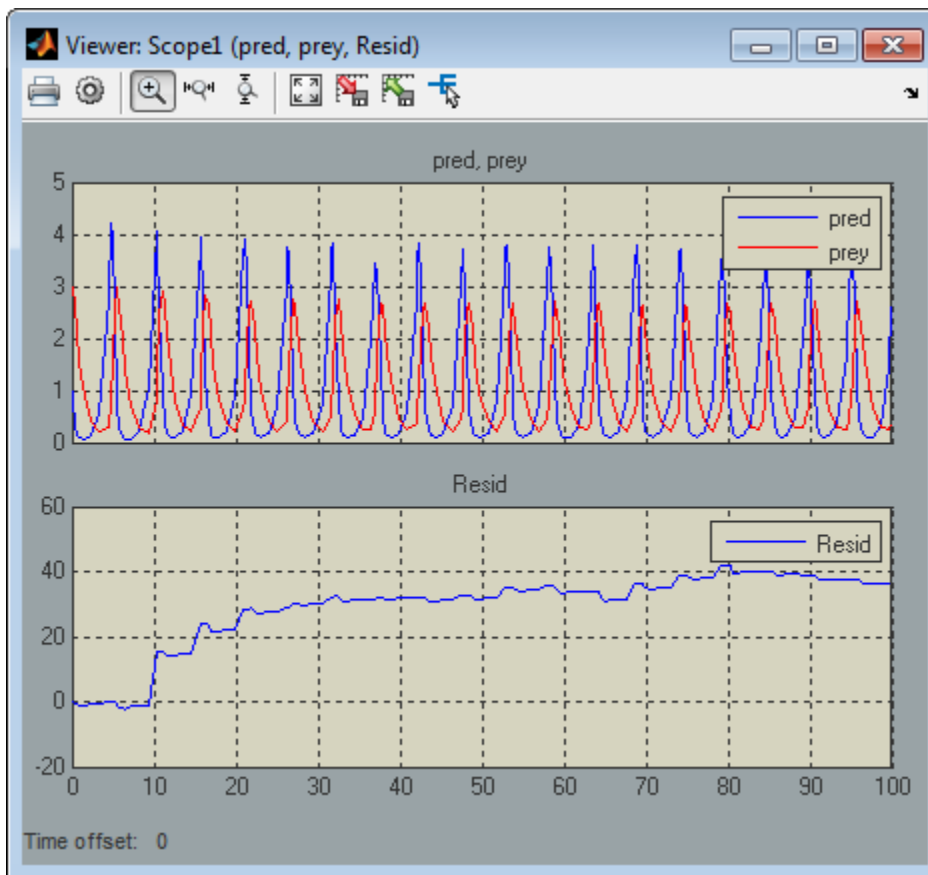
$$x^{-c}e^{cx}y^{-a}e^{ay} = d$$

where  $a$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  are constants. The S-function assumes  $a = 1$ ,  $c = 2$ , and  $d = 121.85$ .

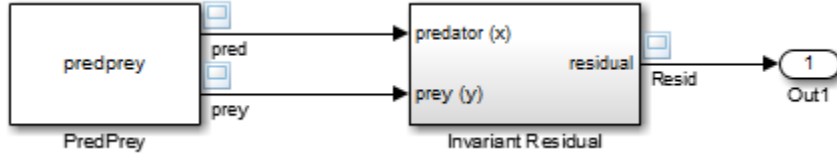
The Invariant Residual block in this model computes the residual between the invariant function evaluated along the system's ideal trajectory through state space and its simulated trajectory:

$$R_n = d - x_n^{-c}e^{cx_n}y_n^{-a}e^{ay_n}$$

where  $x_n$  and  $y_n$  are the values computed by the model's solver for the predator and prey population densities, respectively, at the current time step. Ideally, the residual should be zero throughout simulation of the model, but simulating the model reveals that the residual actually strays considerably from zero:



Now consider the following model, mdlProjectionEx2:



This model is the same as the previous model, except that its S-function, `predprey.m`, includes a `mdlProjection` method that uses the perturbation approach outlined in “Perturbing a System’s States Using a Solution Invariant” on page 11-96 to compensate for numerical drift. As a result, the numerical solution more closely tracks the ideal solution as the simulation progresses as demonstrated by the residual signal, which remains near or at zero throughout the simulation:

### **predprey.m**

```
function predprey(block)
% This is one of a pair S-functions that model a population of predators
% and preys, the other being predprey_noproj.m.

% Both S-functions use the Lotka-Volterra equations
%
%   xdot = ax(1-y)
%   ydot = -cy(1-x)
%
% to model changes in the population where x(t) and y(t) are
% the number of predators and prey, respectively, and
% a and c are constants. Both S-functions assume a=1 and c=2 and
% that the population consists initially of one predator and three prey.
%
% The solution to the Lotka-Volterra equations obeys the time-invariant
% relationship
%
%   (x^-c)*exp(cx)*(y^-a)*exp(ay) = d
%
% where d is a constant.
%
% This S-function uses this relationship to compensate for
% numerical errors in the solver's solution of the model's state
% equations. The other S-function does not. As a result,
% the other's solution drifts from the ideal solution as the
% simulation progresses.
%
% For more information, see the documentation for the mdlProjection
% method in the online Simulink documentation.
%
% Copyright 2006 The MathWorks, Inc.
    setup(block);

%endfunction

function setup(block)

    %% Register number of input and output ports
    block.NumInputPorts = 0;
    block.NumOutputPorts = 2;

    block.OutputPort(1).Dimensions = 1;
```

```

    block.OutputPort(1).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    block.OutputPort(2).Dimensions      = 1;
    block.OutputPort(2).SamplingMode = 'Sample';

    %% Set block sample time to variable sample time
    block.SampleTimes = [0 0];

    %% Setup Dwork
    block.NumContStates = 2;

    %% Register methods
    block.RegBlockMethod('InitializeConditions', @InitConditions);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Outputs', @Output);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Derivatives', @Derivatives);
    block.RegBlockMethod('Projection', @Projection);

%endfunction

function InitConditions(block)

    %% Initialize Dwork: 1 predator, 3 prey.
    block.ContStates.Data = [1 3]';

%endfunction

function Output(block)

    % Output number of predators.
    block.OutputPort(1).Data = block.ContStates.Data(1);

    % Output number of prey.
    block.OutputPort(2).Data = block.ContStates.Data(2);
    block.ContStates.Data;

%endfunction

function Derivatives(block)

    states = block.ContStates.Data;
    % System ODEs
    block.Derivatives.Data = [2*states(1)*(1-states(2)); -states(2)*(1-states(1))];

%endfunction

function Projection(block)

    states = block.ContStates.Data;

    %Computing the Jacobian of the Invariant
    J = localInvJac(states);

    %Computing the residual of the invariant
    R = localInvRes(states);

    %Perturbing the states

```

```
states = states + (J')*((J*(J'))^-1) * R;

%Update the states
block.ContStates.Data = states;

%endfunction

function J = localInvJac(states)

%Computing the Jacobian of the invariant
L = 1/states(1) * exp(states(1));
R = 1/(states(2)^2)*exp(2*states(2));
Lx = (states(1)-1)/(states(1)^2)*exp(states(1));
Ry = 2*(states(2)-1)/(states(2)^3)*exp(2*states(2));

J = [Lx*R L*Ry];

%endfunction

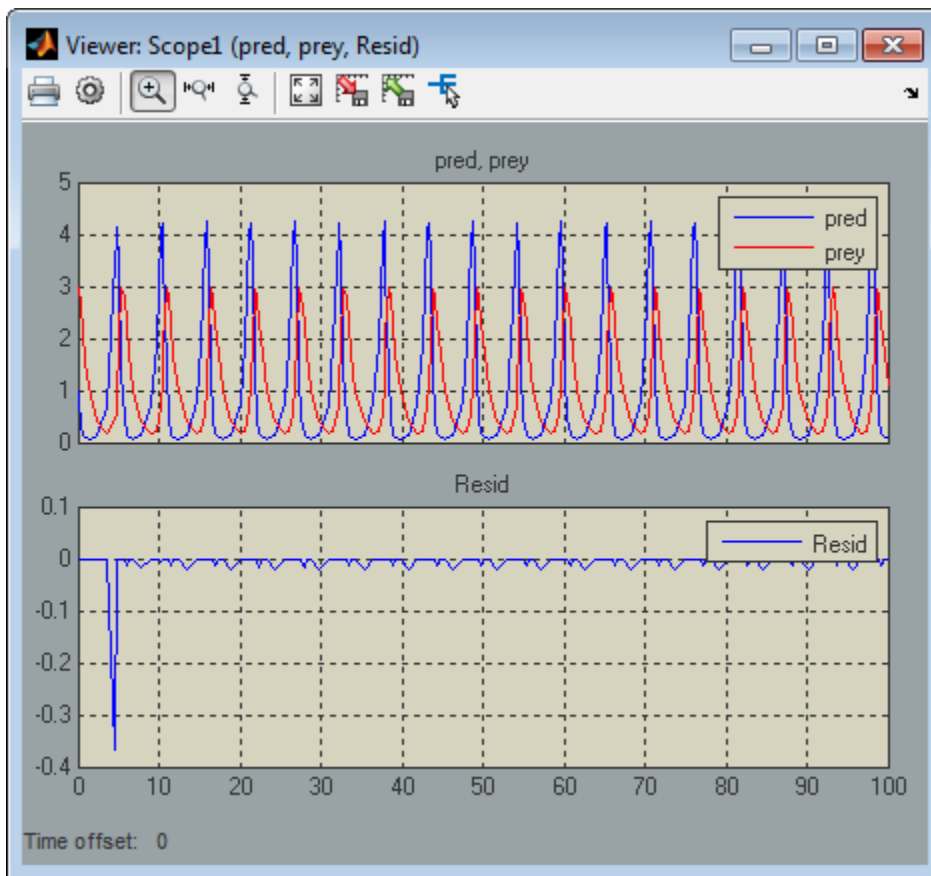
function R = localInvRes(states)

%Invariant value
inv0 = 1.218481287142732e+002;

%Computing invariant
L = 1/states(1) * exp(states(1));
R = 1/(states(2)^2)*exp(2*states(2));
inv = L*R;

%Residual
R = inv0-inv;

%endfunction
```



## See Also

Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock, mdlProjection,

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## SetAllowConstantSampleTime

Specify sample time behavior and tunability for S-function blocks with port-based sample times

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

```
SetAllowConstantSampleTime(s, flag)
```

### Arguments

`s`

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

`flag`

Logical value to allow a sample time of `Inf` for ports in the S-function. The default is `False`.

### Description

Use this macro to specify sample time behavior for your S-function with port-based sample times. If you set `flag` to `False`, the Simulink engine does not allow a sample time of `Inf` for this S-function. If you set `flag` to `True`, the S-function block is tunable and its ports can have a sample time of `Inf`. To set the sample time for ports in the S-function, use `SetInputPortSampleTime` and `SetOutputPortSampleTime`. These ports execute every time you tune any parameter in your model during simulation.

### See Also

`SetOutputPortSampleTime`, `SetInputPortSampleTime`

# SetInputPortComplexSignal

Set the numeric types (real, complex, or inherited) of the signals accepted by an input port

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetInputPortComplexSignal(s, port, csig)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying index of port to be set.

**csig**

Integer value specifying whether the port accepts real (`false` or `0`) or complex (`true` or `1`) signals.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the input port numeric type for inputs that have this attribute set to `COMPLEX_INHERITED`. The input `csig` is the proposed numeric type for this input port. This method is only valid for simulation.

The S-function must check whether the proposed numeric type is a valid type for the specified port. If it is valid, level-2 MATLAB S-functions set the numeric type of the specified input port using the line:

```
s.InputPort(port).Complexity = csig;
```

The S-function can also set the numeric types of other input and output ports with inherited numeric types. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the numeric type of a port whose numeric type is known.

If the S-function does not implement this routine, the engine assumes that the S-function accepts a real or complex signal and sets the input port numeric type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited numeric types have their numeric types specified.

## **See Also**

Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock, Simulink.BlockPortData,  
mdlSetInputPortComplexSignal

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**



# SetInputPortDataType

Set the data types of the signals accepted by an input port

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetInputPortDataType(s, port, id)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying index of port to be set.

**id**

Integer value specifying ID of port's data type. Use `s.DataTypeName(id)` to get the data type's name.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the data type of `port` when `port` has an inherited data type. The data type `id` is the proposed data type for this port. Data type IDs for the built-in data types can be found in `simstruc_types.h`. This method is only valid for simulation.

The S-function must check whether the specified data type is a valid data type for the specified port. If it is a valid data type, Level-2 MATLAB S-functions set the data type of the input port using the line:

```
s.InputPort(port).DatatypeID = id;
```

The S-function can also set the data types of other input and output ports if they are unknown. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the data type of a port whose data type has been set.

If the block does not implement this routine, the engine assumes that the block accepts any data type and sets the input port data type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited data types have their data types specified.

## **See Also**

`Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.BlockPortData`, `mdlSetInputPortDataType`

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**

# SetInputPortDimensions

Set the dimensions of the signals accepted by an input port

## Required

No

## Languages

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetInputPortDimensions(s, port, dimsInfo)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying index of port to be set.

**dimsInfo**

Array that specifies the signal dimensions supported by the port, e.g., `[5]` for a 5-element vector signal or `[3 3]` for a 3-by-3 matrix signal.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method during dimension propagation with candidate dimensions `dimsInfo` for `port`.

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function sets the input port dimensions using the line

```
s.InputPort(port).Dimensions = dimsInfo;
```

This method is only valid for simulation.

---

**Note** This method can set the dimensions of any other input or output port whose dimensions derive from the dimensions of `port`.

---

By default, the engine calls this method only if it can fully determine the dimensionality of `port` from the port to which it is connected.

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited dimensions have their dimensions specified.

## **See Also**

SetOutputPortDimensions, Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock, Simulink.BlockPortData, mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**

# SetInputPortDimensionsMode

Propagate the dimensions mode

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetInputPortDimensionsMode(s, port, dm)
```

## Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

port

Integer value specifying index of port to be set.

dm

Integer value representing the dimensions mode of the port.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this optional method to enable this S-function to set the dimensions mode of the input port indexed by `portIdx`.

## See Also

`SetInputPortDimensions`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.BlockPortData`, `mdlSetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## SetInputPortSampleTime

Set the sample time of an input port that inherits its sample time from the port to which it is connected

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

```
SetInputPortSampleTime(s, port, time)
```

### Arguments

**s**

Instance of Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying the index of port whose sampling mode is to be set.

**time**

Two-element array, [**period** **offset**], that specifies the period and offset of the times that this port samples its input.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this method with the sample time that **port** inherits from the port to which it is connected.

For Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, if the inherited sample time is acceptable, this method sets the sample time and offset time using the line

```
s.InputPort(port).SampleTime = time;
```

The engine calls this method until all input ports with inherited sample times are specified.

When inherited port-based sample times are specified, the sample time is guaranteed to be one of the following where  $0.0 < \text{period} < \text{inf}$  and  $0.0 \leq \text{offset} < \text{period}$ .

	Sample Time	Offset Time
Continuous	0.0	0.0
Discrete	period	offset

Constant, triggered, and variable-step sample times are not propagated to S-functions with port-based sample times.

Generally `SetInputPortSampleTime` is called once per port with the input port sample time. However, there can be cases where this function is called more than once. This happens when the simulation engine is converting continuous sample times to continuous but fixed in minor steps sample times. When this occurs, the original values of the sample times specified in `setup` are restored before this method is called again.

The final sample time specified at the port can be different from (but equivalent to) the sample time specified by this method. This occurs when

- The model uses a fixed-step solver and the port has a continuous but fixed in minor step sample time. In this case, the Simulink engine converts the sample time to the fundamental sample time for the model.
- The engine adjusts the sample time to be as numerically sound as possible. For example, the engine converts `[0.249999999999, 0]` to `[0.25, 0]`.

The S-function can examine the final sample times in `setup`.

## See Also

`setup`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlSetInputPortSampleTime`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## SetOperatingPoint

Restore operating point of MATLAB S-function

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

```
SetOperatingPoint(s, in)
```

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

in

The MATLAB data of type returned by `GetOperatingPoint`.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method at the beginning of a simulation of the model containing S. Simulink sets the initial simulation state of the S-function to the operating point of the model.

### See Also

“Custom Code and Hand Coded Blocks Using the S-function API”| [InitializeConditions](#)| [GetOperatingPoint](#)|[mdlGetOperatingPoint](#)

### Version History

**Introduced in R2019a**



# SetOutputPortComplexSignal

Set the numeric types (real, complex, or inherited) of the signals accepted by an output port

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetOutputPortComplexSignal(s, port, csig)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying the index of port to be set.

**csig**

Integer value specifying whether the port produces real (0) or complex (1) signals.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the output port numeric type for outputs that have this attribute set to `COMPLEX_INHERITED`. The input argument `csig` is the proposed numeric type for this output port. The S-function must check whether the specified numeric type is a valid type for the specified port.

If it is valid, Level-2 MATLAB S-functions set the numeric type of the specified output port using the line

```
s.OutputPort(port).Complexity = csig;
```

The S-function can also set the numeric types of other input and output ports with unknown numeric types. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the numeric type of a port whose numeric type is known.

If the S-function does not implement this routine, the engine assumes that the S-function accepts a real or complex signal and sets the output port numeric type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all output ports with inherited numeric types have their numeric types specified.

### **Example**

See `sdotproduct.c` for an example of how to use this function.

### **See Also**

`Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.BlockPortData`,  
`mdlSetOutputPortComplexSignal`

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**

# SetOutputPortDataType

Set the data type of the signals emitted by an output port

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetOutputPortDataType(s, port, id)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying index of port to be set.

**id**

Integer value specifying ID of port's data type. Use `s.DatatypeName(id)` to get the data type's name.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine to set the data type of `port` when `port` has an inherited data type. The data type ID `id` is the proposed data type for this port. Data type IDs for the built-in data types can be found in `simstruc_types.h`. The S-function must check whether the specified data type is a valid data type for the specified port.

If it is a valid data type, Level-2 MATLAB S-functions set the data type of the output port using the line

```
s.OutputPort(port).DatatypeID = id;
```

The S-function can also set the data types of other input and output ports if their data types have not been set. The engine reports an error if the S-function changes the data type of a port whose data type has been set.

If the block does not implement this method, the engine assumes that the block supports any data type and sets the output port data type to the specified value.

The engine calls this method until all output ports with inherited data types have their data types specified.

## **See Also**

`Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.BlockPortData`, `mdlSetOutputPortDataType`

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**

# SetOutputPortDimensions

Set the dimensions of the signals accepted by an output port

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetOutputPortDimensions(s, port, dimsInfo)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying the index of the port to be set.

**dimsInfo**

Array that specifies the signal dimensions supported by the port, e.g., [5] for a 5-element vector signal or [3 3] for a 3-by-3 matrix signal.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method with candidate dimensions `dimsInfo` for `port`.

A Level-2 MATLAB S-function sets the output port dimensions using the line

```
s.OutputPort(port).Dimensions = dimsInfo;
```

---

**Note** This method can set the dimensions of any other input or output port whose dimensions derive from the dimensions of `port`.

---

By default, the engine calls this method only if it can fully determine the dimensionality of `port` from the port to which it is connected.

The engine calls this method until all output ports with inherited dimensions have their dimensions specified.

## **Example**

See `sfun_matadd.c` for an example of how to use this function.

## **See Also**

`SetInputPortDimensions`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.BlockPortData`,  
`mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo`

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**

# SetOutputPortSampleTime

Set the sample time of an output port that inherits its sample time from the port to which it is connected

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

```
SetOutputPortSampleTime(s, port, time)
```

## Arguments

**s**

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the S-Function block.

**port**

Integer value specifying the index of port whose sampling mode is to be set.

**time**

Two-element array, `[period offset]`, that specifies the period and offset of the times that this port produces output.

## Description

The Simulink engine calls this method with the sample time that `port` inherits from the port to which it is connected.

For Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, if the inherited sample time is acceptable, this method sets the sample time and offset time using the line

```
s.OutputPort(port).SampleTime = time;
```

This method can set the sample time of any other input or output port whose sample time derives from the sample time of `port`, setting the `SampleTime` property of the `Simulink.BlockPortData` object associated with the port in Level-2 MATLAB S-functions.

Normally, sample times are propagated forward; however, if sources feeding this block have inherited sample times, the engine might choose to back-propagate known sample times to this block. When back-propagating sample times, this method is called in succession for all inherited output port signals.

See `SetInputPortSampleTime` for more information about when this method is called.

## **See Also**

SetInputPortSampleTime, Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock, Simulink.BlockPortData, mdlSetOutputPortSampleTime

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**



# SetSimState

(Not recommended) Set the simulation state of the MATLAB S-function by restoring the SimState.

---

**Note** SetSimState is not recommended. Use SetOperatingPoint instead.

---

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

SetSimState(s, in)

## Arguments

s

Instance of Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

in

The MATLAB data of type returned by GetSimState.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this custom method at the beginning of a simulation of the model containing S . Simulink sets the initial simulation state of the S-function to the SimState of the model.

## See Also

InitializeConditions, GetSimState, mdlSetSimState

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## setup

Specify the number of inputs, outputs, states, parameters, and other characteristics of the MATLAB S-function

### Required

Yes

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

setup(s)

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

This is the first S-function callback methods that the Simulink engine calls.

The Level-2 MATLAB S-function `setup` method performs nearly the same tasks as the C MEX S-function `mdlInitializeSizes` method, with two significant differences. The `setup` method does not initialize discrete state information, but it does specify the block sample times, eliminating the need for an `mdlInitializeSampleTimes` method. Use the following properties and methods of the run-time object `s` to configure the S-function:

- Specify the number of parameters that this S-function supports, using `s.NumDialogPrms`.

Use `s.DialogPrmsTunable` to set the tunability of each dialog parameter. When a parameter has been specified as not tunable, the Simulink engine issues an error during simulation (or when in external mode when using the Simulink Coder product) if an attempt is made to change the parameter.

- Specify the number of continuous states that this function has, using `s.NumContStates`. Specify discrete state information in the `PostPropagationSetup` method using a `DWork` vector.
- Configure the block's input ports, including:
  - Specify the number of input ports that this S-function has, using `s.NumInputPorts`.
  - Specify the dimensions of the  $i$ th input port, using `s.InputPort(i).Dimensions`.
  - If using port-based sample times, specify the sample time of the  $i$ th input port, using `s.InputPort(i).SampleTime`.

- For each input port, specify whether it has direct feedthrough, using `s.InputPort(i).DirectFeedthrough`.

A port has direct feedthrough if the input is used in the `Outputs` method to calculate the output or the next sample time, for an S-function with a variable sample time. The direct feedthrough flag for each input port can be set to either 1=yes or 0=no. It should be set to 1 if the input, `u`, is used in the `Outputs` method. Setting the direct feedthrough flag to 0 tells the engine that `u` is not used in this S-function method. Violating this leads to unpredictable results.

See `Simulink.BlockData` and its parent and children classes for a list of all the properties and methods associated with a Level-2 MATLAB S-function input port.

- Configure the block's output ports, including:
  - Specify the number of output ports that the block has, using `s.NumOutputPorts`.
  - Specify the dimensions of the  $i$ th output port, using `s.OutputPort(i).Dimensions`.
  - If using port-based sample times, specify the sample time of the  $i$ th output port, using `s.OutputPort(i).SampleTime`.
- Set the block-based sample times (i.e., sample rates), using `s.SampleTimes`.

See “Specify S-Function Sample Times” on page 9-20 for a complete discussion of sample time issues.

For multirate S-functions, the suggested approach to setting sample times is via the port-based sample times method. When you create a multirate S-function, you must take care to verify that, when slower tasks are preempted, your S-function correctly manages data so as to avoid race conditions. When port-based sample times are specified, the block cannot inherit a sample time of `Inf` at any port.

See “Using the setup Method” on page 3-4 for additional information and examples using the `setup` method.

### Dynamically Sized Block Features

You can set the parameters `NumContStates`, `NumDworkDiscStates`, `NumInputPorts`, and `NumOutputPorts` to a fixed non-negative integer or tell the Simulink engine to size them dynamically:

- `DYNAMICALLY_SIZED` -- Sets lengths of states, work vectors, and so on to values inherited from the driving block. It sets widths to the actual input widths, according to the scalar expansion rules unless you use `mdlSetWorkWidths` to set the widths.
- 0 or positive number -- Sets lengths (or widths) to the specified values. The default is 0.

### See Also

`Simulink.BlockData`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlInitializeSizes`, `mdlInitializeSampleTimes`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## SimStatusChange

Respond to a pause or resumption of the simulation of the model that contains this MATLAB S-function

### Required

No

### Languages

MATLAB

### Syntax

```
SimStatusChange(s, status)
```

### Arguments

`s`

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

`status`

Status of the simulation, either 0 when paused or 1 when continued.

### Description

The Simulink engine calls this routine when a simulation of the model containing S pauses or resumes. This method is only valid for simulation.

### See Also

`Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlSimStatusChange`

## Version History

**Introduced in R2012b**

## Start

Initialize the state vectors of this MATLAB S-function

### Required

No

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

Start(s)

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at the beginning of a simulation. The method performs initialization activities that this S-function requires only once, such as allocating memory and setting up user data. Use `InitializeConditions` to initialize state values

If your S-function resides in an enabled subsystem and needs to reinitialize its states whenever the subsystem is enabled, use `InitializeConditions` to initialize the state values, instead of `Start`.

Use the properties of `Simulink.RunTimeBlock` to get the states.

### Example

See `msfcn_varpulse.m` for an example of how to use this function.

### See Also

`InitializeConditions`, `Simulink.RunTimeBlock`, `mdlStart`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b

## Terminate

Perform any actions required at termination of the simulation

### Required

Yes

### Language

MATLAB

### Syntax

Terminate(s)

### Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

### Description

This method performs any actions, such as freeing of memory, that must be performed when the simulation is terminated or when an S-Function block is destroyed (e.g., when it is deleted from a model).

### See Also

`mdlTerminate`

## Version History

**Introduced in R2012b**

# Update

Update a block's states

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

`Update(s)`

## Arguments

`s`

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

The Simulink engine invokes this optional method at each major simulation time step. The method should compute the S-function's states at the current time step and store the states in the S-function's state vector. The method can also perform any other tasks that the S-function needs to perform at each major time step.

Use this code if your S-function has one or more discrete states or does *not* have direct feedthrough.

The reason for this is that most S-functions that do not have discrete states but do have direct feedthrough do not have update functions. Therefore, the engine is able to eliminate the need for the extra call in these circumstances.

In Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, use the run-time object method `IsSampleHit` to determine if the current simulation time is one at which a task handled by this block is active. For port-based sample times, use the `IsSampleHit` property of the run-time object's `InputPort` or `OutputPort` to determine if the port produces outputs or accepts inputs at the current simulation time step.

## Example

For an example that uses this function to update discrete states, see `msfcn_unit_delay.m`.

## See Also

`Derivatives`, `Simulink.RunTimeBlock`, `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlUpdate`

## **Version History**

**Introduced in R2012b**



# WriteRTW

Generate code generation data for the MATLAB S-function

## Required

No

## Language

MATLAB

## Syntax

WriteRTW(s)

## Arguments

s

Instance of `Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock` class representing the Level-2 MATLAB S-Function block.

## Description

This function is called when the Simulink Coder product is generating the `model.rtw` file.

In Level-2 MATLAB S-functions, use the run-time object's `WriteRTWParam` method to write custom parameters to the `model.rtw` file.

## Example

See the S-function `adapt_lms.m` in the Simulink model `sldemo_msfcn_lms` for an example.

## See Also

`Simulink.MSFcnRunTimeBlock`, `mdlRTW`

## Version History

Introduced in R2012b



# S-Function SimStruct Functions Reference

---

## S-Function SimStruct Functions

**In this section...**

“About SimStruct Functions” on page 12-2

“Language Support” on page 12-2

“The SimStruct” on page 12-2

“SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage” on page 12-2

### About SimStruct Functions

The Simulink software provides a set of functions for accessing the fields of an S-function's simulation data structure (`SimStruct`). S-function callback methods use these functions to store and retrieve information about an S-function.

### Language Support

Some `SimStruct` functions are available only in some of the languages supported by the Simulink software. The reference page for each `SimStruct` macro or function lists the languages in which it is available and gives the syntax for these languages.

---

**Note** Most `SimStruct` functions available in C are implemented as C macros. Individual reference pages indicate any `SimStruct` macro that becomes a function when you compile your S-function in debug mode (`mex -g`).

---

### The SimStruct

The file `simstruc.h` is a C language header file that defines the Simulink data structure and the `SimStruct` access macros. It encapsulates all the data relating to the model or S-function, including block parameters and outputs.

There is one `SimStruct` data structure allocated for the Simulink model. Each S-function in the model has its own `SimStruct` associated with it. The organization of these `SimStruct`s is much like a directory tree. The `SimStruct` associated with the model is the *root* `SimStruct`. The `SimStruct`s associated with the S-functions are the *child* `SimStruct`s.

### SimStruct Macros and Functions Listed by Usage

- “Buses” on page 12-3
- “Data Type” on page 12-3
- “Dialog Box Parameters” on page 12-4
- “Error Handling and Status” on page 12-4
- “Function Call” on page 12-4
- “Input and Output Ports” on page 12-6
- “Model Reference” on page 12-11
- “Run-Time Parameters” on page 12-11

- “Sample Time” on page 12-12
- “Simulation Information” on page 12-13
- “State and Work Vector” on page 12-14
- “Code Generation” on page 12-16
- “Miscellaneous” on page 12-17

## Buses

Macro	Description
ssGetBusElementComplexSignal	Get the signal complexity for a bus element.
ssGetBusElementDataType	Get the data type identifier for a bus element.
ssGetBusElementDimensions	Get the dimensions of a bus element.
ssGetBusElementName	Get the name of a bus element.
ssGetBusElementNumDimensions	Get the number of dimensions for a bus element.
ssGetBusElementOffset	Get the offset from the start of the bus data type to a bus element.
ssGetNumBusElements	Get the number of elements in a bus signal.
ssGetSFcnParamName	Get the value of a block parameter for an S-function block.
ssIsDataTypeABus	Determine whether a data type identifier represents a bus signal.
ssRegisterTypeFromParameter	Register a data type that a parameter in the Simulink data type table specifies.
ssSetBusInputAsStruct	Specify whether to convert the input bus signal for an S-function from virtual to nonvirtual.
ssSetBusOutputAsStruct	Specify whether the output bus signal from an S-function must be virtual or nonvirtual.
ssSetBusOutputObjectName	Specify the name of the bus object that defines the structure and type of the output bus signal.

## Data Type

Macro	Description
ssGetDataTypeId	Get the ID for a data type.
ssGetDataTypeIdAliasedThruTo	Get the ID for the built-in data type associated with a data type alias.
ssGetDataTypeName	Get a data type's name.
ssGetDataTypeSize	Get a data type's size.
ssGetDataTypeZero	Get the zero representation of a data type.
ssGetInputPortDataType	Get the data type of an input port.
ssGetNumDataTypes	Get the number of data types defined by an S-function or the model.
ssGetOutputPortDataType	Get the data type of an output port.

Macro	Description
ssGetOutputPortSignal	Get an output signal of any type except double.
ssGetSFcnParamDataType	Get the data type of a parameter.
ssRegisterDataType	Register a data type.
ssSetDataTypeSize	Specify the size of a data type.
ssSetDataTypeZero	Specify the zero representation of a data type.
ssSetInputPortDataType	Specify the data type of signals accepted by an input port.
ssSetOutputPortDataType	Specify the data type of an output port.

### Dialog Box Parameters

Macro	Description
ssGetDTypeIdFromMxArray	Get the Simulink data type of a dialog parameter.
ssGetNumSFcnParams	Get the number of parameters that an S-function expects.
ssGetSFcnParam	Get a parameter entered by a user in the S-Function block dialog box.
ssGetSFcnParamsCount	Get the actual number of parameters specified by the user.
ssSetNumSFcnParams	Set the number of parameters that an S-function expects.
ssSetSFcnParamTunable	Specify the tunability of a dialog box parameter.

### Error Handling and Status

Macro	Description
ssGetErrorStatus	Get a character vector that identifies the last error.
ssGetLocalErrorStatus	Get a character vector that identifies the last error in a thread-safe manner.
ssPrintf	Print a variable-content msg.
ssSetErrorStatus	Report errors.
ssSetLocalErrorStatus	Report errors in a thread-safe manner.
ssWarning	Display a warning message.

### Function Call

Macro	Description
ssCallSystemWithTid	Execute a function-call subsystem connected to an S-function.
ssDisableSystemWithTid	Disable a function-call subsystem connected to this S-function block.

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssEnableSystemWithTid</code>	Enable a function-call subsystem connected to this S-function.
<code>ssGetCallSystemNumFcnCall - Destinations</code>	Get the number of function-call destinations.
<code>ssGetExplicitFCSSCtrl</code>	Determine whether this S-function explicitly enables and disables the function-call subsystem that it invokes.
<code>ssSetCallSystemOutput</code>	Specify that an output port element issues a function call.
<code>ssSetExplicitFCSSCtrl</code>	Specify whether an S-function explicitly enables and disables the function-call subsystem that it calls.

## Input and Output Ports

### I/O Port — Signal Specification

Macro	Description
ssAllowSignalsWithMoreThan2D	Enable S-function to work with multidimensional input and output signals.
ssGetInputPortComplexSignal	Get the numeric type (complex or real) of an input port.
ssGetInputPortDataType	Get the data type of an input port.
ssGetInputPortDirectFeedThrough	Determine whether an input port has direct feedthrough.
ssGetInputPortFrameData	Determine whether a port accepts signal frames.
ssGetInputPortOffsetTime	Determine the offset time of an input port.
ssGetInputPortRequiredContiguous	Determine whether the signal elements entering a port must be contiguous.
ssGetInputPortSampleTime	Determine the sample time of an input port.
ssGetInputPortSampleTimeIndex	Get the sample time index of an input port.
ssGetInputPortUnit	Get unit of input port
ssGetOutputPortComplexSignal	Get the numeric type (complex or real) of an output port.
ssGetOutputPortDataType	Get the data type of an output port.
ssGetOutputPortFrameData	Determine whether a port outputs signal frames.
ssGetOutputPortOffsetTime	Determine the offset time of an output port.
ssGetOutputPortSampleTime	Determine the sample time of an output port.
ssGetOutputPortUnit	Get unit of output port
ssRegisterUnitFromExpr	Register unit from unit expression
ssSetInputPortComplexSignal	Set the numeric type (real or complex) of an input port.
ssSetInputPortDataType	Set the data type of an input port.
ssSetInputPortDirectFeedThrough	Specify that an input port is a direct-feedthrough port.
ssSetInputPortOffsetTime	Specify the sample time offset for an input port.
ssSetInputPortRequiredContiguous	Specify that the signal elements entering a port must be contiguous.
ssSetInputPortSampleTime	Set the sample time of an input port.
ssSetInputPortUnit	Specify unit of input port
ssSetNumInputPorts	Set the number of input ports on an S-Function block.



<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssSetNumOutputPorts</code>	Specify the number of output ports on an S-Function block.
<code>ssSetOneBasedIndexInputPort</code>	Specify that an input port expects one-based indices.
<code>ssSetOneBasedIndexOutputPort</code>	Specify that an output port emits one-based indices.
<code>ssSetOutputPortComplexSignal</code>	Specify the numeric type (real or complex) of this port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortDataType</code>	Specify the data type of an output port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortOffsetTime</code>	Specify the sample time offset value of an output port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortSampleTime</code>	Specify the sample time of an output port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortUnit</code>	Specify unit of output port
<code>ssSetZeroBasedIndexInputPort</code>	Specify that an input port expects zero-based indices.
<code>ssSetZeroBasedIndexOutputPort</code>	Specify that an output port emits zero-based indices.

**I/O Port – Signal Dimensions**

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
ssAddOutputDimsDependencyRule	Register a method to handle current dimensions update.
ssAddVariableSizeSignalsRuntimeChecker	Register a method to check the current input dimensions.
ssAllowSignalsWithMoreThan2D	Enable S-function to work with multidimensional signals.
ssGetCurrentInputPortDimensions	Gets the current size of dimension dIdx of input port pIdx.
ssGetCurrentInputPortWidth	Gets the total width (total number of elements) of the signal at input port pIdx
ssGetCurrentOutputPortDimensions	Gets the current size of dimension dIdx of the signal at output port pIdx.
ssGetCurrentOutputPortWidth	Gets the total width (total number of elements) of the signal at output port pIdx.
ssGetInputPortDimensions	Get the dimensions of the signal accepted by an input port.
ssGetInputPortDimensionSize	Get the size of one dimension of the signal entering an input port.
ssGetInputPortDimensionsMode	Gets the dimensions mode of the input port indexed by pIdx,
ssGetInputPortNumDimensions	Get the dimensionality of the signals accepted by an input port.
ssGetInputPortWidth	Determine the width of an input port.
ssGetOutputPortDimensions	Get the dimensions of the signal leaving an output port.
ssGetOutputPortDimensionSize	Get the size of one dimension of the signal leaving an output port.
ssGetOutputPortDimensionsMode	Sets the dimensions mode of the output port indexed by pIdx.
ssGetOutputPortNumDimensions	Get the number of dimensions of an output port.
ssGetOutputPortWidth	Determine the width of an output port.
ssSetCurrentOutputPortDimensions	Sets the current size corresponding to dimension dIdx of the output signal at port pIdx.
ssSetDWorkRequireResetForSignalSize	Set the block flag for resetting the dIndex DWork size upon subsystem reset.
ssSetInputPortDimensionInfo	Set the dimensionality of an input port.
ssSetInputPortDimensionsMode	Sets the dimensions mode of the input port indexed by pIdx.

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssSetInputPortDimsSameAsOutputPortDims</code>	Set the dimensions of output port <code>outIdx</code> to be equal than the dimensions of input port <code>inIdx</code> .
<code>ssSetInputPortMatrixDimensions</code>	Specify dimension information for an input port that accepts matrix signals.
<code>ssSetInputPortVectorDimension</code>	Specify dimension information for an input port that accepts vector signals.
<code>ssSetInputPortWidth</code>	Set the width of a 1-D (vector) input port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortDimensionInfo</code>	Specify the dimensionality of an output port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortDimensionsMode</code>	Sets the dimensions mode of the output port indexed by <code>pIdx</code> .
<code>ssSetOutputPortMatrixDimensions</code>	Specify dimension information for an output port that emits matrix signals.
<code>ssSetOutputPortVectorDimension</code>	Specify dimension information for an output port that emits vector signals.
<code>ssSetOutputPortWidth</code>	Specify the width of a 1-D (vector) output port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortMatrixDimensions</code>	Specify the dimensions of a 2-D (matrix) signal.
<code>ssRegMdlSetInputPortDimensionsModeFcn</code>	Register the method to handle dimensions mode propagation for each input port.
<code>ssSetSignalSizesComputeType</code>	Set the type of output dependency on the input signal.
<code>ssSetVectorMode</code>	Specify the vector mode that an S-function supports.

**I/O Port — Signal Access**

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssGetInputPortBufferDstPort</code>	Determine the output port that is overwriting an input port's memory buffer.
<code>ssGetInputPortConnected</code>	Determine whether an S-Function block port is connected to a nonvirtual block.
<code>ssGetInputPortOptimOpts</code>	Determine the reusability setting of the memory allocated to the input port of an S-function.
<code>ssGetInputPortOverWritable</code>	Determine whether an input port can be overwritten.
<code>ssGetInputPortRealSignal</code>	Get the address of a real, contiguous signal entering an input port.
<code>ssGetInputPortRealSignalPtrs</code>	Access the signal elements connected to an input port.
<code>ssGetInputPortSignal</code>	Get the address of a contiguous signal entering an input port.
<code>ssGetInputPortSignalPtrs</code>	Get pointers to input signal elements of type other than double.
<code>ssGetNumInputPorts</code>	Can be used in any routine (except <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> ) to determine how many input ports a block has.
<code>ssGetNumOutputPorts</code>	Can be used in any routine (except <code>mdlInitializeSizes</code> ) to determine how many output ports a block has.
<code>ssGetOutputPortConnected</code>	Determine whether an output port is connected to a nonvirtual block.
<code>ssGetOutputPortBeingMerged</code>	Determine whether the output of this block is connected to a Merge block.
<code>ssGetOutputPortOptimOpts</code>	Determine the reusability of the memory allocated to the output port of an S-function.
<code>ssGetOutputPortRealSignal</code>	Access the elements of a signal connected to an output port.
<code>ssGetOutputPortSignal</code>	Get the vector of signal elements emitted by an output port.
<code>ssSetInputPortOptimOpts</code>	Specify the reusability of the memory allocated to the input port of an S-function.
<code>ssSetInputPortOverWritable</code>	Specify whether an input port is overwritable by an output port.
<code>ssSetOutputPortOptimOpts</code>	Specify the reusability of the memory allocated to the output port of an S-function.
<code>ssSetOutputPortOverwritesInputPort</code>	Specify whether an output port can share its memory buffer with an input port.

## Model Reference

Macro	Description
ssRTWGenIsModelReferenceRTW-Target	Determine if the model reference Simulink Coder target is generating.
ssRTWGenIsModelReferenceSIM-Target	Determine if the model reference simulation target is generating.
ssSetModelReferenceNormalMode-Support	Specify if S-function can be used in referenced model simulating in normal mode.
ssSetModelReferenceSampleTime-DefaultInheritance	Specify that a referenced model containing this S-function can inherit its sample time from its parent model.
ssSetModelReferenceSampleTime-DisallowInheritance	Specify that the use of this S-function in a referenced model prevents the referenced model from inheriting its sample time from its parent model.
ssSetModelReferenceSampleTime-InheritanceRule	Specify whether use of an S-function in a referenced model prevents the referenced model from inheriting its sample time from the parent model.

## Run-Time Parameters

These macros allow you to create, update, and access run-time parameters corresponding to a block's dialog parameters.

Macro	Description
ssGetNumRunTimeParams	Get the number of run-time parameters created by this S-function.
ssGetRunTimeParamInfo	Get the attributes of a specified run-time parameter.
	Register all tunable dialog parameters as run-time parameters.
ssRegDlgParamAsRunTimeParam	Register a run-time parameter.
ssSetNumRunTimeParams	Specify the number of run-time parameters to be created by this S-function.
ssSetRunTimeParamInfo	Specify the attributes of a specified run-time parameter.
	Update all run-time parameters corresponding to tunable dialog parameters.
ssUpdateDlgParamAsRunTimeParam	Update a run-time parameter.
ssUpdateRunTimeParamData	Update the value of a specified run-time parameter.
ssUpdateRunTimeParamInfo	Update the attributes of a specified run-time parameter from the attributes of the corresponding dialog parameters.

**Sample Time**

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssGetInputPortSampleTime</code>	Determine the sample time of an input port.
<code>ssGetInputPortSampleTimeIndex</code>	Get the sample time index of an input port.
<code>ssGetNumSampleTimes</code>	Get the number of sample times an S-function has.
<code>ssGetOffsetTime</code>	Determine one of an S-function's sample time offsets.
<code>ssGetOutputPortSampleTime</code>	Determine the sample time of an output port.
<code>ssGetPortBasedSampleTimeBlock-IsTriggered</code>	Determine whether a block that uses port-based sample times resides in a triggered subsystem.
<code>ssGetSampleTime</code>	Determine one of an S-function's sample times.
<code>ssGetTNext</code>	Get the time of the next sample hit in a discrete S-function with a variable sample time.
<code>ssIsContinuousTask</code>	Determine whether a specified rate is the continuous rate.
<code>ssIsSampleHit</code>	Determine the sample rate at which an S-function is operating.
<code>ssIsSpecialSampleHit</code>	Determine whether the current sample time hits two specified rates.
<code>ssSampleAndOffsetAreTriggered</code>	Determine whether a sample time and offset value pair indicate a triggered sample time.
<code>ssSetInputPortSampleTime</code>	Set the sample time of an input port.
<code>ssSetModelReferenceSampleTime-DefaultInheritance</code>	Specify that a referenced model containing this S-function can inherit its sample time from its parent model.
<code>ssSetModelReferenceSampleTime-DisallowInheritance</code>	Specify that the use of this S-function in a referenced model prevents the referenced model from inheriting its sample time from its parent model.
<code>ssSetModelReferenceSampleTime-InheritanceRule</code>	Specify whether use of an S-function in a referenced model prevents the referenced model from inheriting its sample time from the parent model.
<code>ssSetNumSampleTimes</code>	Set the number of sample times an S-function has.
<code>ssSetOffsetTime</code>	Specify the offset of a sample time.
<code>ssSetSampleTime</code>	Specify a sample time for an S-function.
<code>ssSetTNext</code>	Specify the time of the next sample hit in an S-function.

**Simulation Information**

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
ssGetBlockReduction	Determine whether a block has requested block reduction before the simulation has begun and whether it has actually been reduced after the simulation loop has begun.
ssGetErrorStatus	Get a character vector that identifies the last error.
ssGetFixedStepSize	Get the fixed step size of the model containing the S-function.
ssGetMaxStepSize	Get the maximum step size of the model containing the S-function.
ssGetMinStepSize	Get the minimum step size of the model containing the S-function.
ssGetSimMode	Determine the context in which an S-function is being invoked: normal simulation, external-mode simulation, model editor, etc.
ssGetSimStatus	Determine the current simulation status.
ssGetSolverMode	Get the solver mode being used to solve the S-function.
ssGetSolverName	Get the name of the solver being used for the simulation.
ssGetStateAbsTol	Get the absolute tolerance used by the model's variable-step solver for a specified state.
ssGetStopRequested	Get the value of the simulation stop requested flag.
ssGetT	Get the current base simulation time.
ssGetTaskTime	Get the current time for a task.
ssGetTFinal	Get the end time of the current simulation.
ssGetTNext	Get the time of the next sample hit.
ssGetTStart	Get the start time of the current simulation.
ssIsExternalSim	Determine if the model is running in external mode.
ssIsFirstInitCond	Determine whether the current simulation time is equal to the simulation start time.
ssIsMajorTimeStep	Determine whether the current time step is a major time step.
ssIsMinorTimeStep	Determine whether the current time step is a minor time step.
ssIsVariableStepSolver	Determine whether the current solver is a variable-step solver.

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssRTWGenIsAccelerator</code>	Determine if the model is running in Accelerator mode.
<code>ssSetStateAbsTol</code>	Set the values of the absolute tolerances that the variable-step solver will apply to the S-function states.
<code>ssSetBlockReduction</code>	Request that Simulink attempt to reduce a block.
<code>ssSetOperatingPointCompliance</code>	Specify how Simulink treats an S-function when saving and restoring the simulation state of a model containing the S-function.
<code>ssSetOperatingPointVisibility</code>	Specify whether or not the simulation state of the S-function is visible (accessible) in the simulation state of the model.
<code>ssSetSolverNeedsReset</code>	Ask Simulink to reset the solver.
<code>ssSetStopRequested</code>	Ask Simulink to terminate the simulation at the end of the current time step.

### State and Work Vector

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssGetContStates</code>	Get an S-function's continuous states.
<code>ssGetDiscStates</code>	Get an S-function's discrete states.
<code>ssGetDWork</code>	Get a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkComplexSignal</code>	Determine whether the elements of a DWork vector are real or complex numbers.
<code>ssGetDWorkDataType</code>	Get the data type of a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkName</code>	Get the name of a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkUsageType</code>	Determine how the DWork vector is used in S-function.
<code>ssGetDWorkUsedAsDState</code>	Determine whether a DWork vector is used as a discrete state vector.
<code>ssGetDWorkWidth</code>	Get the size of a DWork vector.
<code>ssGetdX</code>	Get the derivatives of the continuous states of an S-function.
<code>ssGetIWork</code>	Get an S-function's integer-valued ( <code>int_T</code> ) work vector.
<code>ssGetIWorkValue</code>	Get a value from a block's integer work vector.
<code>ssGetModeVector</code>	Get an S-function's mode work vector.
<code>ssGetModeVectorValue</code>	Get an element of a block's mode vector.
<code>ssGetNonsampledZCs</code>	Get an S-function's zero-crossing signals vector.
<code>ssGetNumContStates</code>	Determine the number of continuous states that an S-function has.



<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>ssGetNumDiscStates</code>	Determine the number of discrete states that an S-function has.
<code>ssGetNumDWork</code>	Get the number of Dwork vectors used by a block.
<code>ssGetNumIWork</code>	Get the size of an S-function's integer work vector.
<code>ssGetNumModes</code>	Determine the size of an S-function's mode vector.
<code>ssGetNumNonsampledZCs</code>	Determine the number of nonsampled zero crossings that an S-function detects.
<code>ssGetNumPWork</code>	Determine the size of an S-function's pointer work vector.
<code>ssGetNumRWork</code>	Determine the size of an S-function's real-valued ( <code>real_T</code> ) work vector.
<code>ssGetPWork</code>	Get an S-function's pointer ( <code>void *</code> ) work vector.
<code>ssGetPWorkValue</code>	Get a pointer from a pointer work vector.
<code>ssGetRealDiscStates</code>	Get the real ( <code>real_T</code> ) values of an S-function's discrete state vector.
<code>ssGetRWork</code>	Get an S-function's real-valued ( <code>real_T</code> ) work vector.
<code>ssGetRWorkValue</code>	Get an element of an S-function's real-valued work vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkComplexSignal</code>	Specify whether the elements of a Dwork vector are real or complex.
<code>ssSetDWorkDataType</code>	Specify the data type of a Dwork vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkName</code>	Specify the name of a Dwork vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkUsageType</code>	Specify how the DWork vector is used in S-function.
<code>ssSetDWorkUsedAsDState</code>	Specify that a Dwork vector is used as a discrete state vector.
<code>ssSetDWorkWidth</code>	Specify the width of a Dwork vector.
<code>ssSetIWorkValue</code>	Set an element of a block's integer work vector.
<code>ssSetModeVectorValue</code>	Set an element of a block's mode vector.
<code>ssSetNumContStates</code>	Specify the number of continuous states that an S-function has.
<code>ssSetNumDiscStates</code>	Specify the number of discrete states that an S-function has.
<code>ssSetNumDWork</code>	Specify the number of Dwork vectors used by a block.
<code>ssSetNumIWork</code>	Specify the size of an S-function's integer ( <code>int_T</code> ) work vector.

Macro	Description
ssSetNumModes	Specify the number of operating modes that an S-function has.
ssSetNumNonsampledZCs	Specify the number of zero crossings that an S-function detects.
ssSetNumPWork	Specify the size of an S-function's pointer (void *) work vector.
ssSetNumRWork	Specify the size of an S-function's real (real_T) work vector.
ssSetPWorkValue	Set an element of a block's pointer work vector.
ssSetRWorkValue	Set an element of a block's floating-point work vector.

### Code Generation

Macro	Description
ssGetDWorkRTWIdentifier	Get the identifier used to declare a DWork vector in code generated from the associated S-function.
ssGetDWorkRTWIdentifierMust-ResolveToSignalObject	Get a flag indicating if a DWork vector resolves to a Simulink.Signal object.
ssGetDWorkRTWStorageClass	Get the storage class of a DWork vector in code generated from the associated S-function.
ssGetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier	Get the C type qualifier (e.g., const) used to declare a DWork vector in code generated from the associated S-function.
ssGetNumInputPorts	Get the number of input ports that a block has
ssGetNumOutputPorts	Get the number of output ports that a block has
ssGetPlacementGroup	Get the name of the placement group of a block.
ssRTWGenIsCodeGen	Identify any code generation that is not used by the Accelerator.
ssSetArrayLayoutForCodeGen	Specify array layout of the S-function.
ssSetDWorkRTWIdentifier	Set the identifier used to declare a DWork vector in code generated from the associated S-function.
ssSetDWorkRTWIdentifierMust-ResolveToSignalObject	Specify if a DWork vector resolves to a Simulink.Signal object.
ssSetDWorkRTWStorageClass	Set the storage class of a DWork vector in code generated from the associated S-function.
ssSetDWorkRTWTypeQualifier	Set the C type qualifier (e.g., const) used to declare a DWork vector in code generated from the associated S-function.
ssSetPlacementGroup	Specify the name of the placement group of a block.

Macro	Description
ssWriteRTW2dMatParam	Write a Simulink matrix parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWMx2dMatParam	Write a MATLAB matrix parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWMxVectParam	Write a MATLAB vector parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWParameters	Write tunable parameters to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWParamSettings	Write settings for the S-function's parameters to the <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWScalarParam	Write a scalar parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWStr	Write a character vector to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWStrParam	Write a character vector parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWStrVectParam	Write a character vector vector parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWVectParam	Write a Simulink vector parameter to the S-function's <i>model.rtw</i> file.
ssWriteRTWorkVect	Write the S-function's work vectors to the <i>model.rtw</i> file.

### Miscellaneous

Macro	Description
ssCallExternalModeFcn	Invoke the external mode function for an S-function.
ssGetModelName	Get the name of an S-Function block or model containing the S-function.
ssGetParentSS	Get the parent of an S-function.
ssGetPath	Get the path of an S-function or the model containing the S-function.
ssGetRootSS	Return the root (model) <i>SimStruct</i> .
ssGetUserData	Access user data.
ssSetExternalModeFcn	Specify the external mode function for an S-function.
ssSetOptions	Set various simulation options.
ssSetPlacementGroup	Specify the execution order of a sink or source S-function.
ssSetUserData	Specify user data.

<b>Macro</b>	<b>Description</b>
ssSupportsMultipleExecInstances	Allow an S-function to operate within a For Each Subsystem.

# S-Function Options

---

This section describes the S-function options available through `ssSetOptions`. Each S-function sets its applicable options at the end of its `mdlInitializeSizes` method. Use the OR operator (`|`) to set multiple options. For example:

```
ssSetOptions(S, SS_OPTION_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE |  
              SS_OPTION_DISCRETE_VALUED_OUTPUT);
```

## **SS\_OPTION\_ALLOW\_CONSTANT\_PORT\_SAMPLE\_TIME**

Allow a sample time of Inf for a port

### **Description**

Allows an S-function with port-based sample times to specify or inherit a sample time of Inf. This setting allows the port to have a constant value, and tells the Simulink engine that all input and output ports support a sample time of Inf. See “Specifying Constant Sample Time (Inf) for a Port” on page 9-24 for more information.

### **Example**

See `sfun_port_constant.c`, the source file for the `sfcndemo_port_constant` example, for an example.

### **See Also**

`SS_OPTION_DISALLOW_CONSTANT_SAMPLE_TIME`

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2007b**

# SS\_OPTION\_ALLOW\_INPUT\_SCALAR\_EXPANSION

Allow scalar expansion of input ports

## Description

Specifies that the input to your S-function input ports can have a width of either 1 or the size specified by the port, usually referred to as the block width. The S-function expands scalar inputs to the same dimensions as the block width. See “Scalar Expansion of Inputs” on page 9-15 for more information.

## Example

See `sfun_multiport.c`, the source file for the `sfcndemo_sfun_multiport` example, for an example.

## Version History

Introduced in R2007b

## **SS\_OPTION\_ALLOW\_PARTIAL\_DIMENSIONS\_CALL**

Allow calls to `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` and `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` with partial dimension information

### **Description**

Indicates the S-function can handle dynamically dimensioned signals. By default, the Simulink engine calls the `mdlSetInputPortDimensionInfo` or `mdlSetOutputPortDimensionInfo` methods if the number of dimensions and size of each dimension for the candidate port are fully known. If `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_PARTIAL_DIMENSIONS_CALLS` is set, the engine may also call these methods with partial dimension information. For example, the methods may be called when the port width is known, but the actual 2-D dimensions are unknown. See `mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo` for more information.

### **See Also**

`mdlSetDefaultPortDimensionInfo`

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2007b**



# SS\_OPTION\_ALLOW\_PORT\_SAMPLE\_TIME\_IN\_TRIGSS

Allow an S-function with port-based sample times to operate in a triggered subsystem

## Description

Allows an S-function that uses port-based sample times to operate in a triggered subsystem. During sample time propagation, use the macro `ssSampleAndOffsetAreTriggered` to determine if the sample and offset times correspond to the block being in a triggered subsystem. If the block is triggered, all port sample times must be either triggered or constant. See “Configuring Port-Based Sample Times for Use in Triggered Subsystems” on page 9-25 for more information.

## Example

See `sfun_port_triggered.c`, the source file for the `sfcndemo_port_triggered` example, for an example.

## See Also

`ssSampleAndOffsetAreTriggered`

## Version History

Introduced in R2007b

## SS\_OPTION\_ASYNC\_RATE\_TRANSITION

Create a read-write pair of blocks that ensure correct data transfer

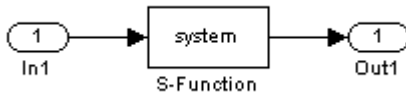
### Description

Creates a read-write pair of blocks intended to guarantee correct data transfers between a synchronously (periodic) and an asynchronously executing subsystem or between two asynchronously executing subsystems. Both the read S-function and write S-function should set this option.

An asynchronously executed function-call subsystem is a function-call subsystem driven by an S-function with the `SS_OPTION_ASYNCHRONOUS` specified.

The Simulink engine defines two classes of asynchronous rate transitions.

- Read-write pairs. In this class, two blocks, using a technique such as double buffering, ensure data integrity in a multitasking environment. When creating the read-write pair of blocks, the S-functions for these blocks should set the `SS_OPTION_ASYNC_RATE_TRANSITION` option. Furthermore, the `MaskType` property of the read block, must include the character vector `read` and the `MaskType` property of write block must include the character vector `write`.
- A single protected or unprotected block. To create a single Protected Rate Transition block, create a subsystem that contains the following



and set the `Tag` value of the Output block to `AsyncRateTransition`. The S-function then provides the code for the protected transition. Note, this S-function does not set the `SS_OPTION_ASYNC_RATE_TRANSITION` option.

### See Also

`SS_OPTION_ASYNCHRONOUS`

### Version History

Introduced in R2007b

# SS\_OPTION\_ASYNCHRONOUS

Specify this S-function drives a function-call subsystem attached to interrupt service routines

## Description

Specifies that the S-function is driving function-call subsystems attached to interrupt service routines. This option applies only to S-functions that have no input ports during code generation and 1 output port. During simulation, the S-function may have an input port to provide a condition on which to execute. The output port must be configured to perform function calls on every element. If any of these requirements is not met, the SS\_OPTION\_ASYNCHRONOUS option is ignored. Specifying this option

- Informs the Simulink engine that there is no implied data dependency involving the data sources or destinations of the function-call subsystem called by the S-function.
- Causes the function-call subsystem attached to the S-function to be colored purple, indicating that it does not execute at a periodic rate.
- Enables additional checks to verify that the model is constructed correctly.
  - 1 The engine validates that the appropriate asynchronous rate transition blocks reside between the purple function-call subsystem. The engine also checks that period tasks exists. You can directly read and write from the function-call subsystem by using a block that has no computational overhead. To ensure safe task transitions between period and asynchronous tasks, use the SS\_OPTION\_ASYNC\_RATE\_TRANSITION option.
  - 2 For data transfers between two asynchronously executed (purple) function-call subsystem, the engine validates that the appropriate asynchronous task transition blocks exists.

## See Also

SS\_OPTION\_ASYNC\_RATE\_TRANSITION

## Version History

Introduced in R2007b

## SS\_OPTION\_CALL\_TERMINATE\_ON\_EXIT

Force call to `mdlTerminate`

### Description

Guarantees the Simulink engine calls the S-function's `mdlTerminate` method before destroying a block that references the S-function. Calling `mdlTerminate` allows your S-function to clean up after itself, for example, by freeing memory it allocated during a simulation. The engine destroys an S-function block under the following circumstances.

- 1 A simulation ends either normally or as a result of invoking `ssSetErrorStatus`.
- 2 A user deletes the block.
- 3 The engine eliminates the block as part of a block reduction optimization (see “Block reduction”).

If this option is not set, the engine calls your S-function's `mdlTerminate` method only if the `mdlStart` method of at least one block in the model containing the S-function executed without error.

### Example

See the S-function `sfun_runtime3.c` for an example.

### See Also

`mdlTerminate`

### Version History

Introduced in R2007b

# SS\_OPTION\_CAN\_BE\_CALLED\_CONDITIONALLY

Specify this S-function can be called conditionally

## Description

Specifies that the S-function can be called conditionally by other blocks. Simulink uses this option to determine if the S-Function block can participate in “Conditional input branch execution” for Switch and Multiport Switch blocks.

## Example

See the S-function `sdotproduct.c` used in the Simulink model `sfcdemo_sdotproduct` for an example.

## Version History

**Introduced in R2007b**

## SS\_OPTION\_DISALLOW\_CONSTANT\_SAMPLE\_TIME

Disallow inheritance of `Inf` sample time

### Description

Prohibits the S-Function block that references this S-function from inheriting a sample time of `Inf`. The `SS_OPTION_DISALLOW_CONSTANT_SAMPLE_TIME` option applies only to S-functions that use block-based sample times.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, and the S-function declares the number of sample times as `PORT_BASED_SAMPLE_TIMES`, it will not inherit a sample time of `Inf` unless it specifies the `SS_OPTION_ALLOW_CONSTANT_PORT_SAMPLE_TIME` option.

---

If you have Simulink Coder, note:

- If the S-function specifies this option and inherits a sample time of `Inf`, the Simulink Coder product determines how to generate code for the block based on if the block is invariant.
- A block is invariant if all of its ports' signals are invariant. A signal is invariant if it has a constant value during the entire simulation. A constant block sample time does not guarantee all the ports' signals are invariant. For more information, see “Inline Invariant Signals” (Simulink Coder).
- If the block is not invariant, the Simulink Coder product generates code only in the `model_initialize` function. If the block is invariant, the Simulink Coder product eliminates the block's code altogether.

### Example

See `sfun_manswitch_mode.c` for an example.

### See Also

`SS_OPTION_ALLOW_CONSTANT_PORT_SAMPLE_TIME`

## Version History

Introduced in R2007b

# SS\_OPTION\_DISCRETE\_VALUED\_OUTPUT

Specify this S-function has discrete valued output

## Description

Specifies this S-function has discrete valued outputs. With this option set, the Simulink engine does not assign algebraic variables to this S-function when it appears in an algebraic loop.

## Version History

Introduced in R2007b

## **SS\_OPTION\_EXCEPTION\_FREE\_CODE**

Improve performance of exception-free S-functions

### **Description**

Improves performance of S-functions that do not use `mexErrMsgTxt`, `mxMalloc`, or any other routines that can throw an exception. An S-function is not exception free if it contains any routine that, when called, has the potential of long-jumping out of a block of code and into another scope. See “Exception Free Code” on page 9-45 for more information.

### **Example**

See `vsfunc.c` for an example.

### **See Also**

`SS_OPTION_RUNTIME_EXCEPTION_FREE_CODE`

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2007b**



## SS\_OPTION\_FORCE\_NONINLINED\_FCNCALL

Specify generated code format for function-call subsystems called by this S-function

### Description

If you have Simulink Coder, indicates that the software should generate procedures for all function-call subsystems called by this S-function, instead of possibly inlining the subsystem code. If an S-function sets this option, Simulink Coder ignores the `InLine` setting for the **Code generation function packaging** option in the Subsystem Parameters dialog box for the Subsystem block. For more information, see “About Nonvirtual Subsystem Code Generation” (Embedded Coder).

### Version History

Introduced in R2007b

## **SS\_OPTION\_NONVOLATILE**

Enable the Simulink engine to remove unnecessary S-Function blocks

### **Description**

Specifies this S-function has no side effects. Setting this option enables the Simulink engine to remove the S-Function block referencing this S-function during dead branch elimination, if it is not needed.

### **Example**

See the S-function `sdotproduct.c` used in the Simulink model `sfcdemo_sdotproduct` for an example.

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2007b**

## SS\_OPTION\_PLACE\_ASAP

Specify this S-function should be placed as soon as possible

### Description

Specifies that this S-function should be placed as soon as possible in the block sorted order. The SS\_OPTION\_PLACE\_ASAP option uses a hierarchical sorted order such as that used by blocks. Within a subsystem, the Simulink engine places an S-function block using this option as far up in the sorted order as possible without changing the model's semantics. If the S-function's **Priority** block property is set, and other blocks in the same subsystem have the same priority, the engine places S-functions with this option before the other blocks in the same subsystem with the same priority. This option is typically used by devices connecting to hardware when you want to ensure the hardware connection is completed first.

---

**Note** Simulink honors the SS\_OPTION\_PLACE\_ASAP option, relative to other blocks, only if this block and the other blocks are in the same task. As a result, Simulink does not compare two blocks set with SS\_OPTION\_PLACE\_ASAP if they exist in different tasks. In addition, Simulink might not place blocks with SS\_OPTION\_PLACE\_ASAP set before blocks without SS\_OPTION\_PLACE\_ASAP set if they are in different tasks.

---

For more information on block sorted orders, see “Control and Display Execution Order”.

### Version History

**Introduced in R2007b**

## **SS\_OPTION\_PORT\_SAMPLE\_TIMES\_ASSIGNED**

Specify this S-function uses port-based sample times

### **Description**

Indicates the S-function registers multiple sample times (`ssSetNumSampleTimes > 1`) to specify the rate at which each input and output port is running. The simulation engine needs this information when checking for illegal rate transitions. If an S-function uses this option, it cannot inherit its sample times. See “Hybrid Block-Based and Port-Based Sample Times” on page 9-27 for more information.

### **Example**

See `mixedm.c` for an example.

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2007b**

## SS\_OPTION\_REQ\_INPUT\_SAMPLE\_TIME\_MATCH

Specify sample times of input signal and port must match

### Description

Specifies that the input signal sample times must match the sample time assigned to the block input port. For example:



generates an error if this option is set. The Simulink engine does not generate an error if the block or input port sample time is inherited.

### Version History

Introduced in R2007b

## **SS\_OPTION\_RUNTIME\_EXCEPTION\_FREE\_CODE**

Improve performance of run-time exception-free S-functions

### **Description**

Improves performance of S-functions that do not use mexErrMsgTxt, mxMalloc, or any other routines that can throw an exception inside of a run-time routines. Applicable run-time routines include mdlGetTimeOfNextVarHit, mdlOutputs, mdlUpdate, and mdlDerivatives.

### **See Also**

SS\_OPTION\_EXCEPTION\_FREE\_CODE

### **Version History**

Introduced in R2007b

# SS\_OPTION\_SIM\_VIEWING\_DEVICE

Indicate S-Function block is a `SimViewingDevice`

## Description

Indicates the S-Function block referencing this S-function is a `SimViewingDevice`. As long as the block meets the other requirements for a `SimViewingDevice`, i.e., no states, no outputs, etc., the Simulink engine considers the block to be an external mode block. As an external mode block, the block appears in the external mode user interface and the Simulink Coder product does not generate code for it. During an external mode simulation, the engine runs the block only on the host. See “Use C/C++ S-Functions as Sim Viewing Devices in External Mode” on page 9-43 in *Writing S-Functions* for more information.

## Version History

**Introduced in R2007b**

## **SS\_OPTION\_SFUNCTION\_INLINED\_FOR\_RTW**

Specify use of TLC file during code generation

### **Description**

Indicates the S-function has an associated TLC file and does not contain an mdlRTW method. Setting this option has no effect if the S-function contains an mdlRTW method. During code generation, if SS\_OPTION\_SFUNCTION\_INLINED\_FOR\_RTW is set and the Simulink Coder product cannot locate the S-function's TLC file, the Simulink Coder product generates an error. If SS\_OPTION\_SFUNCTION\_INLINED\_FOR\_RTW is not set but the Simulink Coder product does locate a TLC file for the S-function, it uses the TLC file.

### **Version History**

**Introduced in R2007b**



# SS\_OPTION\_SUPPORTS\_ALIAS\_DATA\_TYPES

Support data type aliases

## Description

Specifies how the S-function handles signals whose data types are aliases (see `Simulink.AliasType` for more information about data type aliases). If this option is set and the S-function's inputs and outputs use data type aliases, SimStruct macros such as `ssGetInputPortDataType` and `ssGetOutputPortDataType` return the data type IDs of those aliases. However, if this option is not set, the SimStruct macros return the data type IDs associated with the equivalent built-in data types instead. For a list of built-in values for the data type ID, see `ssGetInputPortDataType`.

---

**Note** If you have Simulink Coder, and this option is not set and the S-function's inputs use data type aliases, the Simulink engine attempts to propagate the aliases to the S-function's outputs. However, this process can fail, in which case the engine propagates the equivalent built-in data types instead. To explicitly control the propagation of data type aliases through an S-function, enable the `SS_OPTION_SUPPORTS_ALIAS_DATA_TYPES` option.

---

## Version History

**Introduced in R2007b**

## SS\_OPTION\_USE\_TLC\_WITH\_ACCELERATOR

Use TLC file when simulating in accelerated mode

### Description

Forces the Simulink Accelerator mode to use the Target Language Compiler (TLC) inlining code for the S-function, which speeds up execution of the S-function. If this option is not set, the Simulink Accelerator mode uses the MEX version of the S-function even if a TLC file for the S-function exists. This option should not be set for device driver blocks (A/D) or when there is an incompatibility between running the MEX `mdlStart` or `mdlInitializeConditions` functions together with the TLC `Outputs`, `Update`, or `Derivatives` functions. Also, this option indicates that the TLC inlining code should be used when generating a simulation target for a referenced model that contains this S-function.

---

**Note** The Simulink Accelerator mode does not require the Simulink Coder product to run an inlined S-function. However, to ensure that the inlined S-function can run in accelerated mode in current and future Simulink releases, the TLC file for the S-function must use documented TLC functions to access the `CompiledModel` structure.

---

### Example

See the S-function `timestwo.c` used in the Simulink model `sfcn_demo_timestwo` for an example.

### Version History

Introduced in R2007b

# SS\_OPTION\_WORKS\_WITH\_CODE\_REUSE

Specify this S-function supports code reuse

## Description

Signifies that this S-function is compatible with the Simulink Coder product subsystem code reuse feature. See "S-Functions for Code Reuse" (Simulink Coder) in the "Simulink Coder User's Guide" for more information. If this option is not set, the Simulink Coder product will not reuse any subsystem containing this S-Function.

## Example

See `timestwo.c` for an example.

## Version History

**Introduced in R2007b**

